GERMAN COMPOSITION AND PHILOLOGY

L. LUBOVIUS

Jn. P. Shillinglaw.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/bwb_KV-541-245

GERMAN COMPOSITION AND PHILOLOGY

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

LOWER GERMAN.

READING, SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR WITH
EXERCISES, AND MATERIAL FOR
COMPOSITION.

With Notes and Vocabulary and Ten Popular
Songs in Sol-fa Notation.

Price 2s. 6d.

"The book is the work of a painstaking and practical teacher, and may be depended upon to produce the most favourable results."—*Glasgow Herald.*

A KEY TO

PROGRESSIVE GERMAN
COMPOSITION.

May be had on application to the Publishers.

Price 5s. net.

WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS,
EDINBURGH AND LONDON.

PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COMPOSITION

WITH COPIOUS NOTES AND IDIOMS

AND

FIRST INTRODUCTION TO GERMAN PHILOLOGY

BY

LOUIS LUBOVIUS
(UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN)
GERMAN MASTER IN THE SECONDARY SCHOOLS OF THE
GOVAN SCHOOL BOARD, GLASGOW

WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON
MDCCCXCVIII

PREFACE.

The author claims for this volume the following characteristic features:—

1. The selections have been made, not with a view to display the beauties of the English language either in point of thought or style, but with a distinct regard to their utility and suitableness for the student, and great care has been taken to select, as far as possible, only such passages as contain the ordinary language employed by any educated Englishman in speaking or writing. In the acquisition of a foreign language the common concrete expressions of ordinary prose should be learned first, just as they are learned first in one's mother-tongue. If any justification be needed for this remark, seemingly so trite and unnecessary, it will be found in the fact that in most books on German composition, even in many of otherwise undoubted excellence, the aforesaid principle has been left out of account.

2. The exercises are progressive, beginning with the simplest style, and leading up to prose of ordinary, not studied, difficulty. The advantage of having in one volume all the material necessary for the various stages of the pupil's progress is generally recognised by teachers, particularly by those who have to deal with large classes. It has been the author's experience, at any rate — an experience extending over fifteen years in various schools in this country—that a large proportion of the scholars

of even the highest classes make their principal mistakes in the elements of the language, a fact which is doubtless due partly to insufficient grounding, but chiefly to insufficient repetition. Grammatical thoroughness and correctness and fluency of expression can only be achieved by combining with the current work constant repetition of the work previously done. Teachers who may use this book will find ample scope for such revisal and repetition, a feature which it is hoped will render it specially serviceable to those who prepare scholars for the leaving certificate and other examinations.

3. The notes to the exercises are so arranged that at every revisal the scholar may have something new to learn. When, for instance, the German equivalent has been given of some English word capable of conveying other meanings, the equivalents of the most significant of these have also been given in smaller type in examples, not in abstract explanations. These examples the scholar should learn on going over the exercise for the second time. Then at the end of many of the exercises will be found groups of words and phrases which are either philologically related or logically connected with each other. These word-clusters, which are usually given in connection with some strong verb which has occurred in the exercise, are meant to be taken up at the next revisal. The fact that the words are closely related will prove a valuable aid to the memory and facilitate the widening of the scholar's vocabulary, while the successive groups will furnish constant practice in the important and interesting study of word-building.

4. The "First Introduction to German Philology" contains an elementary but sufficiently exhaustive sketch of the historical development of the language, chapters on Derivation and Word-building, and an Etymological Glossary. Much may be said for and against the study of the philo-

logical element of a language at school. The author is convinced of its utility, and ventures to hope that this part of the book will be approved by those who desire to see the study of German recognised as a means of mental discipline and culture, hardly inferior to the study of the ancient classics. This part of the book, however, is independent of the rest of it, and may be omitted by those whose circumstances do not require it.

In conclusion, I must thank authors and publishers for their kind permission to reprint copyright matter. I am specially indebted to my friend, Mr. Alex. Buchanan, M.A., Rector of Lenzie Academy, for many valuable suggestions and for his careful reading of the proofs.

L. L

GLASGOW, *September* 1898.

CONTENTS.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

PAGE
The Normal Order . . xiii
The Inverted Order . . xvi
The Dependent Order . . xvii
  Arrangement of Sentences xxvi
  Subject and Predicate—Uses of "*es*"—Apposition xxvii
The Participle . . . xxxii
The Verbal Noun in "*-ing*" xxxiii
The Article xxxv

PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COMPOSITION.

PART FIRST.

The Narcissus:

(1) 1
(2) 2
(3) 3
(4) 3
(5) 4

Calcutta:

(1) 5
(2) 7
Happiness and Misery . . 8

Sweetheart's Tea-Party:

(1) 9
(2) 10
(3) 11
(4) 12
(5) 13

Thomas Carlyle to his Mother:

(1) 15
(2) 15

From Jane Eyre:

(1) 16
(2) 18

London Fog:

(1) 19
(2) 20
(3) 21
(4) 22
The Insulted Dervish . . 23

The Tempest:

(1) 24
(2) 25
(3) 26
(4) 27
(5) 28
(6) 29
George Eliot to Mrs. Bray . 30

PART SECOND.

PAGE

For Sale:
  (1) 32
  (2) 33
The Dervish:
  (1) 33
  (2) 34
Strange Music at the Court of the Khedive:
  (1) 35
  (2) 36
Animals their own Doctors:
  (1) 37
  (2) 38
Ælfred 39
Bismarck to his Wife:
  (1) 40
  (2) 41
From a Letter of Lord Houghton to his Mother . . 42
Reply to a Toast:
  (1) 44
  (2) 45
Professor Wilson to a Friend:
  (1) 46
  (2) 47
Thomas Erskine to his Sister:
  (1) 47
  (2) 48
S. Warren to a Friend . . 49
Peter the Great as a Carpenter 50
Luther's Fortitude:
  (1) 51
  (2) 52
  (3) 53
Professor Wilson to a Friend:
  (1) 54
  (2) 55
Anecdote of Shelley:
  (1) 56
  (2) 57
S. Warren to his Publisher . 58

PAGE

Lord Clive:
  (1) 59
  (2) 60
Lord Houghton to Sir Robert Peel:
  (1) 60
  (2) 62
  (3) 63
  (4) 64
Byron to his Friend Andrea Londs 65
Byron to Goethe . . . 66
John Bright to Lord Houghton 67
Wanderings in China:
  (1) 68
  (2) 69
  (3) 70
  (4) 71
Mr. John Bright's Address to the Students in Glasgow:
  (1) 72
  (2) 73
  (3) 74
The Abderites:
  (1) 75
  (2) 76
African Hospitality:
  (1) 77
  (2) 78
  (3) 79
Frederick the Great:
  (1) 81
  (2) 81
Frederick's Address to the Superior Officers of his Army:
  (1) 82
  (2) 83
The Adventures of a Philosophic Vagabond:
  (1) 84
  (2) 85

PAGE
The Adventures of a Philosophic Vagabond:
(3) 86
(4) 88
(5) 89

PAGE
Looking Backward:
(1) 90
(2) 91
(3) 92
The Dead Sea 93

PART THIRD.

From the "History of England":
(1) 95
(2) 95
(3) 96
(4) 97
A Visit to Goethe:
(1) 97
(2) 98
Social Organisation and Social Life:
(1) 100
(2) 101
The Wallace of Sweden:
(1) 102
(2) 103
(3) 104
(4) 106
(5) 107
(6) 109
(7) 110
(8) 111
(9) 112
An Eventful Acquaintance:
(1) 114
(2) 115
Columbus' First Return to Europe:
(1) 116
(2) 118
On Reading New Books . . 119
Walter Scott to his Son Charles 120
Frederic William 122
Companionship of Books . 123
Mr. Gladstone on Lord Palmerston 124
The Wreck:
(1) 125
(2) 127
Coketown 128
Oliver Cromwell . . . 129
The Philosopher and the Child 130
The Old Woman:
(1) 131
(2) 132
Charles Dickens to George Eliot:
(1) 133
(2) 133
Silas Marner:
(1) 134
(2) 136
(3) 137
The Child is Father of the Man:
(1) 138
(2) 139
Some Hindoo Customs . . 141
"As You Like It" . . . 142
The Pilgrimage to Mecca . 145
Thomas Erskine to his Sister . 147
From a Speech of Mr. John Bright 148
Mrs. Carlyle to a Friend . 149
A. W. Kinglake to his Publishers 151
APPENDIX 152

FIRST INTRODUCTION TO GERMAN PHILOLOGY.

PAGE
The Indo-European Languages 1
General Characteristics of the Germanic Languages . . 3
Historical Development of the German Language . . 15
Derivation and Word-Building 37
ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY . 61

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

HINTS ON THE ORDER OF WORDS AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

The following three word orders must be carefully distinguished :—

§ 1. I.—The Normal Order (Subject, Verb).
II.—The Inverted Order (Verb, Subject).
III.—The Dependent Order (Verb at the end).

I.—The Normal Order.

§ 2. Charles writes (wrote) a letter, and his sister copies it.	Karl schreibt einen Brief, und seine Schwester schreibt ihn *ab*.
Charles has (had) *written* a letter, and his sister has (had) *copied* it.	Karl hat (hatte) einen Brief *geschrieben*, und seine Schwester hat (hatte) ihn *abgeschrieben*.
I shall lend you the money, but you must *return* it to me.	Ich werde dir das Geld leihen aber du musst es mir *zurückgeben*.
You should *have lent* me the money, for I would *have returned* it to you.	Sie sollten mir das Geld *geliehen haben*, denn ich würde es Ihnen *zurückgegeben haben*.
Do not spend so much money, or you will soon *be poor again*.	Geben Sie nicht so viel Geld *aus*, oder Sie werden bald *wieder arm werden*.

Rule.—The Normal Order (used in every independent clause beginning with the subject or with *und*, *oder*, *denn*, *aber*, *allein*, *sondern*) is the same as in English ; but the prefix of the finite tenses of a separable verb, the past participle and the infinitive, and the complements of the predicate stand at the end of the sentence.

Position of the Attribute.

§ 3.	The letter *written by you.*	Der *von Ihnen geschriebene* Brief.
	A letter *copied by her.*	Ein *von ihr abgeschriebener* Brief.
	The men *accused of theft.*	Die *des Diebstahls angeklagten* Männer.
	The house *to be built.*	Das *zu bauende* Haus.
	A fact *not to be denied.*	Eine *nicht zu leugnende* Thatsache.

RULE.—The qualifying (or attributive) word precedes the qualified word.

Position of the Objects.

§ 4.	John bought *a dog for his friend.*	Johann hat *seinem Freunde einen Hund* gekauft.
	His friend sold *it to my brother the other day.*	Sein Freund verkaufte *ihn neulich meinem Bruder.*

RULE.—Of two objects in a sentence the person precedes the thing; the pronoun precedes the noun (and all adverbial expressions).

§ 5.	You must not tell the story to anybody whom you do not know well.	Sie dürfen die Geschichte keinem Menschen erzählen, den Sie nicht genau kennen.

RULE.—The dative often follows the accusative, particularly when a relative sentence depends on the dative.

§ 6.	I shall introduce you and your brother to my father.	Ich werde Sie und Ihren Bruder meinem Vater vorstellen.
	The sailor trusts his life to the uncertain ocean.	Der Matrose vertraut sein Leben dem unsichern Meere.
	I showed it (him, her) to you.	Ich habe es (ihn, sie) Ihnen gezeigt.

RULE.—If both objects are persons, things, or pronouns, the accusative mostly precedes the dative, as in English.

Position of the Adverb.

§ 7.	I *often think* of you.	Ich *denke oft* an dich.
	You *always say* the same thing.	Du *sagst immer* dasselbe.
	We *really could* not come.	Wir *konnten wirklich* nicht kommen.

RULE.—The adverb cannot stand between the subject and the verb.

§ 8.

He indeed asserts it; I, however, do not believe it.	Er zwar behauptet es, ich jedoch glaube es nicht.
This then was your whole secret.	Dies also war dein ganzes Geheimnis.

RULE.—A few adverbs like *zwar*, *jedoch*, *also*, *nämlich*, *indessen*, may stand between the subject and the verb.

§ 9.

We went to see *Mr. Miller in town yesterday.*	Wir besuchten *gestern Herrn Müller in der Stadt.*
We shall go to see *him again to-morrow.*	Wir werden *ihn morgen wieder* besuchen.

RULE.—Adverbs of time generally precede, other adverbs follow, the object, if it is a noun. If the object is a pronoun, it precedes all adverbs (or adverbial expressions).

§ 10.

We left Edinburgh *yesterday* at 2 o'clock in the afternoon, and we arrived in Paris *to-day* at 11 o'clock in the forenoon.	Wir reisten *gestern* Nachmittag um zwei Uhr von Edinburg ab, und wir kamen *heute* Vormittag um 11 Uhr in Paris an.

RULE.—If there are several adverbs (or adverbial expressions) of time, the more general is placed first.

§ 11.

Your cousin worked in the laboratory (very diligently) this month.	Ihr Vetter arbeitete diesen Monat (sehr fleissig) im Laboratorium.

RULE.—When there are several different adverbs in a sentence their order is: 1. adverb of time; (2. adverb of manner;) 3. adverb of place.

§ 12.

Summary of the Rules in §§ 1–11.

(*a*)

Mein Bruder	**hat**	gestern seinem Freunde **einen Stock** in der Stadt	**gekauft**
1. Subj. with its adjuncts.	2. Finite verb (or auxiliary).	3. Objects and adverbial expressions. time . . . place.	4. Predicate (complem. of the auxil.; past part.; infinit.).

(*b*) **Ich** würde Sie heute Vormittag meinem Vater im Geschäft vorgestellt haben.

NOTE.—The **adverb of time** is frequently placed between the two objects—

Mein Bruder hat seinem Freunde **gestern** einen Stock in der Stadt gekauft.

Position of the Negative.

§ 13.

The prisoner was not allowed to see his son.	Der Gefangene durfte seinen Sohn nicht sehen (*or* . . . hat seinen Sohn nicht sehen dürfen).
Did you not find your umbrella?	Haben Sie Ihren Regenschirm nicht (*or* nicht Ihren Regenschirm) gefunden.
Is he not ashamed?	Schämt er sich nicht?

RULE.—If the whole sentence is negatived, the negative stands after the object. In questions the negative may also stand before the object, but not if it is a reflexive pronoun.

§ 14.

We were not at school to-day.	Wir waren heute nicht in der Schule.
One can never rely on him.	Man kann sich nie auf ihn verlassen.

RULE.—The negative stands after adverbs of time, but before other adverbs. The negative generally precedes a prepositional phrase (or a noun governed by a preposition).

Observe: not . . . a (any), *kein;* not . . . anybody, *niemand;* not . . . anything, *nichts;* not . . . anywhere, *nirgends*.

§ 15. Observe that the negative may stand before any word in a sentence, if that word only and not the whole sentence is negatived, viz. :—

Not I have seen him (*i.e.* but somebody else has).	Nicht ich habe ihn gesehen.
I have not seen him; (*here the whole statement is negatived*).	Ich habe ihn nicht gesehen.

§ 16. II.—THE INVERTED ORDER.

The Inverted Order is used

(*a*) When the sentence is interrogative—

Does your brother often write to you?	Schreibt Ihr Bruder Ihnen oft?

(*b*) When the sentence begins with an adverb, or an adverbial phrase or clause, or with the object—

Adv.: To-morrow we leave for London.	Morgen reisen wir nach London ab.
Adv. phrase: (It was) in the town that I saw him.	In der Stadt habe ich ihn gesehen.
Adv. clause: When he died he was only 36 years old.	Als er starb, war er nur sechs und dreissig Jahre alt.
Object: It is he whom (=him) I saw to-day.	Ihn sah ich heute.

(*c*) When the sentence is imperative—

Come, let us go home.	Kommen Sie, gehen wir nach Hause.

(*d*) When the sentence is optative—

Would that he came soon!	Käme er doch bald!

(*e*) When the sentence is conditional or concessive without a conditional or concessive conjunction—

If he had been more diligent he would have passed his examination.	Wäre er fleissiger gewesen (*instead of* wenn er fleissiger gewesen wäre), so würde er seine Prüfung bestanden haben.
Though he is poor, yet he is contented.	Ist er gleich arm (*instead of* obgleich er arm ist), so ist er dennoch zufrieden.

(*f*) After a quotation and in short parenthetical sentences—

I cannot help it, he said to us.	Ich kann nichts dafür, sagte er zu uns.
He is, I believe, an able man.	Er ist, glaube ich, ein tüchtiger Mann.

§ 17.

III.—The Dependent Order.

The Dependent Order occurs in all subordinate clauses, whether they are noun, adjective, or adverbial clauses. When the verb is separable, no separation takes place, and when the tense contains an auxiliary, the auxiliary comes last.

§ 18. **Noun Clauses.**

(*a*) That they lost their leader was the cause of their defeat.	Dass sie ihren Führer verloren, (das) war die Ursache ihrer Niederlage. *or* Der Verlust ihres Führers war die Ursache ihrer Niederlage.

That you were there yourself, you do not remember.	Dass Sie selbst dort waren, (daran *or* dessen) erinnern Sie sich nicht.
(*b*) Whether we shall return is as yet doubtful.	Ob wir zurückkeren werden, (das) ist noch zweifelhaft. *or* Unsere Rückkehr ist noch zweifelhaft.
(*c*) He who seeks finds.	Der(jenige), welcher sucht, (der) findet. *or* Wer sucht, (der) findet. *or* Der Suchende findet.

RULE.—A noun clause is introduced by (*a*) *dass*, (*b*) *ob*, (*c*) an interrogative pronoun or adverb; the principal clause on which the noun clause depends *may* have *das*, *es*, *dessen*, *daran*, &c., as a correlative.

§ 19. **Adjective Clauses.**

(*a*) We like to return to the place where we were born.	Wir kehren gern nach dem Ort zurück, wo (*or* an welchem) wir geboren sind. *or* Wir kehren gern nach unserm Geburtsort zurück.
Dogs which bark do not bite.	Die Hunde, welche bellen, beissen nicht. *or* Bellende Hunde beissen nicht.
(*b*) I (we) who read it.	Ich, der ich es las; wir, die wir es lasen.
You who are young.	Du, der (die) du jung bist. Ihr, die ihr jung seid. Sie, der (die) Sie jung sind.
(*c*) The mountain, *the summit of which* you see.	Der Berg, *dessen Gipfel* Sie sehen.
The lady, with the son of whom (=with whose son) you travelled.	Die Dame, *mit deren Sohn* Sie reisten.
(*d*) We ought not to strive for what is transient.	Wir sollten nicht nach dem streben, was vergänglich ist. *or* Wir sollten nicht nach dem Vergänglichen streben.

(*e*) There is no man but has his faults.	Es giebt keinen Menschen, der nicht seine Fehler *hätte*.
(*f*) The pen I am writing with.	Die Feder, womit (*or* mit welcher) ich schreibe.

Rules.—(*a*) The adjective clause is introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb. (*b*) After a personal pronoun, *der*, *die*, *das* must be used instead of *welcher*, *e*, *es*, and *ich, wir*, *du*, *ihr*, *Sie* are repeated. (*c*) Only a preposition can precede the relative pronoun. (*d*) *was* is used (instead of *das* or *welches*) when the antecedent is a neuter pronoun, an adjective in the superlative, or a whole clause. (*e*) The subjunctive is used after a negative in the principal clause, when the relative clause does not express an absolute fact. (*f*) The preposition governing the relative pronoun cannot be thrown to the end in German.

§ 20. **Adverbial Clauses.**—These are introduced by subordinate conjunctions. According to their meaning and function they may be classified as follows :—

§ 21. **Temporal Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting time. (In English frequently expressed by participial clauses.)

(*a*) Having conquered Babylon, Cyrus gave liberty to the Jews.	Nachdem Cyrus Babylon erobert hatte, schenkte er den Juden die Freiheit. *or* Nach der Eroberung Babylons schenkte Cyrus den Juden die Freiheit.
Since my friends died, I feel very lonely.	Seitdem meine Freunde gestorben sind (=seit dem Tode meiner Freunde), fühle ich mich sehr einsam.
(*b*) When we stayed in London, we frequently went to the theatre.	Als wir uns in London aufhielten (= während unseres Aufenthaltes in L.), gingen wir oft ins Theater.
Man errs as long as he lives.	Der Mensch irrt, so lange er lebt. *or* Der Mensch irrt sein ganzes Leben lang.
While you were absent much has changed.	Während Sie abwesend waren, (=während Ihrer Abwesenheit) hat sich viel verändert.

(*c*) Before going abroad he made his will.	Ehe (*or* bevor) er ins Ausland ging, machte er sein Testament.
Until we are called we may stay outside.	Bis man uns ruft, können wir draussen bleiben.

RULE.—The action of a temporal clause may be (*a*) *antecedent to*, (*b*) *simultaneous with*, (*c*) *subsequent to*, the action of the principal clause. Accordingly we divide the subordinate conjunctions of time into—

(*a*) Conjunctions of antecedent time: *nachdem*, after; *seitdem* or *seit*, since.

(*b*) Conjunctions of simultaneous time: *wenn*, *als*, when; *so lange*, so long as; *so oft*, so often as, whenever; *während*, *indem*, while, as.

(*c*) Conjunctions of subsequent time: *bevor*, *ehe*, before; *bis*, till, until; (*erst dann als*, not until).

NOTE 1.—"Since," denoting cause, is rendered by "*da*."

NOTE 2.—The conjunction "when" requires special attention, as the following examples will show:—

1. We were glad when you came.	Wir freuten uns, **als** du kamst.
2. We were always glad when you came.	Wir freuten uns immer, **wenn** du kamst.
We shall be glad when you come.	Wir werden uns freuen, **wenn** du kommst.
3. When did he leave?	**Wann** ist er abgereist?
4. The moment (when) he was struck by the bullet, he expired.	Im Augenblick, **wo** (*or* als) die Kugel ihn traf, verschied er.
5. He travelled through all Europe and America. At last he returned to France, **when** he received an appointment by the State.	Er durchreiste ganz Europa und Amerika. Endlich kehrte er nach Frankreich zurück, **worauf** er eine staatliche Anstellung erhielt.

6. Hardly . . . when, *kaum* . . . *so;* only when, *erst als* (*wenn*).

RULES.—1. *als* denotes a single occurrence in the past tense only.
2. *wenn* denotes repeated occurrence and condition, and may be used with every tense.
3. *wann* is used in direct and indirect questions.
4. After expressions of time, "when" is frequently omitted in English. It must be rendered in German either by *wo* or *als*.
5. "When" meaning "whereupon," "and then," is rendered by *worauf*.

NOTE 3.—Observe the following chief renderings of "as":—

As cold as ice.	Kalt wie Eis; *or* eiskalt.
As much as to say.	Als ob er (sie, ich) sagen wollte.
He is as generous as he is rich.	Er ist ebenso freigebig wie er reich ist.

As many as 50 were seen.	Nicht weniger als 50 waren zu sehen.
It was (so) as I said.	Es war so wie ich gesagt habe.
As he is ill, he cannot come.	Da er krank ist, kann er nicht kommen.
As for example.	Wie zum Beispiel.
As a rule.	In der Regel.

§ 22. **Local Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting place (*wo*, *wohin*, *woher*).

I found him where I looked for him.	Ich fand ihn (da), wo ich ihn suchte.
Whence we come, whither we go, no one can tell.	Woher wir kommen, wohin wir gehen, kann Niemand sagen.
Wherever he may be, he is surrounded by friends.	Wo er auch sein mag, ist er von Freunden umgeben.

Conjunctions denoting place are: *wo* (*worin*, *woraus*, *worüber*, &c.), where; *wohin*, whither; *woher*, whence; *wo . . . auch* or *wo . . . nur immer*, wherever; *wohin . . . auch* or *wohin . . . nur immer*, whithersoever.

For the sake of emphasis the principal clause may have a demonstrative adverb (*da*, *dahin*, *daher*) as a correlative.

NOTE.- *wo* also denotes time, and, in a few phrases, condition—

At a time when.	Zu einer Zeit, wo.
Now that all is past.	Jetzt wo alles vorüber ist.
The moment (when) this happens.	Den Augenblick, wo dies geschieht.
If not; if possible.	Wo nicht; wo möglich.

§ 23. **Causal Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting cause or reason (*weil*, *da*).

He did not come because he was ill.	Er kam nicht, weil er krank war. *or* Er war krank, darum (daher, deswegen) kam er nicht.
As he is ill, he will not be able to come.	Da er krank ist, wird er nicht kommen können. *or* Er ist krank, folglich (also, mithin) wird er nicht kommen können. *or* Er wird nicht kommen können, denn er ist krank.

Comparing *weil* with *da* in these examples, we see that **weil denotes** the **real reason** or cause, answering to the question—Why? **Da expresses** a fact or statement which the speaker assumes to be well known, from which the **logical reason** is to be inferred.

NOTE.—The causal and modal force of the English "by" + pres. partic. is rendered by clauses with *indem* or *dadurch dass.*

He saved himself by swimming ashore.	Er rettete sich, dadurch dass (*or* indem) er ans Ufer schwamm.

§ 24. **Final Clauses** (or clauses of purpose) introduced by conjunctions denoting purpose (*damit; damit nicht; um zu*).

I shall write at once in order that he may receive my letter in time.	Ich werde sofort schreiben, damit er meinen Brief zeitig erhalte (erhält).
Go quickly lest you be too late.	Gehen Sie schnell, damit Sie nicht zu spät kommen.
Railways are built in order to facilitate the traffic.	Eisenbahnen werden gebaut, um den Verkehr zu erleichtern. *or* Zur Erleichterung des Verkehrs werden Eisenbahnen gebaut.

Conjunctions of purpose are *damit* (sometimes *dass*, but never *damit dass*), in order that; *damit nicht*, lest; *um—zu*, in order to, so as to, for the purpose of, is used when the subject in both sentences is the same. The subjunctive is required after *damit* and *damit nicht*, but in ordinary language the indicative is mostly employed.

NOTE.—The principal clause sometimes has *dazu* (therefore), *zu dem Zwecke* or *in der Absicht* (for the purpose), as a correlative, and in the final clause *sollen* or *mögen* is often used: *Ich gab ihm das Geld* (*dazu, zu dem Zwecke*), *damit* (or *dass*) *er sich Bücher kaufen sollte* (or *möchte*).

§ 25. **Consecutive Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting effect or result (*so dass*, *derart dass*).

(*a*) He fought *so* bravely *as to* be promoted to the rank of officer.	Er kämpfte *so* tapfer, *dass* er zum Offizier befördert wurde.
They are *so* kind-hearted *as to* (=that they) help everybody.	Sie sind *so* gutherzig, *dass* sie jedermann helfen.
(*b*) We are not rich enough to be able to buy such expensive pictures.	Wir sind nicht reich *genug*, (*um*) so teure Bilder kaufen *zu* können.
Be *so* kind *as to* tell me.	Seien Sie *so* gut mir *zu* sagen.
(*c*) Not a day passes *but* we think of him.	Kein Tag vergeht, *ohne dass* wir an ihn denken. *or* Es vergeht kein Tag, *dass* wir *nicht* an ihn dächten.
This was done without anybody having seen it.	Dies geschah, ohne dass irgend jemand es gesehen hätte.

We left without taking leave.	Wir reisten ab, ohne Abschied zu nehmen.
The problem is too difficult for me to solve it.	Die Aufgabe ist zu schwierig, als dass ich sie lösen könnte.
They had offended us too much for us to have pardoned them.	Sie hatten uns zu sehr beleidigt, als dass wir ihnen hätten verzeihen können.
(*d*) His conduct was *such* that he made himself hated everywhere.	Sein Betragen war *derart*, dass er sich überall verhasst machte.
Such was his courage that he was afraid of nothing.	*So gross* war sein Mut, dass er sich vor nichts fürchtete.

RULES.—(*a*) A consecutive clause is expressed by *so dass*, so that, so as to. (*b*) After *genug* and sometimes after *so* in the principal clause, consequence is expressed by (*um*) *zu* + infinitive. (*c*) The negative consecutive clause is expressed by *ohne dass* (*ohne zu* when the subject is the same in both sentences) or by *zu—als dass*. The subjunctive of the preterite and pluperfect is used to denote a merely potential, not real effect. (*d*) "Such that," used predicatively, and meaning "of such a nature" (or quality), is rendered by *derart* or *so beschaffen;* "such that," meaning "so great," must be rendered by *so gross*.

Note the following phrases with "such":—

At such and such a place.	An dem und dem Orte.
There is no such thing.	Es giebt nichts dergleichen.
Such was his opinion.	Das war seine Meinung.
Such as are good.	Diejenigen, welche gut sind.
Such music as was never heard before.	Solche Musik, wie man **sie** nie zuvor gehört hat.

§ 26. **Conditional Clauses** introduced by *wenn*, if; *wenn nicht* (*ausser wenn*), unless.

(*a*) If he has time he will come to see us.	Wenn er Zeit hat, wird er uns besuchen.
If he was ill, it was his own fault.	Wenn er krank war, (so) war es seine eigene Schuld.
(*b*) If he had time (*i.e.* but he has not) he would come to see us.	Wenn er Zeit hätte, würde er uns besuchen.
If he had been ill (*i.e.* but he was not) he would not have come.	Wenn er krank gewesen wäre (*or* wäre er krank gewesen), (so) würde er nicht gekommen sein.

RULES.—(*a*) When the "if" clause expresses an actual fact or a real condition, *wenn* takes the indicative. (*b*) When the "if" clause expresses a possible contingency or an unreal condition, *wenn* takes the subjunctive.

NOTE.—Condition may also be expressed by *falls* or *im Fall dass* (in case), and in a few phrases by *wo* or *so:* if not, *wo nicht;* if possible, *wo möglich;* if it is God's will (D.V.), *so Gott will* (abbreviated *s.G.w.*); if perchance, *wenn . . . etwa;* if only, *wenn . . . nur.*

§ 27. **Concessive Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting concession (*obgleich*, *wenn auch*, &c.).

Although my friend is poor, *yet* he is happy.	Obgleich (obwohl, obschon) mein Freund arm ist, ist er *doch* glücklich. *or* Wenn mein Freund auch arm ist, } ist er doch glücklich. Ist mein Freund auch arm, } ist er doch glücklich. *or* Trotz seiner Armut ist mein Freund glücklich.

Old as he is,
However old he may be, } his mind is still youthful.

So alt er auch ist,
Wie alt er auch sein mag, } (so) ist (doch) sein Geist noch jugendlich.

Though (even if) I were rich, I could not help you.

Selbst wenn ich reich wäre,
Wenn ich auch reich wäre,
Wäre ich auch reich, } könnte ich Ihnen doch nicht helfen.

Even if he were ever so diligent,
Were he ever so diligent, } he could not finish his work so quickly.

Wenn er auch noch so fleissig wäre,
Wäre er auch noch so fleissig, } so könnte er doch seine Arbeit nicht so schnell beendigen.

RULE.—The concessive conjunctions are: *obgleich*, *obwohl*, *obschon* (*ob . . . gleich*, *ob . . . schon*), though, although; *wenn auch* (*wenn . . . auch*), *selbst wenn*, even if, even though; *wie . . . auch*, *so . . . auch*, however; *wenn . . . auch noch so*, even if ever so. Observe that the adjective always comes between *wie . . . auch* or *so . . . auch;* the subject may, and if it is a personal pronoun must, stand between. Concessive clauses take the indicative when they express a fact; they require the subjunctive when they express a possibility.

NOTE.—*Much as* I begged him, he would not come.	*So sehr* ich ihn auch bat, er wollte nicht kommen.
Though my friend is poor, yet he is happy.	Ist mein Freund auch arm, glücklich ist er doch.

After a concessive clause, particularly when expressed by the inversion, the principal clause following it does not require to be inverted.

§ 28. **Comparative Clauses** introduced by conjunctions denoting manner and measure: *wie*, *als*, &c.

(*a*) A sincere man speaks *as* he thinks.	Ein aufrichtiger Mensch spricht, *wie* er denkt.
Drugs often do *as* much harm *as* they do good.	Arzneien schaden oft *ebenso* viel, *wie* sie nützen.
We are *not so* old *as* you think.	Wir sind *nicht so* alt, *wie* Sie denken.
It was colder to-day *than* (it was) yesterday.	Es war heute kälter *als* (es) gestern (war).
(*b*) He looks *as if* he were ill.	Er sieht aus, *als ob* (als wenn, wie wenn) er krank wäre. *or* Er sieht aus, als wäre er krank. (Er sieht krank aus.)
It appears to me as if I had seen him somewhere.	Es kommt mir vor, als ob ich ihn irgendwo gesehen hätte. (Als hätte ich ihn irgendwo gesehen.)
(*c*) *The* more one has acquired, *the* more one wishes to acquire.	*Je* mehr man erworben hat, *desto* (um so) mehr wünscht man zu erwerben.
(*d*) We will be rewarded *according as* we deserve it.	Wir werden belohnt, *je nachdem* wir es verdienen.

Comparison is expressed by: *wie*, as; (*eben*) *so* . . . *wie*, as . . . as; *nicht so* . . . *wie* (*als*), not so as; *als*, than; *als ob* (*als wenn*, *wie wenn*), as if, as though; the . . . the, *je* . . . *desto* (*um so*); *je nachdem*, according as, in proportion to.

RULES.—(*a*) *wie* is employed in comparisons of equality; *als* denotes difference of degree or quantity, hence it is always used after the comparative degree. Observe that instead of *eben so* . . . *wie* we sometimes use *so* . . . *so:* She is as good as she is beautiful, *So schön sie ist, so gut ist sie auch.*

(*b*) *als ob* (*als wenn*, *wie wenn*) compares an action or condition with another which is represented as merely hypothetical, not real, and therefore requires the subjunctive (of the past and pluperfect). *Ob* and *wenn* may be omitted, in which case inversion must take place.

(*c*) *je . . . desto* occurs with the comparative degree only. *je* is a subordinate conjunction and requires the verb at the end; *desto* is an adverb and requires inversion.

§ 29. Otherwise than, *anders als.*
Nothing but, *nichts als.*
Nobody but, *niemand anders als.*
Such as (=those who), *diejenigen welche.*
Such as (=like), *wie: Solche Bilder, wie man sie in jedem Hause findet.*
(All) the more . . . as, *um so mehr . . . da.*
Inasmuch as, *insofern* (*als*).
In so far as, *insoweit* (*als*).

§ 30. I don't know but he is well.	Ich weiss nicht anders, als dass es ihm gut geht.
We wish nothing better than that you may succeed.	Wir wünschen nichts besseres, als dass es Ihnen glücken möge.

Qualifying Clauses.

§ 31. (*a*) The crop, *it is said*, was excellent.	Die Ernte *soll* vortrefflich gewesen sein. *or* Die Ernte war, *wie man sagt*, vortrefflich.
Such a thing, *you know*, is impossible.	So etwas ist, *wie Sie wissen*, unmöglich.
(*b*) He made himself, *as it were*, a king.	Er machte sich *gleichsam* zum König.
The duke, *it is well known*, is a great lover of nature.	Der Herzog ist *bekanntlich* ein grosser Naturfreund.
It is to be hoped you will come.	*Hoffentlich* werden Sie kommen.
The loss, *it is pretended*, amounts to a thousand pounds.	Der Verlust beläuft sich *angeblich* auf tausend Pfund.
His intentions, *it is true*, were noble, but still . . .	*Zwar* (or allerdings) waren seine Absichten edel, dennoch aber . . .

RULE.—Qualifying clauses are rendered in German (*a*) by *sollen*, or short interpolated clauses; (*b*) by an adverb.

Arrangement of Sentences.

§ 32. Wenn ich in Wien ankomme, werde ich Ihnen schreiben.

or

Ich werden Ihnen schreiben, wenn ich in Wien ankomme.

RULE.—A dependent clause may either precede or follow the principal clause, as in English.

§ 33.	(*a*) The business, since he took it over, has increased considerably.	Das Geschäft hat, seitdem er es übernahm, bedeutend zugenommen.
	(*b*) I am told that since he took it over the business has increased considerably.	Mir wird gesagt, dass das Geschäft, seitdem er es übernahm, bedeutend zugenommen hat.

RULES.—(*a*) The insertion of a subordinate clause usually takes place after the verb of the principal clause; (*b*) after the subject of the subordinate clause.

§ 34.	(*a*) He says that he has no time to-day.	Er sagt, er **habe** heute keine Zeit (*for* dass er heute keine Zeit hat).
	(*b*) If he had been able to come he would have come.	Wenn er **hätte** kommen können, wäre er gekommen.
	I am sorry that you will not be allowed to go with us.	Es thut mir leid, dass Sie nicht **werden** mit uns gehen dürfen.

RULE.—The normal word order is used in a subordinate clause (*a*) when *dass* is omitted; (*b*) when the subordinate clause contains two infinitives (or an infinitive and a past participle having the form of an infinitive).

Subject and Predicate—Uses of "es"—Apposition.

§ 35.	*Great attention* is required.	Es bedarf *grosser Aufmerksamkeit.*
	Only *a word* was needed.	Es bedurfte nur *eines Wortes.*
	He is not wanting in courage.	Es fehlt *ihm* nicht an Mut.
	There was *not a single tree.*	Es gab *keinen einzigen Baum.*
	He is wondering.	Es wundert *ihn* (*or* ihn wundert).

RULE.—The subject, as in English, is in the nominative case; but with some impersonal verbs it has the *form of an object* (called the *logical subject*); the grammatical subject being the pronoun *es*, which introduces the sentence.

§ 36.	*These are* my books. *Which are* yours?	*Dies sind* meine Bücher. *Welches sind* die Ihrigen?
	Who are these gentlemen? *They are* my friends.	Wer sind diese Herren? *Es sind* meine Freunde.

RULE.—When the subject is a neuter pronoun, the verb agrees in number with the noun or pronoun of the predicate.

§ 37. (*a*) *There came* many gentlemen of noble rank.	*Es kamen* viele vornehme Herren. (= Viele vornehme Herren kamen.)
There lived (was) once a king.	*Es lebte* (war) einmal ein König. (= Einmal lebte ein König.)
The wind blows.	Es bläst der Wind. (= Der Wind bläst.)
There was no wine in the house.	*Es war* kein Wein im Hause. (*Interrog.* War kein Wein im Hause?)
(*b*) There is pleasant living in Germany.	Es lebt sich schön in Deutschland. (In Deutschland lebt es sich schön.)
There was bad travelling in those days.	Es reiste sich schlecht zu jener Zeit. (Zu jener Zeit reiste es sich schlecht.)
Somebody knocks at the door.	Es klopft an die Thüre. (*Interrog.* Klopft es an die Thüre?)
The clock struck one.	Es schlug eins. (*Interrog.* Schlug es eins?)
There was much eating and drinking.	Es wurde viel gegessen und getrunken. (*Interrog.* Wurde viel gegessen und getrunken?)

RULES.—(*a*) Apart from being the subject of an impersonal verb (§ 35), *es* is frequently used as the grammatical subject of a sentence, the logical subject following later. It is mostly rendered by "there" in English, and must be omitted whenever *es* does not stand at the beginning of the sentence.

(*b*) *es* is especially frequent (1) with reflexive verbs, (2) with verbs used impersonally though not really impersonal, (3) in the passive. *es* in these cases denotes the indefinite subject, and *remains in the inversion*, except in the passive voice.

§ 38. (*a*) You are happy, I am not.	Sie sind glücklich, ich bin **es** (*or* bin's) nicht.
Your friends are Frenchmen, *are they not?* Yes, they are.	Ihre Freunde sind Franzosen, *nicht wahr?* Ja, **das** sind sie (*or* sie sind's).
(*b*) May I read his letter? You may.	Darf ich seinen Brief lesen? Sie dürfen **es**; *or* Sie dürfen ihn lesen.
My mother has not been able to come and see you yet, but she hopes to (be able) soon.	Meine Mutter hat Sie noch nicht besuchen können, aber sie hofft **es** bald **zu thun**.
His parents will, *I hope*, have no objection? *I should say* they will not.	Seine Eltern werden *doch wohl* nichts dagegen haben? **Das** werden sie *wohl* nicht.

I hope (or *surely*) you have *not* allowed yourself to be cheated? Unfortunately I have.	Sie haben sich *doch nicht etwa* betrügen lassen? **Das** habe ich leider.

RULES.—(*a*) The complement of the predicate (omitted in English) is expressed in German by *es* or *das*.

(*b*) In English an auxiliary often represents an infinitive or past participle previously employed. In German either the whole verb must be repeated (this is done for the sake of clearness), or the corresponding tense of *thun* with *es* is used, or *es* (*das*) is added to the auxiliary.

§ 39.	It is he.	Er ist es.
	It was not I.	Ich war es (*or* war's) nicht.
	If it had been you.	Wenn Sie es gewesen wären.
§ 40.	He seems an able man.	Er scheint ein tüchtiger Mann (zu sein).
	He was, and remained, my best friend.	Er war und blieb mein bester Freund.
	He was universally called "the noble."	Er wurde allgemein der Edle genannt.

RULE.—After copulative verbs, such as *sein*, *werden*, *scheinen*, *bleiben*, *heissen* (to be called), and most verbs in the passive voice, the predicate noun stands in the nominative case.

§ 41.	Mr. A. passes for (is considered) a first-class artist.	Herr A. gilt **für** einen Künstler ersten Ranges. (Herr A. wird für . . . gehalten.)
	The criminal was considered (looked upon as) insane.	Der Verbrecher wurde **als** wahnsinnig angesehen (betrachtet).
	Your brother will be appointed (made, elected) officer.	Ihr Bruder wird **zum** Offizier ernannt (gemacht, erwählt) werden.
§ 42.	(*a*) The School Board have resolved to build a new school.	Die Schulbehörde **hat** den Bau einer neuen Schule beschlossen.
	The police have discovered the murderer.	Die Polizei **hat** den Mörder entdeckt.
	(*b*) A dozen (pair of, lot of) hares were shot.	Ein Dutzend (ein Paar, eine Menge) Hasen wurden geschossen.
	A number of people were present.	Eine Anzahl Menschen war (waren) zugegen.

RULE.—(*a*) Collective nouns generally take the verb in the singular; (*b*) nouns of multitude (like *ein Paar*, *ein Haufe*, &c.), followed by a plural noun, take the verb mostly in the plural.

§ 43. (*a*)	Jack and his friend were here the other day.	Hans und sein Freund waren neulich hier.
	Neither you nor I are pleased with it.	Weder Sie noch ich sind damit zufrieden.
	Both you and he were to blame.	Sowohl du als er (ihr) wart zu tadeln.
	His cousin and I are the best of friends.	Sein Vetter und ich (wir) sind die besten Freunde.
(*b*)	He or his friend will come.	Er oder sein Freund **wird** kommen.
(*c*)	Sorrow and misery were his lot.	Kummer und Elend **war** sein Los.

Rules.—(*a*) A compound subject (*i.e.* one consisting of several parts joined by *und*, *sowohl . . . als*, *weder . . . noch*) takes the verb in the plural, except when the parts composing the subject are joined by *oder* (*b*), or when they form one idea (*c*).

§ 44.	Here I lived and all my predecessors.	Hier wohnte ich und alle meine Vorgänger.

In the inverted order (often also in the normal order) the verb may agree with the nearest part of the subject.

§ 45.	These are the sons of Mr. Miller, my successor in office.	Dies sind die Söhne des Herrn Müller, meines Nachfolgers im Amte.
	In the reign of Frederic the Great.	Unter der Regierung Friedrichs des Grossen.
	He thanked the prince as the creator of his fortune.	Er dankte dem Fürsten, als dem Schöpfer seines Glückes.
	He showed himself as a true friend.	Er zeigte sich als treuen Freund.
	You have proved yourself an excellent adviser.	Sie haben sich als vortrefflichen Ratgeber erwiesen.
	The month of June.	Der Monat Juni (*genit.*, des Monats Juni).
	The town of Geneva.	Die Stadt Genf (*genit.*, der Stadt Genf).

Rule.—The apposition (sometimes preceded by *als*, *nämlich*) agrees in case with the word which it qualifies.

§ 46. The Subjunctive in principal clauses.

1. (*a*)	May God protect you.	Gott schütze dich (*or* Möge Gott dich schützen).
(*b*)	Would that he came soon.	Käme er doch bald.
	Would that I had never seen him.	Hätte ich ihn doch nie gesehen.

2. Let him wait outside.	Er warte draussen (*or* Er soll draussen warten).
3. I am not aware that he is so rich.	Ich wüsste nicht, dass er so reich ist.
Perhaps it is not so difficult.	Das dürfte nicht so schwer sein.
I am inclined to doubt that.	Das möchte ich doch bezweifeln.
4. He would be happy.	Er wäre glücklich (=Er würde glücklich sein).
I would have written to you.	Ich hätte an Sie geschrieben (=Ich würde an Sie geschrieben haben).

RULES.—1 and 2. The subjunctive expresses wish and command (optative and imperative subjunctive). Observe that the preterite and pluperfect subjunctive (usually with *doch* added) denote that the realisation of the wish is improbable or impossible.

3. The preterite subjunctive is used in modest assertion to make a statement appear less absolute (potential subjunctive).

4. The preterite subjunctive may be used instead of the present conditional, and the pluperfect subjunctive instead of the perfect conditional (conditional subjunctive).

§ 47. **The Subjunctive in subordinate clauses** is employed—

1. In indirect speech ("oratio obliqua") and indirect questions ("oblique interrogation").

(*a*) Mein Freund schreibt, er könne nicht kommen, weil er krank sei.	*Direct:* Ich kann nicht kommen, weil ich krank bin.
Man fragte mich, wie alt ich sei (wäre).	*Direct:* Wie alt sind Sie?
(*b*) Er erklärte, es sei (wäre) ihm unmöglich gewesen, den Plan auszuführen.	*Direct:* Es war mir unmöglich, &c.; *or* Es ist (war) mir unmöglich gewesen, &c.
Er wurde gefragt, wann er das Geld verloren habe (hätte).	*Direct:* Wann haben Sie das Geld verloren?
(*c*) Ihr Bruder sagt, er werde uns morgen besuchen.	*Direct:* Ich werde Sie morgen besuchen.
Wir wurden gefragt, ob wir kommen würden?	*Direct:* Werden Sie kommen?

RULE.—The subjunctive must be used in indirect speech; *dass* after *sagen*, *schreiben*, *erklären*, *berichten*, &c., may be omitted, in which case the normal word order is employed. The sequence of tenses is not strictly adhered to, but as a rule the tense of the indirect speech corresponds to the tense of the direct speech. When the subjunctive has the same form as the indicative, the preterite is used instead of the present, the pluperfect instead of the perfect, and the conditional instead of the future. The imperative is rendered by the subjunctive of *sollen* or *mögen*.

2. After *damit*, *als ob*. See § 24 and § 28 (*b*).

3. After verbs of commanding, wishing, fearing, hoping, doubting, &c., frequently in conjunction with the auxiliaries *mögen*, *sollen*, &c. : *Ich bat ihn*, *er möchte früher kommen* (or *Ich bat ihn früher zu kommen*).

The indicative, however, is also very frequently used after these verbs, especially after *fürchten* and *hoffen*, and in all cases when a fact or an undisputed statement is expressed.

Ich fürchte, dass er krank ist (*or* Ich fürchte, er ist krank).
Ich hoffe, dass er kommen wird (*or* Ich hoffe, er wird kommen).
Man glaubte früher, dass die Sonne sich um die Erde **drehe**.
Wir wissen jetzt, dass die Erde sich um die Sonne **dreht**.

§ 48. *The Participle.*

(*a*) The child playing in the garden.	Das im Garten spielende Kind.
No mother however loving.	Keine noch so liebende Mutter.
The battle won by the French.	Die von den Franzosen gewonnene Schlacht.
(*b*) Thus saying, he went away.	So sprechend, ging er fort.
Alarmed at the news, he departed.	Über die Nachricht bestürzt, reiste er ab.
Not knowing what direction to take, the pilgrim stopped.	Da der Pilger nicht wusste, welche Richtung er einschlagen sollte, blieb er stehen. *or* Der Pilger, der nicht wusste, welche Richtung er einschlagen sollte, blieb stehen.

Rules.—(*a*) The participles are used like adjectives in German, the present participle with active, the past participle with passive force. (*b*) The participles may be employed as adverbs when they denote manner or simultaneous time, but usually the English adverbial participle is rendered by an adverbial or a relative clause.

§ 49. (*c*) A bird comes flying.	Ein Vogel kommt geflogen.
The messenger came running (driving).	Der Bote kam gelaufen (gefahren)
That is what I call working.	Das heisst gearbeitet.

Supposing, *angenommen*, *gesetzt;* excepting, *ausgenommen*, *abgerechnet;* strictly speaking, *genau genommen*.

(*d*)	Stand still!	Stillgestanden!
	No talking!	Nicht geplaudert!
	Quick, open the window.	Schnell, das Fenster aufgemacht.
	To delay is not to put off.	Aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben (prov.).

RULES.—(*c*) The English present participle is rendered by the past participle after *kommen*, and in certain expressions. (*d*) The past participle is sometimes employed instead of the imperative or the infinitive.

The Verbal Noun in "-ing."

§ 50. (*a*)	Reading good books is instructive.	Das Lesen guter Bücher ist belehrend. *or* Gute Bücher lesen ist belehrend.
	Helping the poor is our duty.	Den Armen zu helfen ist unsere Pflicht.
	On rising—on entering.	Beim Aufstehen—beim Eintreten.
	It began (ceased) raining.	Es fing an (hörte auf) zu regnen.
	The art of painting in oil.	Die Kunst in Öl zu malen.
	I do not remember having read it.	Ich erinnere mich nicht, es gelesen zu haben.
(*b*)	Instead of sending a messenger, he came himself.	Anstatt einen Boten zu schicken, kam er selbst.
	I insist on your going with me. (To insist on, *bestehen auf*).	Ich bestehe darauf, dass Sie mit mir gehen. (I insist on this, that . . .).
	She will know it without your telling her.	Sie wird es wissen, ohne dass Sie es ihr sagen.
	He sat at the window reading the newspaper.	Er sass am Fenster und las die Zeitung.
	We lay in ambush waiting for the enemy.	Wir lagen auf der Lauer und warteten auf den Feind.
(*c*)	The rising (setting) of the sun.	Der Sonnenaufgang, der Sonnenuntergang.
	The house is building.	Das Haus ist im Bau begriffen (*or* wird gebaut).
	The prolonging of life.	Die Verlängerung des Lebens.

RULES.—The verbal noun in German is the infinitive. The English verbal noun in *-ing* is rendered (*a*) by an infinitive used as a noun or by the supine (*i.e.* the infinitive preceded by *zu*), the latter especially when it is the complement of the predicate or the direct object. When the infinitive is the subject of the sentence it is mostly used without *zu*. (*b*) By a subordinate or co-ordinate clause. (*c*) By a noun (often a verbal noun in *-ung*).

The Infinitive without "zu."

§ 51.	(*a*) You ought to come (to have come).	Sie sollten kommen (Sie hätten kommen sollen).
	We were obliged to leave in the morning.	Wir mussten des Morgens abreisen.
	(*b*) I heard you singing.	Ich hörte Sie singen.
	We saw him working in the garden.	Wir haben ihn im Garten arbeiten sehen. *or* Wir haben gesehen, wie er im Garten arbeitete.
	(*c*) Where did we leave off last?	Wo sind wir zuletzt stehen geblieben?

RULES.—The infinitive without *zu* is used (*a*) after the modal verbs (*sollen*, *wollen*, *müssen*, &c.); (*b*) after *hören*, *sehen*, *fühlen*, *lassen*, *heissen* (to bid, order), *nennen*; (*c*) in *stehen* (*sitzen*, *liegen*) *bleiben*, to remain standing (sitting, lying); *spazieren gehen* (*fahren*), to go for a walk (a drive); *betteln gehen*, to go a-begging; *schlafen legen*, to put to bed. In all other cases the infinitive (depending on a noun, an adjective, or the prepositions *ohne*, *um*, (*an*)*statt*) is preceded by *zu*. **um—zu** denotes purpose, and is very frequently used after adjectives, particularly when they are followed by *genug* or preceded by *zu*: *Er ist nicht reich genug, um dies zu kaufen—Ich bin zu jung, um ohne Wunsch zu sein.*

§ 52.	(*a*) The book was not to be found anywhere.	Das Buch war nirgends zu finden.
	What is to be done against it?	Was ist dagegen zu machen? *or* Was lässt sich dagegen machen?
	(*b*) The book to be read by us.	Das von uns zu lesende Buch.
	The work to be done for to-day.	Die für heute zu machende Arbeit.

RULES.—(*a*) After *sein*, to be, the supine is used with passive force; (*b*) the present participle preceded by *zu* ("gerundive") is likewise employed—attributively only—with passive force.

§ 53.	I shall get a house *built*.	Ich werde mir ein Haus *bauen* lassen (*i.e.* I shall get somebody (implied) to build a house for me).
	I have heard it *said*.	Ich habe es *sagen* hören (*i.e.* I heard somebody (implied) say it).

§ 54.	I do not know what to read. where to go. how to find it.	Ich weiss nicht, was ich lesen soll. wohin ich gehen soll. wie ich es finden soll.
	When a boy he was very ill.	Als er ein Knabe war, war er sehr krank (*or* als Knabe war er sehr krank).
§ 55.	I found it to be the case.	Ich fand, dass es der Fall war.
	I know you to be my friend.	Ich weiss, dass Sie mein Freund sind.

RULE.—The construction of the accusative with infinitive—at one time very common in German—is now mostly rendered by a noun-clause.

The Article.

§ 56.	1.	The belief in immortality.	Der Glaube an die Unsterblichkeit.
		True religion.	Die wahre Religion.
		The blessings of peace.	Die Segnungen des Friedens.
		The hour of twilight.	Die Stunde der Dämmerung (Dämmerstunde).
		The laws of nature.	Die Gesetze der Natur (Naturgesetze).
		In human life.	Im menschlichen Leben (im Menschenleben).
		The feeling of guilt.	Das Gefühl der Schuld (Schuldgefühl).
		The study of history.	Das Studium der Geschichte.
		Walking ; running.	Das Gehen ; das Laufen.
		Water for drinking.	Wasser zum Trinken (Trinkwasser).
		Time for playing.	Zeit zum Spielen.
		Government, Parliament, nobility.	Die Regierung, das Parlament, der Adel.
		The taste of wine.	Der Geschmack des Weines (Weingeschmack).
		The weight of gold.	Das Gewicht des Goldes.
		The flight of birds.	Der Flug der Vögel.
		The strength of animals.	Die Kraft der Tiere.
	2.	In summer (winter, spring, autumn).	Im Sommer, im Winter, im Frühling, im Herbst.
		In June (July).	Im Juni (Juli).
		On Monday (Tuesday).	Am Montag (Dienstag).
		At breakfast, at dinner.	Beim Frühstück, beim Mittag.
		For tea, for supper.	Zum Thee, zum Abendessen.

3. (*a*) Poor John; little Mary.	Der arme Johann; die kleine Marie.
Wealthy London; modern Egypt.	Das reiche London; das heutige Ägypten.
The reign of Queen Victoria.	Die Regierung der Königin Victoria.
Prince Bismarck's life.	Das Leben des Fürsten Bismarck. *or* Fürst Bismarck's Leben.
(*b*) On Mont Blanc.	Auf dem Mont Blanc.
In King Street.	In der Königsstrasse.
4. Three shillings a pound (a yard).	Drei Schilling das Pfund (der Meter).
Two shillings and sixpence a pair (a bottle).	Zwei Mark fünfzig (*i.e.* Pfennige) das Paar (die Flasche).
Twice a day (a year).	Zweimal des Tages (des Jahres).
5. He shook his head.	Er schüttelte den Kopf.
She held a flower in her hand.	Sie hielt eine Blume in der Hand.
Put the money in your pocket.	Stecken Sie das Geld in die Tasche.
6. At church; at school.	In der Kirche; in der Schule.
To church; to school.	In die Kirche; in die Schule.
In town; in prison.	In der Stadt; im Gefängnis.
To town; to prison.	In die Stadt; ins Gefängnis.
Most people.	Die meisten Menschen.
In most cases.	In den meisten Fällen.
Half of it.	Die Hälfte davon.
I am of opinion.	Ich bin der Meinung.

RULES.—The definite article is employed in German—(1) Before abstract and collective nouns (used in a general sense), before infinitive nouns, and before names of materials and species. (2) Before names of seasons (months, days) and meals. (3) Before proper nouns, (*a*) when they are qualified by attributes; (*b*) when they are the names of mountains, rivers, streets. (4) In a distributive sense. (5) Instead of the possessive adjective when parts of the body or dress are referred to, or when the context clearly shows the possessor. (6) In certain idiomatic expressions.

Omission of the Article.

§ 57. 1. His father's garden.	Seines Vaters Garten.
Schiller's poems.	Schiller's Gedichte.
This is the gentleman the brother of whom (=whose brother) you know.	Dies ist der Herr, dessen Bruder Sie kennen.
The flower the fragrance of which . . .	Die Blume, deren Duft . .

2.	Poverty is no disgrace.	Armut ist keine Schande.
	Overwhelmed with obloquy and disgrace.	Mit Schimpf und Schande überhäuft.
	The ship sank with all on board.	Das Schiff ging mit Mann und Maus unter.
	Turned out of house and home.	Von Haus und Hof vertrieben.
	Heart and soul at work.	Mit Leib und Leben bei der Arbeit.
	In spite of the boisterous weather.	Trotz Wind und Wetter.
3.	First he was a teacher, then he became a doctor.	Zuerst war er Lehrer, dann wurde er Arzt.
	But: Er war ein guter Lehrer,	er wurde ein tüchtiger Arzt.
	He remained a cobbler.	Er blieb Schuster.
4.	All the people I know.	Alle Menschen, die ich kenne.
	Many a man; many a one.	Mancher Mann; Mancher, e, es.
	No less a man.	Kein geringerer Mann.
	As (*i.e.* in the quality or condition of) a king.	Als König.
	Without a hat.	Ohne Hut.
5.	From the north, south.	Von Norden, Süden.
	Towards east, west.	Nach (gegen) Osten, Westen.
	Have you a mind to go?	Haben Sie Lust zu gehen?
	I have a headache.	Ich habe Kopfweh.
	At the end of the month (week).	Ende des Monats (der Woche).
	At the beginning of January.	Anfang Januar.

RULES.—The article is omitted—

1. In the "Saxon genitive" and after the genitive of relative pronouns.
2. In proverbs and certain word combinations, as in English.
3. After *sein*, *werden*, and *bleiben* when the predicate noun is not qualified by an adjective.
4. After *alle*, *mancher*, *kein geringerer*, and mostly after *als* and *ohne*.
5. In certain expressions.

§ 58.	Double the amount.	Der doppelte Betrag.
	Half-an-hour; half the time.	Eine halbe Stunde, die halbe Zeit.
	Too short a day.	Ein zu kurzer Tag.
	Both the books.	Die beiden Bücher (*or* beide Bücher).
	I saw the house and garden.	Ich sah das Haus und den Garten.

PROGRESSIVE
GERMAN COMPOSITION.

Words in round brackets are not to be translated.

PART FIRST

THE NARCISSUS (1).

There was once a very beautiful nymph[1] named[2] Echo, who had never, in all her life, seen anybody handsomer than the god Pan. You have read that Pan was the greatest of all the Satyrs,[3] and what hideous[4] monsters[5] the Satyrs were. So, when Pan made love[6] to her, she very naturally kept[7] him at a distance; and as she thought that he was no worse-looking than the rest[8] of the world, she made up[9] her mind to have nothing to do with love, and was quite content to live in the woods all alone. But one day Echo happened[10] to meet (with) a young man who was as different from Pan as any creature could be. Instead of having (a) goat's[11] legs and long hairy arms, he was as graceful[12] as Apollo himself: no horns grew out of his forehead,[13] and his ears were not long, pointed,[14] and covered with hair, but just like Echo's own. And he was just as beautiful in face[15] as he was graceful in form. I doubt if Echo would have considered[16] even Apollo himself so beautiful.

---

1. **Nymph**, die Nymphe.
2. **Named**, genannt; namens.
3. **Satyr**, der Satyr (*pl.* —en).
4. **Hideous**, scheusslich.
5. **Monster**, das Ungeheuer.
6. **To make love to**, den Hof machen (dat.).
7. **To keep at a distance**, fern halten.
8. =all other people.
9. **To make up one's mind**, sich entschliessen.
10. **Happened to meet**, met by chance.

11. **(A) goat's legs**, Ziegenbeine.

12. **Graceful**, anmutig.

13. **Forehead**, die Stirn.

14. **Pointed**, zugespitzt; spitz.

Point (*of a needle*, *knife*), die Spitze.

An important point, ein wichtiger Punkt.

On the point of leaving, im Begriff abzureisen.

15. **Beautiful in face** (in form), schön von Gesicht (von Gestalt).

16. **Consider**, halten (für).

THE NARCISSUS (2).

The nymphs were rather shy,[1] and Echo was the shyest of them all. But she admired him so much[2] that she could not leave the spot, and at last she even had courage enough to ask him, "What is the name[3] of the most beautiful being[4] in the whole world?" "Whom do you mean?" asked he. "Yourself?[5] If you want to know your own name, you can tell it better than I can." "No," said Echo, "I don't mean myself. I mean *you*. What is *your* name?" "My name is Narcissus," said he. "But as[6] for my beauty—that is absurd."[7] "Narcissus!" repeated Echo. "It is a beautiful name. Which of the nymphs have you come to meet here in these woods all alone? She is lucky—whoever she may be." "I have come to meet nobody," said Narcissus. "But—am I really so beautiful? I have often been told[8] so by other girls, of course;[9] but really it is more than I can believe."

1. **Rather** (=somewhat) **shy**, *ziemlich* schüchtern.

I would rather (=*in preference*) *stay at home*, ich würde *lieber* zu Hause bleiben.

2. **Much**, *as adv. is* sehr.

3. **What is the name?** wie heisst?

My name is, ich heisse.

4. **Being**, das Wesen.

5. selbst *is invariable:* ich selbst, wir selbst, &c.

6. **As for**, was . . . betrifft ("what concerns").

7. **Absurd**, lächerlich (literally "ridiculous").

8. sagen *requires the dative case after it: hence, I am told*, **mir** wird gesagt; *he was told*, ihm wurde gesagt; *I have been told*, es ist mir (*or* mir ist) gesagt worden.

9. **Of course**, natürlich.

THE NARCISSUS (3).

"And you don't care[1] for any[2] of those girls?" "Well,"[3] said Narcissus, "there is no reason why I should like[4] one better than another. They all seem alike when they are all always saying the same (thing). Ah! I wish I could see myself, so that I could tell if it was really true. I would marry[5] the girl who could give me the wish of my heart—to see myself as other people see me. But as nobody can make me do that, I suppose I shall get[6] on very well without marrying anybody." Looking-glasses had not been invented in those days, so that Narcissus had really not even[7] seen so much of himself as his chin.[8] "What!" cried Echo, full of hope and joy; "if I make you see your own face, you will marry *me?*" "I said so," said he; "and of course I'll do what I said." "Then[9]—come with me!"

1. **I do not care for him**, ich mache mir nichts aus ihm.
   Do you care much for it? machen sie sich viel daraus?
2. **Any** (adj.), irgend ein (eine, ein); (pron.) irgend einer (eine, eines).
3. **Well** (interj.), nun!
4. **I like**, ich habe gern; *I like better* (*best*), ich habe lieber (am liebsten).
5. **Marry**, heiraten.
   A married man, ein verheirateter Mann.
6. **Get on**, *here*, fort'kommen.
   How are you getting on? wie geht's?
   I am getting on well, mir geht es gut.
7. **Not even**, nicht einmal.
   Even I, selbst ich *or* sogar ich.
8. **Chin**, das Kinn.
9. **Then**, dann.
   Then (=*at that time*) *I was happy*, damals war ich glücklich.
   Then (=*afterwards*) *I shall go with you*, dann werde ich mit Ihnen gehen.

THE NARCISSUS (4).

Echo took him by the hand and led him to the edge[1] of a little lake in the middle[2] of the wood, full of clear water. "Kneel[3] down, Narcissus," said she. "That lake is the mirror where Diana comes every morning to comb[4] her hair, and in which, every night, the moon and the stars behold themselves. Look into the water and see what manner of man you are!" Narcissus kneeled down and looked into the lake; and, better than in any common looking-glass, he saw the image[5] of his own face—and he looked, and looked, and could not take[6] his eyes away. But Echo at last grew tired of waiting. "Have you forgotten what you promised me?" asked she. "Are you content now? Do you see that what I told you is true?" He lifted his eyes at last. "Oh, beautiful creature that I am!" said he. "I am indeed the most divine creature in the whole wide world. Go away. I want to be with my beautiful image, with myself, all alone. I can't marry you. I shall never love anybody[7] but myself as long as I live." And he kneeled down and gazed at himself once more, while poor Echo had to go weeping away.

---

1. **To the edge**, an den Rand.
2. **In the middle of**, mitten in.
3. **Kneel down**, nieder'knieen.
4. **To comb**, kämmen (der Kamm).
5. **Image**, das Abbild.
6. **Take away** (=turn away), weg'wenden.
7. **Anybody but**, jemand anders als.

The Narcissus (5).

Narcissus had spoken truly. He loved himself and his own face so much that he could think of nothing else:[1] he spent all his days and nights by[2] the lake, and never took his eyes away. But unluckily[3] his image, which was only a shadow in the water, could not love[4] him back again; and so he pined[5] away until he died. And when his friends came to look for his body, they found nothing but a flower, into which his soul had turned.[6] So they called it the Narcissus, and we call it so still. And yet I don't know that it is a particularly conceited[7] or selfish[8] flower. As for poor Echo, she pined away too.[9]

She faded[10] and faded until nothing was left of her but her voice. There are many places where she can even now be heard. And she still has the same trick[11] of saying to vain[12] and foolish people whatever they say to themselves, or whatever they would like best to hear (said) of them. If you go where Echo is, and call out loudly, "I am beautiful!" she will echo[13] your very words.—*After* Francillon, *Gods and Heroes.*

1. **Nothing else,** nichts weiter; sonst nichts.
2. an.
3. **Unluckily,** unglücklicherweise.
4. **To love back again,** wieder lieben.
5. **To pine away,** sich verzehren.
6. **To turn** (intr.), sich verwandeln.
7. **Conceited,** eingebildet.
8. **Selfish,** selbstsüchtig.
9. **She pined away too,** sie grämte sich ebenfalls zu Tode.
10. **To fade,** welken.
11. **Trick,** *here,* die Art.
12. **Vain,** eitel.
13. **To echo** = to repeat.

CALCUTTA (1).

Calcutta, the capital of India, is situated[1] on the river Hoogli, one of the mouths[2] of the Ganges. It is about ninety miles from the sea, and those ninety miles form the most dangerous part of the whole voyage. One part indeed is so dangerous, that it is a rule to have all the passengers on deck[3] while passing it. The cause of the danger lies in the swiftness of the current[4] combined with the ever-shifting[5] bed of the stream. If a ship therefore once touches the bottom, she broaches to,[6] and the current overturns her. The Ganges is a large muddy[7] river, somewhat like the Rhine in appearance, and considerably larger than any we have in this country. Its banks are flat, with trees and villages everywhere. Near the mouth, the land is so low, and so apt to be overflowed[8] in the rainy season, that cultivation[9] has been abandoned; and now, under the name of the *Sunderbunds*, it is covered with jungle,[10] and inhabited by tigers and other beasts of prey.[11] Calcutta, "the city of palaces," is wonderfully British-like[12] in many things. Its streets are wide, its houses handsome. Tramway cars[13] run along the centre of the principal streets, while trees shade the pathway.[14] There are gas-lamps[15] too, and cabs[16] (here called *garries*), and large shops with signboards in English. The streets, too, have English names, and the houses are numbered,[17] and policemen[18] stand at the corners of the streets, just as they (do) at home.

1. **Is situated**, ist gelegen *or* liegt (an *w. dat.*).

2. **Mouth**, der Mund; (of a river) Mündung.

3. **On deck**, auf Deck (n.).

4. **Swiftness of current**, die reissende Strömung.

   Current of air, der Luftstrom, die Luftströmung.
   Current account, laufende Rechnung.
   A report was current, ein Gerücht lief um.

5. **To shift**, wechseln.

   To make shift, sich behelfen.
   Shiftless, hilflos; ungeschickt.

6. **Broaches to**, kommt mit der Breitseite gegen den Wind.

   Broach a question, eine Frage aufs Tapet bringen (*cp.* Fr. *sur le tapis*).

7. **Muddy**, schlammig; der Schlamm [**slime**].

8. **Apt to be overflowed**, zu Überschwemmungen geneigt.

9. **Cultivation**, der Feldbau; (education) (Aus)bildung.

10. **Jungle**, das Dickicht.

11. **Beast of prey**, das Raubtier.

12. **British-like**, *say*, looks British.

13. **Tramway car**, die Pferdebahn *or* Strassenbahn.

14. **Pathway**, Fussweg.

15. **Gas-lamp**, die Gaslaterne.

16. **Cab**, Droschke (f.).

17. **To number** (houses), numerieren.

18. **Policeman**, Schutzmann, *or* Polizist.

---

liegen: **lie.**
die Lage: *situation*, **lay***er.*
das Lager: *couch*, *camp*, **lair**.
lagern (sich): *encamp.*
legen: *put*, **lay**.
Gelegenheit: *opportunity.*
gelegen**t**lich: *occasional;* (adv.) *at convenience.*

der Mund: **mouth.**
munden: *relish.*
münden: *flow into.*
Mündung: *mouth of river.*
mündlich: *oral*, *verbal.*
-mund (m.) *in compds.*: *protection.*
Vormund (*pl.* ¨er), *guardian.*
mündig: *of age.*
Mündel (m. and f.): *ward*, *minor.*

CALCUTTA (2).

But, on the other hand,[1] the people by whom you[2] are surrounded have all dark-brown[3] faces and white cotton robes. They usually wear nothing on either head or feet, while the little children run about naked, or are carried astride[4] of their mother's hip.[5] Then, in place of carts with horses, you see rude[6] waggons drawn by a couple of small *patient-eyed* oxen, with the driver perched[7] on the pole[8] betwixt them. In place of cabs, too, you often see a large square[9] box, called a palanquin, carried by four men, in which ladies usually travel from place to place. There are no water-carts,[10] but men called bheesties go about with a skin of water[11] tied to their backs, laying the dust; there are no barbers' shops,[12] but the barber sits at the corner of the street, and shaves[13] his customers while seated on the curb-stone;[14] and there are no grass-plots[15] in the squares, but there are tanks[16] instead, filled with water. The people are very quiet and civil. Nobody molests you[17] in the slightest. You see no drunk people and no fighting.[18] They live more leisurely than we do, and nobody is ever seen in a hurry. Such beggars as there are, are not importunate.[19] Articles[20] for sale in the shops are cheaper than with us, only the shopkeepers[21] invariably ask three times as much as they are willing to accept. You must therefore know the price of things before you go to buy them.—*What I saw in India*, LAWSON.

---

1. **On the other hand**, andrerseits.
2. **You**, throughout this piece to be rendered by "man."
3. **Dark-brown**, dunkelbraun.
   Light-brown, hellbraun.
4. **Astride**, rittlings.
5. **Hip**, die Hüfte.
6. **Rude**, roh, grob; (impolite) unhöflich.
7. **Perched**, *say*, sitting.
8. **Pole** (of a carriage), die Deichsel.
   North Pole, der Nordpol.
9. **Square** (adj.), viereckig.
   We are square, now (colloq.), jetzt sind wir quitt.
   Square (geomet.), das Quadrat, *or* Viereck.
   Square mile, die Quadratmeile.
   A (public) square, freier Platz.

10. **Water-cart**, der Wasserkarren.

11. **Skin of water**, der Wasserschlauch.

12. **Barber's shop**, Barbierladen (m.).

13. **To shave**, rasieren; (das Rasiermesser).

14. **Curb-stone**, der Kerbstein.

15. **Grass-plot**, der Rasenplatz.

16. **Tank**, der Behälter.

17. *Man* is only used in the nom., how are the other cases made up?

18. **No fighting**, keine Schlägereien.

19. **Importunate**, zudringlich; lästig.

20. **Article**, der Gegenstand; (gramm.) der Artikel.

Articles of clothing, Kleidungsstücke.

21. **Shopkeeper**, der Ladeninhaber.

tragen: *carry* **[draw, drag]**. der Träger: *bearer*.	der Ertrag: *produce, yield*. erträglich: *endurable*. die Tracht: *costume*.	das Getreide (*fr.* M.H.G. getregede): "*that which the earth bears*," *corn, grain*.
schlagen: *beat*, **slay**. der Schlag: 1. *stroke, blow*; 2. *kind, sort*.	Schlacht: *battle*, **slaughter**. Schlächter, *butcher*.	das Geschlecht: *species, race, fr.* Schlag 2. ungeschlacht: *uncouth, boorish, fr.* Schlag 2.
ziehen: *draw*. erziehen: *educate*. Erziehung: *education*. der Zug: *pull, draught, train, &c.* [*tug*].	der Zügel: *bridle, rein*. die Zucht: *breed, good breeding, discipline*. züchtigen: *chastise*.	zucken, zücken: *move quickly, quiver*. Herzog: *duke*, "*army leader*." Zögling (m.): *pupil*.

Happiness and Misery.

"That I want[1] nothing," said the Abyssinian Prince, "or that I know not what I want, is the cause of my complaint:[2] if I had any known want,[3] I should have a certain wish; that wish would excite endeavour, and I should not then repine[4] to see the sun move so slowly towards the western mountain, or lament when the day breaks[5] and sleep *will* no longer hide me from myself. When I see the kids[6] and the lambs chasing one another, I fancy I should be happy if I had something to pursue. But, possessing all that I can want, I find one day and one hour exactly like another, except that the latter is still more tedious[7] than the former. Let your experience inform[8] me how the day may now seem as short as in my childhood, while nature was yet fresh, and every moment showed me what

I never had observed before. I have already enjoyed too much: give me something to desire." The old man was surprised at this new *species* of affliction,[9] and knew not what to[10] reply, yet was unwilling to be silent. "Sir," said he, "if you had seen the miseries[11] of the world, you would know how to value your present state." "Now," said the Prince, "you have given me something to desire; I (shall) long[12] to see the miseries of the world, since the sight of them[13] is necessary to happiness."—SAMUEL JOHNSON.

1. **I want nothing**, mir fehlt nichts.
   - *To want* (*need*), bedürfen (gen.), brauchen.
   - *I want to know why*, ich möchte wissen, warum.
   - *Do you want to see me*, wünschen Sie mich zu sprechen.
2. **Complaint**, die Klage.
3. **The want**, das Bedürfnis; der Mangel (an).
4. **Repine**, Verdruss empfinden; murren (über).
5. **The day breaks**, der Tag bricht an.
6. **Kid**, die Zicke; (*fr.* Ziege, *goat*).
   - *Kid gloves*, Glacéhandschuhe.
7. **Tedious**, langweilig.
8. *Here:* belehren.
9. **Affliction**, das Leiden; der Kummer.
10. What he was to reply.
11. **Miseries**, das Elend.
12. **To long**, sich sehnen nach.
13. **Sight of them** = *their sight*, der Anblick.

---

schweigen (intr.): *be silent.*
geschweige (adv.): *to say nothing of.*

schweigsam: *silent.*
verschweigen (tr.): *keep secret, conceal.*

verschwiegen: *reserved, discreet.*
Verschwiegenheit: *secrecy, reserve.*

To **sleep: schlafen.**
The sleep: der Schlaf.
Sleeper: der Schläfer.

Sleepy: schläfrig.
Sleepless: schlaflos.
Sleeplessness: Schlaflosigkeit.

I am sleepy: es schläfert mich, *or* mich schläfert.

Sweetheart's[1] Tea-Party (1).

There was a state[2] tea-party in the nursery[3] to-day. Sweetheart, Hugo, and Baby Brother[4] sent out the invitations. At least, Sweetheart *did*, for she is nearly five.[5] Hugo did nothing but watch for a chance at the box of rusks.[6] And as for[7] Baby Brother, he also did nothing but knock over[8] the tea-table after it was *all* set.[9] So he *had to be* tied in his tall chair by fastening his broad blue sash[10] through the bars at the back.[11] Then he said very loud that he did not like it at all—so loud that he brought in [the] mother off the stairs.[12] This was[13] a chance for Sweetheart to ask mother if she would come to the tea-party, and if she might take[14] the note of invitation to the study,[15] where father was working and *must not* be disturbed.

So mother said *she might*, and Sweetheart came down and knocked very gently at the study door. "Come in!" cried some one within, so quickly that Sweetheart was quite startled.

1. **Sweetheart**, das Liebchen.
2. **State** (pomp), Staat, *m.*
   State apartment, Staatszimmer.
   State (*empire*), Staat; Reich, *n.*
3. **Nursery**, die Kinderstube.
   Nursery (fig.), die Pflegeanstalt; Pflanzschule.
4. **Baby Brother**, *say*, das jüngste Brüderchen.
5. Five years old.
6. **Did . . . rusks**, *turn:* waited only for a chance of getting the **box** of rusks (die **Zwieback-Büchse**).
7. **As for**, was . . . betrifft (acc.).
8. **Knock over**, um'werfen.
9. **To set** (table), (den Tisch) decken.
   Set sail, unter Segel gehen.
   ,, *a time*, Zeit fest'setzen.
   ,, *the fashion*, den Ton an'geben.
10. **Sash**, die Schärpe.
11. **Bars at the back**, die Rückenlehne (sgl.).
12. **Off the stair**, die Treppe (sgl.) hinunter.
13. *Say:* gave Sweetheart a chance.
14. **Take**, bringen.
15. **Study** (a room), das Studierzimmer.
    Study of music, das Studium (*pl.* —ien) der Musik.

Take: nehmen.
Take a cup of tea: trinken Sie eine Tasse Thee.
They took him prisoner: man nahm ihn gefangen.
What do you take me for: wofür halten Sie mich.
He was taken ill: er wurde krank.
It would take much time: es würde viel Zeit erfordern.
He has taken into his head: er hat sich (dat.) in den Kopf gesetzt.

SWEETHEART'S TEA-PARTY (2).

"If you please,[1] Mister[2] Father," she said very politely, "Lady[3] Jane Howard, Sir[3] Hugo, and Lord[3] Baby Brother request the pleasure of your company to tea in the Castle nursery." That was the *way*[4] Sweetheart said it, for she liked [5] to pretend [6] (that she was) either a duchess or a schoolmistress.[7] She was quite determined to be somebody really great.[8] Of course she liked best to be a school-teacher, for it is so nice to whip the chairs with a little *cane* when they are naughty—and then, you know, they mostly are.

Now, it happened that "Mister Father," as Sweetheart called him, was a little tired, or perhaps a little lazy (such things, alas! have been),[9] and so he thought it would do him good to go up to tea in the nursery. He came in after the guests were all seated, looking very grave and solemn,[10] as Sweetheart thought, when he *peered* over the top [11] of his glasses.[12]

1. **If you please,** bitte ; (gefälligst *never begins a sentence*).

2. *Whilst Mister would, of course, be omitted here, we do say:* Ihr Herr Vater, Ihre Frau Mutter, *in polite address.*

3. Such titles as Lady, Lord, &c., are left untranslated.

4. **The way** = the manner how.

5. *Not* lieben.
I like to read (*I am fond of reading*), ich lese gern.
I should like to read, ich möchte (gern) lesen.
I do not like reading, ich lese nicht gern.

6. **Pretend** (to sham), sich stellen (als ob); sich aus′geben für.
He pretends to be ill, er stellt sich krank, *or* . . . als ob er — wäre.
Pretend, tr. (*use as pretext*), vor′schützen, vor′geben: er gab Krankheit vor.

7. **Schoolmistress**, Lehrerin.

8. **Somebody great,** etwas Rechtes.

9. **Such things, alas! have been,** so etwas ist leider vorgekommen (*has occurred*).

10. **Solemn**, feierlich.

11. **Over the top,** über den Rand.

12. **Glasses** (spectacles), die Brille (sgl.).

My neighbour is a **most** *learned man:* mein Nachbar ist ein äusserst gelehrter Mann (absolute superl.).
He is the most learned man I know: er ist der gelehrteste Mann, den ich kenne (relative superl.).
Most people, die meisten Leute.
He is mostly at home: er ist meistens (meistenteils) zu Hause.
He is at most fifteen years old: er ist höchstens fünfzehn Jahre alt.
I have much (viel), *you have more* (mehr), *he has most* (am meisten).

SWEETHEART'S TEA-PARTY (3).

Then Sweetheart, whose hands shook [1] with the pleasure and dignity, made tea in a beautiful set [2] of little cups without any handles,[3] which had been given her at Christmas.[4]

This[5] is how she did it. First she put a *pinch* of tea into each cup, and then she poured hot water out of a little teapot upon the tea. This pleased [the] father *very much.* "That is just the way that tea ought to be made," he said. "Do you know that in China, *where* tea first came *from*, that was the old way of making tea?"

Here Mr. Father looked very wisely through his glasses at the little cup and sipped[6] his tea. Sweetheart felt a little anxious.[7] "This is very nice," she said to herself, "but I do[8] hope it's not *going to* be improving."[9] But father went on[10] without hearing her:

1. **Shake** (from agitation), zittern (vor).

Shake (*to move, tr.*) schütteln.
Shake hands, die Hand reichen.

2. **Set** (of plate), der Satz; das Service.

3. **Handle** (of a jug), der Henkel; (*from* henken, *causat. of* hangen).

Handle (*of a knife*), der Stiel [*but* der Stil=**style**].

4. **At Christmas**, zu Weihnachten (der Weihnachts-Abend; -baum).

5. *Say:* in the following manner she did it.

6. **To sip**, schlürfen.

7. **Felt anxious**, *here say*, wurde bange (dat.).

8. **I** *do* **hope**, *do* as emphasis may be translated in various ways—

I do hope, ich hoffe doch.
He did go, er ging wirklich.
Do make haste, beeilen Sie sich doch.

9. **Improving**, belehrend.

10. **To go on**, fort'fahren.

Put: setzen, "*make sit.*"
legen: "*make lie.*"
stellen: "*make stand.*"
Put the picture lower: hängen Sie das Bild niedriger.

Put a question: eine Frage stellen.
This puts me in mind: dies erinnert mich an (acc.).

To put the case: den Fall setzen; an'nehmen.
Put on (*clothes*): an'ziehen.
Put off: aus'ziehen.

Sweetheart's Tea-Party (4).

"Do you know, Sweetheart, that all the tea used to[1] come from China in tall ships? And when the captains got their cargoes[2] of fresh tea on board,[3] they used to try all their might[4] who would *get* first to England. Famous races[5] there used to be.[6] Sometimes two or three of the fast sailing ships would[7] keep within sight[8] of each other all[9] the way, and the sailors *grew* so anxious for their ship to win that they could hardly go to bed at all." "Why did they want to get to England so fast?" asked Sweetheart. "Because they could get more money for the tea in the market, and then the captain and all the sailors *would* get something for themselves *for winning* the race." "That was nice," said Sweetheart. "I wish I had been there. I like to run fast, and I hate to[10] go to bed."

1. **Used to . . .,** *with inf.*, pflegen (wk.) . . . zu.
2. **Cargo,** die Fracht (E. **freight**); Schiffsladung.
3. **On board,** an Bord (m.).
   Board and lodging, Kost (f.) und Wohnung (*or* die Pension).
   Schoolboard, die Schulbehörde.
4. **All their might,** *mit* aller Gewalt.
   Might is right, der Stärkste hat Recht.
5. **Race** (sport), Wettfahrt (f.); -lauf (m.).
   Race (*lineage*), Geschlecht (n.), Stamm (m.).
   von königlichem Geschlecht.
   die kaukasische Rasse.
   die Jagd nach Reichtum.
6. **To be** = take place.
7. What is the meaning of *would*, here? Translate accordingly.
8. **Keep (with)in sight,** in Sicht (f.) bleiben.
9. What case?
10. **I hate to,** *say*, I don't like to.

To get: *one's bread:* sein Brot erwerben;
a cold: sich erkälten;
possession of: Besitz nehmen von.
Ill-gotten, ill-spent: wie gewonnen, so zerronnen.
Have you got this book? haben Sie dieses Buch?
They could not be got to do it: man konnte sie nicht dazu bringen (es zu thun).
I have got a new house built: ich habe mir ein neues Haus bauen lassen.
It is getting late: es wird spät.
To get near: nahe kommen.
How are you getting on? wie geht's?

Sweetheart's Tea-Party (5).

Baby Brother here intimated[1] that he had not had enough, by hammering on the tray[2] in front of his chair with his little tin cup,[3] which he held upside down.[4] Sweetheart went to him and gave him a little piece of biscuit,[5] which, grievous to relate,[6] he instantly threw on the floor. "It's more sugar you want, I know," she said sadly, "and that's just what you can't have." "I'll take[7] *another* cup (if you please), Lady Jane Howard," said father. Lady Jane was very proud of being *asked for* another cup of her (very) own tea, and *made* it out instantly. Then she was ready to listen again.

"Do you know," Mr. Father continued, "that in a strange, wild place called Tartary[8] the people boil the tea into a kind (of) porridge[9] with butter and flour? How would you like that for breakfast?" "Baby Brother could have that. *He* likes porridge," answered Lady Jane Howard promptly.[10] After this the tea-party was broken up,[11] for [the] nurse came to the door to dress Lord Baby Brother for his perambulator.[12] And as Lady Jane washed up the tea-things[13] she said to herself: "It *was*[14] very nice, and not so very improving. We shall ask[15] Mister Father again, I think."—S. R. CROCKETT.

1. **To intimate**, an′deuten (wk.).
2. **Tray** (Kaffee- Thee-) Brett (n.).
3. **Tin**, das Zinn, das Blech.
   „ **cup**, die Blechtasse.
4. **Upside down**, verkehrt.
   To turn upside down, das Oberste zu unterst kehren.
5. **Biscuit**, der Zwieback.
6. **Grievous to relate**, *interpolate a whole clause:* I am sorry to say.
7. Ich bitte um noch eine . . . ("*if you please*" *is already expressed by* ich bitte).
8. **Tartary**, die Tartarei.
9. **Porridge**, der Brei.
10. **Promptly**, schnell [E. "**snell**"].
11. **To break up**, auf′heben.
12. **For his perambulator**, *say*, zum Ausfahren.
13. **Tea-things**, das Theegeschirr [schirren, "*to harness*," *prepare*].
14. **It** *was: express the emphasis by saying*, es war wirklich (*or* in der That).
15. **Ask** = invite.

Grief: der Kummer, Gram.
To come to grief: zu Falle kommen.
Grievance: die Beschwerde.
It grieves me to the heart: es thut mir in der Seele weh.
To be grieved at: sich grämen über (acc.).
Grievous: schmerzlich, schrecklich.

waschen: wash.
die Wäsche: *linen, washing.*
die Wäscherin: *washerwoman.*
das Gewäsch: *idle talk, nonsense.*

backen: bake.
der Bäcker: *baker.*
die Bäckerei: *bakehouse.*
das Gebäck: *pastry.*
der Zwieback: *biscuit, rusk.*
hausbacken: *homely, plain;* "*home-baked.*"

From THOMAS CARLYLE *to* HIS MOTHER (1).

"KIRKCALDY, *March* 17, 1817.

"MY DEAR MOTHER,—I have been long intending to write you a line or two in order to let you know my state and condition,[1] but having nothing worth writing to communicate, I have put it off from time to time. There was little enjoyment for any person at Mainhill when I was there last, but I look forward to[2] the ensuing autumn, when I hope to have the happiness of discussing[3] matters with you as we were wont[4] to do of old. It gives me pleasure to hear that the children are at school. There are few things in this world more valuable than knowledge,[5] and youth is the period for acquiring it. With the exception of the religious and moral instruction which I had the happiness of receiving from my parents, and which I humbly[6] trust will not be entirely lost upon me, there is nothing for which I feel more grateful than for the education which they have bestowed upon[7] me. . . .

1. **State and condition**, *here*, das Befinden.
2. **Look forward to**, entgegen'sehen (dat.).
3. **Discuss**, besprechen.
    Not worth discussing, nicht der Rede wert.
    To close the discussion, die Debatte schliessen.
4. **To be wont to**, pflegen (wk.).
5. **Knowledge**, Kenntnisse (pl.).
6. **Humbly**, demütig.
    Your humble servant, Ihr gehorsamster Diener.
    To humble, demütigen.
7. **Bestow upon**, verleihen (dat).

---

lassen : *to* **let**, *leave*.
gelassen: *composed*, *calm*.

unerlässliche Bedingung: *indispensable condition*.

lässig : *inactive*, **lazy**.
nachlässig : *negligent*.

From THOMAS CARLYLE *to* HIS MOTHER (2).

"I had designed[1] this night to write to Aitken about his books and studies, but I will scarcely have time to say anything. There is a book for him in the box, and I would have sent him the geometry, but it was not to be had in the town. I have sent you a scarf[2] as near the kind as Aitken's very scanty[3] description would allow me to come. I hope it will please you. It is as good as any that the merchant had. A shawl[4] of the same materials[5] would have been warmer, but I had no authority to get it. Perhaps you would like to have a shawl also. If you will tell me what colour you prefer, I will send it to you with all the pleasure of the world. I expect to hear from you as soon as you can find leisure.[6] You must be very minute[7] in your *account* of your domestic affairs.[8] My father once spoke of a threshing-machine.[9] If twenty pounds or so will help him, they are quite ready at his service.[10]—I remain, dear mother, your affectionate[11] son,

"THOMAS CARLYLE."

—J. A. FROUDE, *Carlyle's Early Life.*

---

[1] **Design** = intend.

[2] **Scarf**, die Binde; (Kravatte).

[3] **Scanty**, karg (**chary**), knapp.

[4] **Shawl**, der Shawl.

[5] **Materials**, der Stoff.

[6] **Leisure**, die Musse.

To be at leisure, Musse haben; frei sein.
Do it at your leisure (*convenience*), . . . nach Ihrer Bequemlichkeit.

[7] **Minute** (exact), genau; (die Genauigkeit).

[8] **Domestic affairs**, häusliche Angelegenheiten.

Domestic trade, inländischer Handel.

[9] **Threshing-machine**, die Dreschmaschine.

[10] **To be at a person's service**, einem zu Diensten stehen.

[11] **Affectionate**, liebend.

fallen: *to* **fall**.
fällen: *to* **fell**.
gefallen: *to please.*
ich that es ihm zu Gefallen (m.): *I did it to please him.*
gefällig: *obliging.*
Gefälligkeit: *kindness, favour.*
der Fall: **fall**, *case.*
die Falle: *pitfall, snare.*
fällig: *fallen due, due.*

From JANE EYRE (1).

"What age were you when you went to Lowood?" "About ten." "And you stayed there eight years: you are now, then,[1] eighteen?" I assented.[2] "Arithmetic,[3] you see,[4] is useful; without its aid I should hardly have been able to guess your age. It is a point difficult to fix[5] where the features and countenance are so much at variance[6] as in your case. And now what did you learn at Lowood? Can you play?"[7] "A little." "Of course, that is the *established* answer. Go into the library[8]—I mean, if you please.[9]—(Excuse my tone of command;[10] I am used to say, 'Do this,' and it is done.[11])—Go, then, into the library; take a candle with you; leave the door open; sit down to the piano,[12] and play a tune." I departed, obeying his directions.[13] "Enough!" he called out in a few minutes. "You play a little, I see—like any other English school-girl; perhaps rather better than some, but not well."[14] I closed the piano and returned. Mr. Rochester continued:

1. **Then** = thus, also.

2. **I assented**, *say*, Ich machte ein Zeichen der Bejahung.

To assent, bei'pflichten, zu'stimmen.

3. **Arithmetic**, die Arithmetik'; das Rechnen.

4. *Say:* as you see.

5. **To fix**, bestimmen; fest'setzen.

Fix upon, sich entschliessen für.

6. **To be at variance**, sich widersprechen (insep.) [der Widerspruch].

7. **Play**, *here*, Klavier spielen.

8. **Library**, die Bibliothek'; *here better*, das Studierzimmer.

Circulating library, Leihbibliothek.
Librarian, der Bibliothekar'.

9. *Here:* wenn ich bitten darf.

10. **Tone of command**, der befehlende Ton [der Thon, *clay*].

I am at your command, ich stehe Ihnen zu Befehl.
To have in one's command, in seiner Gewalt haben.

11. **It is done**, es geschieht.

12. **To sit down to the piano**, sich ans Klavier setzen.

13. **Directions**, die Anweisung, der Befehl.

What direction did he take? welche Richtung schlug er ein?
Under my direction, unter meiner Leitung.

14. **Well**, gut; wohl *as adv. is used with a few verbs only* (ich befinde mich wohl; leben Sie wohl, *farewell*) *and in compounds* (die Wohlfahrt, **welfare**; Wohlthäter, *benefactor;* wohlweislich, *prudently*, *&c.*).

---

die Kunst: *art.*
künstlich: *artificial.*
der Künstler: *artist.*
künstlerisch: *artistic.*

Stimmen: *to vote, tune;* (fröhlich stimmen: *put in a gay humour*).
die Stimme: *vote, voice.*
Stimmung: *mood, humour.*
zu'stimmen (dat.): *assent.*
überein'stimmen (mit): *agree with* (*in opinion*).
verstimmen: *put out of humour.*

befehlen (dat.): *command.*
befehligen (acc.): *command (an army).*
der Befehl: *order.*
befehlerisch: *overbearing, imperious.*
der (Ober)befehlshaber: *commander(-in-chief).*

From JANE EYRE (2).

"Adèle showed me some sketches[1] this morning which she said were yours. I don't know whether they were entirely of your doing;[2] probably a master[3] aided you?" "No, indeed!"[4] I interjected. "Ah! that pricks pride.[5] Well, fetch me your portfolio[6] if you can vouch for[7] its contents being original. But don't *pass* your word unless you are certain; I can recognise patchwork."[8] "Then I will say nothing, and you shall judge for yourself, sir." I brought the portfolio from the library. "Approach[9] the table," said he; and I wheeled[10] it to his couch. Adèle and Mrs. Fairfax drew near to see the pictures. "No crowding,"[11] said Mr. Rochester; "take the drawings from my hand as I finish with[12] them; but don't push your faces up to mine." He deliberately scrutinised[13] each sketch and painting. Three he laid aside; the others, when he had examined them, he swept from him."[14] —CHARLOTTE BRONTË.

1. **Sketch,** die Skizze [skizzieren].

2. **Whether . . . doing,** *say,* whether you have done them quite by yourself (allein).

3. **Master:**

Music master, Musiklehrer.
Like master, like man, wie der Herr, so der Knecht.
He is a master in his business, ein Meister in seinem Fach.

4. **No, indeed,** durchaus nicht; keineswegs.

I am glad, indeed, es freut mich wirklich (in der That).
Indeed he is rich, but . . . (concession), zwar (allerdings) ist er reich, aber . . .
Indeed! (interj.), wirklich! ist es möglich?

5. **Pricks pride,** den Stolz verwunden.

6. **Portfolio,** die Mappe.

7. **Vouch for,** bürgen für.

8. **Patchwork,** das Flickwerk.

9. **Approach** (tr.), *here,* näher rücken.

Approach (intr.), sich nähern (dat.), näher kommen.
He almost approaches the old masters, er erreicht beinahe die alten Meister.

10. **To wheel** (a chair, &c.), schieben [**shove**].

11. **No crowding**, nicht drängen [**throng**].
12. **Finish with**, fertig sein mit.
13. **Scrutinise**, (genau) prüfen.
14. **Swept from him**, schob von sich.

London Fog (1).

I ask myself why I am seeking for words to describe a spectacle which is really indescribable, and whether it would not be better to pour the ink over the paper, for that would be the best description of London in a fog. I had been waiting for my first London fog with great impatience. In the universal opinion that November was the best month for it, and in mild [1] despair over the continued [2] sunshine, I turned [3] every conversation to the subject, and was *invariably* consoled [4] with the remark, "Just wait, you will soon see something, if not *before*, then certainly at Christmas [5] and in January." Several *times* the affair [6] seemed really *going to* begin, when on rising at nine o'clock we had to light the gas, but by the time [7] our toilet was completed [8] the phenomenon [9] had disappeared. *These* were only slight rehearsals [10] for the first performance,[11] which took place late this time, but with all the [12] greater effect.[13]

1. **Mild**, gelinde; *mild*.
2. **Continued** (uninterrupted), anhaltend; (*repeated*) wiederholt.
3. **Turn the conversation to**, das Gespräch lenken auf (acc.).
4. **Console**, trösten [*consolation*, der Trost (**trust**)].

> Er vertröstet seine Gläubiger von einem Tage auf den andern, *he puts off his creditors from day to day*.

5. **At Christmas**, zu Weihnachten.

> *Christmas eve*, der Weihnachtsabend.

6. **The affair**, die Sache; die Angelegenheit.

> *Family affairs*, Familien verhältnisse.
> *As affairs stand*, wie die Sachen stehen (liegen).
> *That is not my affair*, das geht mich nichts an.
> *Minister for foreign affairs*, Minister der auswärtigen Angelegenheiten.

7. bis.
8. **Complete one's toilet**, *here*, sich fertig an'ziehen.
9. **Phenomenon**, die (Wunder)erscheinung.

10. **Rehearsal**, die Probe.

11. **Performance**, Aufführung; das Spiel.

12. **All the**, *before a comparat.*, um so . . ., *or* desto.

13. **Effect**, Wirkung, der Effekt.
Effect (*consequence*), die Folge; (*result*) der Erfolg, das Resultat.
In effect, wirklich; in der That.
To the following effect, folgendermassen.

(ver)schwinden: *disappear, vanish.*
die Schwindsucht: *consumption* (Med.).
schwindsüchtig: *consumptive.*
der Schwindel: 1. *giddiness*; 2. *cheat.*
schwindlig: *giddy, dizzy.*
verschwenden: *to squander, waste.*
der Verschwender: *spendthrift.*
verschwenderish: *lavish, extravagant.*

LONDON FOG (2).

One morning on waking, I was much astonished that such stir[1] and noise should be going on in the house in the middle of[2] the night, and as I detected a smell of burning,[3] I came to the conclusion[4] that fire had broken out. *Still*, as I listened, I heard the servants laughing, and seemingly[5] in their usual good spirits. I struck a light and looked at my watch. Had it stopped the night before? I held it to my ear. It was going. It was going, and pointed to the eleventh hour. As I could not possibly have awakened before going to bed, and could scarcely have slept through a revolution of the earth,[6] it dawned upon me[7] that it must be eleven in the forenoon, and that the fog had set in[8] in all its glory.[9] I drew up the blinds[10] and opened the window. Grey-black darkness reigned outside, and a current of air came in which took my breath away[11] and caused a violent fit of coughing.[12] Nothing was to be seen—actually nothing. I heard that people were walking on the streets, and that some vehicles were being driven, but saw—only Stygian[13] darkness. I hastily shut my window, as a pestilential vapour[14] was *oozing in* and filling the room.

1. **Stir**, der Lärm.
This business makes a great stir, diese Sache macht grosses Aufsehen.

2. **In the middle of**, mitten in.

3. **Smell of burning**, brenzlicher Geruch [E. **burnt, reek**].

4. **Come to the conclusion,** zu dem Schluss gelangen; *here better*, an'nehmen (to assume).
5. **Seemingly,** anscheinend.
6. **Revolution of the earth,** Erdumdrehung.
7. **It dawned upon me,** es ging mir ein Licht auf (colloq.).
    To dawn (intr.), dämmern (E. **dim**); tagen.
8. **Set in,** sich ein'stellen.
9. **Glory,** die Herrlichkeit.
10. **The blind,** der (Fenster)-vorhang.
11. **Take one's breath away,** einem den Athem benehmen.
12. **Fit of coughing,** der Hustenanfall.
13. **Stygian** (Styx-like), stygisch.
14. **Pestilential vapour,** pestilenzartiger Qualm.

London Fog (3).

This exceeded all my expectations. Nevertheless, as I stood later at the street door, it was again only a grey, unspeakably[1] dreary[2] winter day, such as I had seen by the dozen[3] in London, and all were amazed at the disappointment I expressed in having missed[4] a fog. Meantime, our general servant[5] advised me not to go out, for the thick fog would come again, and perhaps remain all night. Bah! I will go by the Underground[6] Railway to the Bank; from there my way back[7] is only the short distance of a mile long, where I could find my way blindfold.[8] Forward, then! Who could go wrong?[9] In the Underground Railway, I certainly never saw whether it was foggy or not, for in these endless subterranean holes[10] it is pitch-dark[11] in the finest weather. To-day, however, the fog-signals[12] laid on the line by the watchmen exploded[13] merrily in all directions, so that the train could be heard, if not seen. At these volleying detonations[14] the people in the carriages[15] remarked, "It is coming down again." I knew that they spoke of the fog, and my heart rejoiced. People can rejoice over such widely different things.

1. **Unspeakably,** unsäglich.
2. **Dreary,** trübe [**traurig**].
3. **By the dozen,** zu Dutzenden.
4. **To miss,** verpassen; versäumen.
    To miss (*not to hit*), fehl'schiessen.
    Miss one's way, den Weg verfehlen.
    Wir vermissen Ihren Bruder sehr, *your brother's absence is greatly felt by us.*

5. **General servant,** Mädchen für Alles.

6. **Underground** (adj.), unterirdisch.

7. **Way back**, der Rückweg.

8. **Blindfold**, mit verbundenen Augen; blindlings.

9. **Go wrong**, fehl'gehen.

10. **Hole**, die Höhle; das Loch.

11. **Pitch-dark**, stockfinster; pechschwarz.

Pitch, das **Pech**; [der Pechvogel, *unlucky person*; erpicht auf (acc.), *bent on*].

12. **Fog-signal**, das Nebelsignal.

13. **Explode** (intr.), explodieren, zerplatzen.

14. Bei diesen Gewehrsalven ähnlichen Knallen (der Knall, *clap*).

Knall und Fall, *suddenly* (colloq.).

15. **Carriage** (*railway*), der Waggon'; Wagen (*fr.* be-wegen).

Carriage and four, ein vierspänniger Wagen: *to send carriage paid*, frachtfrei (porto frei) senden; *a man of haughty carriage*, ein Mann von hochmütigem Benehmen.

LONDON FOG (4).

But soon this uplifted,[1] god-like frame[2] of mind was mingled[3] with very earthly apprehensions, as, like the gods, I wandered through clouds, through seemingly solid[4] clouds, and though I knew myself in the middle of a town with millions of inhabitants, I could not see farther than myself, and myself I saw sometimes very imperfectly. Now and again I could have believed that I had lost my feet if I had not felt that I was walking on them—if this cautious groping forward[5] could be called walking. If any person passed[6] me, it was like the sudden apparition of a ghost which disappeared in a moment. A real, thick London fog reigned supreme,[7] and this description is not in the least exaggerated.[8] Suddenly an obstacle is felt on the path: it is a lamp-post[9] which is not visible although the gas is burning. The workers in the docks[10] make a step, fall into the water, and are drowned.[11] In other ways, too,[12] danger is on every side. The newspapers have long lists[13] of dead and wounded after every black fog, as after a battle. But why is the fog black? Because the overwhelming[14] and enormous weight of the falling vapours[15] press down to the *very* pavement[16] all the smoke from the countless houses and factories[17] of London, so that the streets are covered with soot[18] when the fog clears off.[19]—*Translated from the German.*

1. **Uplifted** (fig.), gehoben, erhaben (*both from* heben, **heave,** *raise*).

2. **Frame of mind,** Gemütsverfassung.

> *Picture frame,* der Bilderrahmen.

3. **Mingle,** *here say,* disturb.

4. **Solid,** *here,* dicht.

5. **Groping forward,** das Vorwärtstappen.

6. **To pass,** vorbei′gehen an (dat.).

> *Time passes quickly,* die Zeit vergeht (verfliesst) schnell.
> *He has passed his exam.,* er hat die Prüfung bestanden.
> *It will pass,* das genügt; geht an.
> *He passes for a great scholar,* er gilt für einen grossen Gelehrten.

7. **To reign supreme,** herrschen.

8. **To exaggerate,** übertreiben (insep.).

9. **Lamp-post,** der Laternenpfahl.

10. **Dock,** das Dock (*pl.* —s).

11. **To be drowned,** ertrinken.

> *To drown,* ertränken; — *oneself,* sich erträniken.
> er ertrank beim Baden; er ertränkte den Hund.

12. **In other ways, too,** auch sonst.

13. **The list,** die Liste; das Verzeichnis.

> *To strike off the list,* aus der Liste streichen.

14. **To overwhelm,** nieder′drücken.

> *To overwhelm with kindness,* mit Wohlthaten überhäufen.

15. **Vapour,** der Dunst.

16. **Pavement,** das Pflaster.

17. **Factory,** die Fabrik.

18. **Soot,** der Russ.

19. **Clear off** (intr.), sich heben.

The Insulted Dervish.

A poor Dervish begged for alms[1] from a favourite[2] of a Sultan, who threw him a stone instead of money. The ill-used[3] priest, not daring to say anything, picked the stone up and took it away with *him.* "Sooner or later," he thought, "I shall get the chance[4] of revenging myself with the same stone on this proud and cruel man." A few days later he heard a tumult[5] in the street. He asked what it *was,* and learned[6] (that) the favourite had fallen into disgrace,[7] and (that) the Sultan had ordered[8] him to be put on a donkey and led through the streets. The Dervish quickly seized his stone and went forth. But soon he changed his mind.[9] He threw the stone away into a brook, and said to himself, "Now I feel that one must[10] never revenge oneself: for if one's[11] enemy is mighty, it is unwise; if he is unfortunate, it is base and cruel."

1. **Alms**, das Almosen.
2. **Favourite**, der Günstling.
   Favourite book, das Lieblingsbuch.
   ,, *dish*, Lieblingsgericht, *or* das Leibgericht.
3. **To ill-use**, misshandeln; schmähen.
4. **Chance** (opportunity), die Gelegenheit; (hazard) der Zufall.
   There is no chance of his coming, es ist nicht wahrscheinlich, dass er kommt.
   I take my chance, ich wage es; *or* ich versuche mein Glück.
   A chance acquaintance, zufällige(r) Bekannte(r).
   I chanced to be there, ich war zufällig da.
5. **Tumult**, der Lärm; (**uproar**) der **Aufruhr**.
6. **To learn** (to be informed), erfahren; (by heart) auswendig lernen.
   I learn from his letter, ich ersehe aus seinem Briefe.
7. **To fall into disgrace**, in Ungnade (f.) fallen.
8. **Had ordered . . . streets**, *turn*, had ordered (lassen) him to be led on a donkey through . . .
9. **Change one's mind**, sich anders besinnen.
10. Subj., why?
11. *Say:* our.

bitten: *request.* die Bitte: *entreaty.*	beten: *pray.* das Gebet: *prayer.*	betteln: *ask alms.* der Bettler: *beggar.*
gönnen: *grant willingly, not grudge.* der Gönner: *patron, well-wisher.*	gönnerhaft: *patronising.* die Gunst: *good-will, favour.* zu Gunsten: *in favour of.*	günstig: *favourable.* der Günstling: *favourite.* begünstigen: *treat with favour.*

THE TEMPEST (1).

There was a certain island in the sea, the only inhabitants *of which* were an old man called Prospero, and his daughter Miranda, a very beautiful young lady. She came[1] to this island so young, that she had no memory[2] of having seen any[3] other human face than her father's. They lived in a cave[4] or cell made out of a rock: it was divided into several apartments,[5] one of which Prospero called his study;[6] there he kept[7] his books, which[8] chiefly treated of magic,[8] a study at that time much affected[9] by all learned men, and the knowledge[10] of this art he found very useful to him; for being thrown by a strange[11] chance upon this island, which had been enchanted[12] by a witch[13] called Sycorax, Prospero *by virtue of* his art released many good spirits that Sycorax had imprisoned[14] in the bodies[15] of large trees. These gentle[16] spirits were *ever* after obedient to the will of Prospero. Of these Ariel was the chief.[17] . . .

1. **Came,** *say,* had come.
2. **Memory** (recollection), die Erinnerung.
   He has a good —, er hat ein gutes Gedächtnis.
3. **Any** (adj.), irgend ein; (pl.) einige, *or* (irgend) welche.
   Not any, kein.
4. **Cave,** die Höhle; *cell,* die Zelle.
5. **Apartment** = room.
6. **Study** (room), das Studierzimmer; (pursuit) das Studium, (pl.) Studien.
7. **Keep,** *here,* auf′bewahren.
8. die hauptsächlich von der Schwarzkunst handelten.
9. **Affected,** *here say,* loved.
   Affected (*conceited*), geziert, affektiert.
10. **Knowledge,** die Kenntnis.
11. **Strange** (unusual), seltsam.
12. **Enchant,** bezaubern.
13. **Witch,** die Hexe.
14. **Imprison,** ein′kerkern.
15. *Here: stem,* der Stamm.
16. **Gentle,** *here,* good.
17. **Chief,** das Haupt; der oberste.
    Chief (in compds.), Haupt- *or* Ober-, *e.g.* die Hauptsache, der Oberarzt.

THE TEMPEST (2).

Having these powerful spirits obedient to his will, Prospero could by their[1] means command the winds and the waves[2] of the sea. By[3] his orders they raised[4] a violent storm, *in the midst*[5] *of which* he showed his daughter a fine large ship, which he told her[6] was full of living beings[7] like themselves. "O my dear father," said she, "if by your art you have raised this dreadful storm, have pity on[8] their sad distress. Poor souls! they will all perish. If I had power, I would[9] sink[10] the sea beneath the earth, rather than the good ship should be destroyed, with all the precious souls with her." "Be not so amazed,[11] daughter Miranda," said Prospero; "there is no harm done.[12] I have so ordered[13] it that no person in the ship shall receive[14] any hurt. What I have done has been in care[15] of you, my dear child. You *are ignorant* who you are or where you came from, and you know no more of me *but* that I am your father, and live in this poor cave. Can you remember a time before you came to this cell? I think you cannot,[16] for you were not then three years of age."

1. *Say:* by means of them.
2. **Wave**, die Welle.
3. auf (acc.).
4. **To raise** (rouse), erregen; erwecken.
5. **The midst**, die Mitte.
6. *Say:* as he told her.
7. **Living being**, das lebende Wesen.
8. **To have pity on**, Mitleid haben mit.
9. *Say:* I would rather (lieber) sink . . . than that . . .
10. **Sink** (tr.), (ver)senken; (intr.) sinken.
11. **Amazed**, bestürzt.
12. es geschieht kein Leid.
    I don't mean any harm, ich meine es nicht böse.
13. **Order**, *here*, ein'richten (arrange).
14. **Receive hurt**, Schaden leiden.
15. **In care of you**, in der Sorge um dich.
16. **You cannot**, *say*, you can it not.

The Tempest (3).

"Certainly *I can*, sir," replied Miranda. "By what?" asked Prospero; "by any other house or person? Tell me what[1] you can remember, my child." Miranda said, "It seems to me like the recollection of a dream. But had I not once four or five women who attended[2] upon me?" Prospero answered, "*You had*, and more. How is it[3] that this still lives in your mind? Do you remember how you came here?" "No, sir," said Miranda; "I remember nothing more." "Twelve years ago, Miranda," continued[4] Prospero, "I was Duke[5] of Milan, and you were a princess and my only heir. I had a younger brother, whose name was Antonio, to whom I trusted[6] everything; and as I was fond[7] of retirement[8] and deep study, I commonly left the management[9] of my state affairs[9] to your uncle, my false brother. . . . The opportunity I gave him of making himself popular[10] among my subjects[11] awakened in his bad nature a proud ambition[12] to deprive me of my dukedom; this he soon effected[13] with the aid of the King *of* Naples, a powerful prince, who was my enemy. . . ."

1. *Bear in mind that* sich erinnern *takes the genit., or* an *with acc.*
2. **Attend on** (serve), auf′warten (dat.); *what does* warten (auf *w. acc.*) *mean?*
3. *Say:* how comes it.
4. **Continue** (intr.), fort′fahren; (tr.) fort′setzen.
5. **Duke**, der Herzog.
6. **To trust**, an′vertrauen (*p.p.* anvertraut).
7. **To be fond of** = to love.
8. **Retirement**, die Zurückgezogenheit.
9. die Verwaltung meiner Staatsgeschäfte.
10. **Popular**, beliebt.
11. **Subject**, der Unterthan (*pl.* —en).
12. **Ambition**, der Ehrgeiz.
13. **To effect**, aus′führen.

THE TEMPEST (4).

. . . "Now, pray tell me, sir, your reason[1] for raising this sea-storm." "Know, then," said her father, "that by means of this storm my enemies, the King *of* Naples[2] and my cruel brother, are cast[3] ashore upon this island." Having so said, Prospero gently[4] touched his daughter with his magic[5] wand, and she fell fast asleep; for the spirit Ariel just then presented[6] himself before his master, to give an account[7] of the tempest, and how he had disposed[8] of the ship's company.[9] . . . "Well,[10] my brave spirit," said Prospero to Ariel, "how have you performed[11] your task?" Ariel gave a lively[12] description of the storm, and of the terrors of the mariners,[13] and how the King's son, Ferdinand, was the first who leaped into the sea, and his father thought he saw[14] this dear son swallowed[15] up by the waves and lost. "But he is safe," said Ariel, "in a corner[16] of the isle, sitting with[17] his arms folded, sadly lamenting[18] the loss of the King his father, whom he *concludes* drowned. Not a hair of his head is injured,[19] and his princely[20] garments, though drenched[21] in the sea-waves, look fresher than before." . . .

1. **Reason**, der Grund.
2. **Naples**, Neapel.
3. **To cast ashore**, ans Ufer werfen.
4. **Gently**, zart; leicht.
5. **Magic wand**, der Zauberstab.
6. **Present oneself**, sich vor′stellen (dat.).
7. **Account** (report), der Bericht.

Account (*bill*), die Rechnung.

8. **To dispose of**, verfügen über.
9. **Company** = *crew*, die Mannschaft.
10. **Well** (interj.), nun; wohlan.
11. **To perform a task**, eine Aufgabe erfüllen.
12. **Lively**, lebhaft.
13. **Mariner**, der Seefahrer.
14. Subjunctive; why?
15. **To swallow up**, verschlingen.
16. **Corner**, der Winkel.
17. **With, &c.**, die Arme gefaltet (absol. acc.).
18. **To lament**, beklagen.
19. **To injure**, verletzen.
20. **Princely**, fürstlich.
21. **Drenched in**, durchnässt von.

The Tempest (5).

. . . Now Miranda had never seen a man before, except[1] her own father. "Miranda," said Prospero, "tell me what you are looking[2] at *yonder*." "O father," said Miranda, in (a) strange surprise,[3] "surely that is a spirit. Lord![4] how it looks[5] about! Believe me, sir, it is a beautiful creature. Is it not a spirit?" "No, girl," answered her father; "it eats, and sleeps, and has senses[6] such[7] as we have. This young man you see was in the ship; he is somewhat[8] altered by grief,[8] or[9] you might call him a handsome person; he has lost his companions, and is wandering[10] about to find them." Miranda, who thought all men had grave[11] faces and grey beards like her father, was delighted[12] with the appearance of this beautiful young Prince; and Ferdinand, seeing such a lovely lady in this desert[13] place, and, from[14] the strange sounds he had heard, expecting *nothing but* wonders, thought he was upon an enchanted island, and that Miranda was the goddess of the place, and as such he began to address[15] her.

1. **Except**, ausser (dat.).
2. **Look at**, an'sehen; schauen auf.
3. **Surprise**, die Überraschung.
4. **Lord!** Herr Gott!
5. **Look about**, um sich schauen.
6. **Sense**, der Sinn.
7. **Such as, &c.**, *say*, "as we have them" (*i.e.* senses).
8. durch Kummer etwas verstört.
9. **Or**, *say*, *else*, sonst.
10. **To wander about**, umher'-wandern.
11. **Grave**, ernst.
12. **Delighted with**, entzückt von.
13. **Desert** (=deserted), verlassen.
14. **From** (=in consequence of), in Folge (w. gen.).
15. **To address**, an'reden; (a letter) adressieren.

The Tempest (6).

She timidly answered, she was no goddess, but a simple maid, and was going[1] to give him an account of herself, when Prospero interrupted[2] her. He was *well pleased* to find they admired each other, for he plainly[3] perceived they had (as we say) fallen[4] in love at first[5] sight; but to try[6] Ferdinand's constancy,[7] he resolved to throw[8] some difficulties in their way. Therefore,[9] advancing forward, he addressed the Prince with a stern[10] air, telling him he came to the island as a spy,[11] to take it from him who was the lord[12] of it. "Follow me," said he, "I will tie your neck and feet together. You shall drink sea-water; shell-fish,[13] withered roots, and husks of acorns[13] shall be your food." "No," said Ferdinand, "I will resist such entertainment[14] till I see a more powerful enemy," and drew his sword; but Prospero, waving[15] his magic wand, fixed[16] him to the spot[16] where he stood, so that he had no power to move.[17]—*After* Charles Lamb.

1. **I am going** (about to) . . ., ich bin im Begriff.
2. **Interrupt**, unterbrechen (insep.).
3. **Plainly**, deutlich.
4. **To fall in love**, sich verlieben.
5. **At first sight**, beim ersten Anblick.
6. **Try**, *here*, auf die Probe stellen.
7. **Constancy**, die Standhaftigkeit.
8. *Say: to place*, stellen.
9. *Begin the sentence: as he advanced* . . . (vorwärts schreiten).
10. **With a stern air**, mit ernster Miene.

11. **Spy**, der Spion.
12. **The lord** (master), der Herr.
13. **Shell-fish**, &c., Muscheln, vertrocknete Wurzeln und Eichenschalen.
14. **Entertainment**, die Bewirtung.
15. **To wave**, schwingen.
16. bannte ihn an die Stelle.
17. **To move** (intr.), sich bewegen.

From GEORGE ELIOT *to* MRS. BRAY.

"MERIDEN, *24th April* 1850.

"Have you any engagement[1] (for) the week after next?[2] If not, may I join you[3] on Saturday the 4th, and invite M. d'Albert to come down on the following Monday? It appears he cannot stay in England longer than until about the second week in May. I am uncomfortable at the idea of burthening even your friendship with the entertainment[4] of a person purely for my sake. It is indeed the greatest of all the great kindnesses you have shown me. Write me two or three kind words, dear Cara. I have been so ill at ease[5] ever since I have been in England that I am quite discouraged. Dear Chrissey is generous and sympathising, and really cares for[6] my happiness."

1. haben Sie (irgend) etwas . . . vor?
2. **Week after next**, die nächstfolgende Woche.
3. **May I join you**, darf ich mich Ihnen an'schliessen.
4. **Entertainment**, die Bewirtung.
   He reads only for entertainment: er liest bloss zum Zeitvertreib (m.).
   A theatrical entertainment: eine Theater-Vorstellung.
5. **Be ill at ease**, sich unbehaglich fühlen.
6. **Cares for . . .**, mein Glück liegt ihr am Herzen.
   He cares for nothing, er kümmert sich um nichts.
   What do I care? was kümmert es mich?

To enter into an **engagement** (*obligation*): eine Verpflichtung ein'gehen.

I have an engagement for to-morrow: ich bin für morgen (schon) versagt.

Engagement ring: der Verlobungsring.

Naval engagement: eine Seeschlacht.

"142 STRAND, LONDON, 25*th March* 1852.

"I had two offers[1] last night—not of marriage, but of music—which I find it impossible to resist. Mr. Herbert Spencer proposed to take me on Thursday to hear[2] 'William Tell,' and Miss Parkes asked me to go with her to hear the 'Creation' on Friday. I have had so little music this quarter,[3] and these two things are so exactly what I should like, that I have determined to put off,[4] for the sake of them, my other pleasure of seeing you. So, pray, keep your precious welcome warm for me until Saturday, when I shall positively[5] set off by the two o'clock train. Harriet Martineau has written me a most cordial invitation to go to see her before July, but that is impossible."

1. **Offer,** der Antrag.
2. **Proposed to take me to hear,** wollte mich mit'nehmen (zu).
3. **Quarter,** das Vierteljahr.
4. **Put off,** auf'schieben.
   aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben (prov.), *to put off is not to put away.*
5. **Positively,** (ganz) bestimmt.

---

halten : *to* **hold.**
Halt (m.) machen : *to make a halt ; stop.*
ungehalten (über, *acc.*) : *angry, exasperated (at).*
der Statthalter : *prefect, governor* (cp. Fr. *lieutenant*).
Haltung : *bearing, demeanour.*
haltbar : *durable.*
der Behälter : *receptacle, reservoir.*
nach Verhältnis (n.) : *in proportion.*

PART SECOND.

For Sale[1] (1).

The way in which[2] English people are ready to buy any curious object[3] which strikes their fancy[4] is well known abroad, and foreigners often make good bargains[5] out of our travelling countrymen. There are stories[6] *of* some extraordinary purchases. An English nobleman once bought a view in Switzerland; that is, he purchased the field from which the view could be seen. As he could not take his purchase away with him, he left directions[7] for enclosing[8] the field and keeping the fences in repair,[9] (duly) paying the bills transmitted to him for expenses[10] incurred on that account.[10] A friend of mine, whilst in Madrid, was looking at the picturesque[11] costumes of some bull-fighters[12] who were lounging[13] at the entrance to the Plaza de Toros; one of them, who was[14] arrayed in[14] a very brilliant dress, seeing the Englishman looking at him, slapped[15] himself on the breast, and pointing to his attire, said, "For sale," probably the only words of English which he knew.

1. **For sale**, zu verkaufen.
2. **The way in which**, die Art wie.
3. **The object**, der Gegenstand.
4. Pleases them.
5. ziehen einen guten Gewinn aus.
6. **There are stories**, man erzählt (sich) Geschichten.
7. **To leave directions**, an'ordnen.
8. **Enclose** (fence in), ein'zäunen; *fence*, die Einfriedigung.

Enclose (*a letter*), bei'fügen.

9. **To keep in repair**, in gutem Zustande erhalten.

Out of repair, baufällig.

10. **Expenses, &c.**, die dadurch erwachsenen Ausgaben.
11. **Picturesque**, malerisch.
12. **Bull-fighter**, der Stierkämpfer.
13. **To lounge**, umher'lungern.
14. *Say:* an'haben.
15. Sich in die Brust werfen.

FOR SALE (2).

When travellers explore[1] distant or unknown countries, they usually procure specimens[2] of the arts and manufactures[3] of the inhabitants of those regions, and buy weapons, implements,[4] and articles of dress[5] from the natives, who are unable to understand the motives which prompt[6] them to make such a collection. An Eskimo woman, from whom an Arctic explorer[7] had purchased several articles of native[8] manufacture, having nothing more to sell, pulled her naked little baby out of the warm seal-skin hood[9] hanging at her back, and holding him out at arm's length[10] in the freezing air, said, "You buy him?" But the captain had no use[11] for that (specimen), so he did not add it to his collection of "curios."[12]

1. **To explore**, erforschen.
2. **Specimen**, die Probe.
3. **Manufacture**, *here*, das Fabrikat′.
4. **Implement**, das Gerät.
5. **Article of dress**, das Kleidungsstück.
6. **Prompt** (induce), veranlassen (wk. insep.).
7. **Arctic explorer**, ein Nordpolfahrer.
8. **Native** (adj.), (ein)heimisch.
    - *Native language*, die Muttersprache.
    - *Native land*, das Vaterland; die Heimat.
9. **Seal-skin hood**, die Haube aus Seehundsfell.
10. **At arm's length**, mit ausgestreckten Armen.
11. **Use**, *here*, Verwendung.
    - *To make use of*, Gebrauch (m.) machen von; gebrauchen (tr.).
    - *Of no use*, nutzlos.
    - *What is the use of . . .?* was nützt (hilft) es . . .?
12. **Collection of curios**, Raritätensammlung.

THE DERVISH (1).

A Dervish, travelling[1] through Tartary,[2] having arrived at the town of Balk, went into the King's palace by mistake,[3] as thinking it to be[4] a public inn or caravansary.[5] Having looked about him[6] for some time, he entered into a long gallery, where he laid down his wallet,[7] and spread his carpet in order to rest upon it after the manner of the

Eastern nations. He had not been long in this posture when he was discovered by some of the guards,[8] who asked him what was his business[9] in that place. The Dervish told them he intended to take up his night's lodging[10] in that caravansary. The guards let him know in a very angry manner that the house he was in was not a caravansary, but the King's palace.

1. **A Dervish, travelling,** *say*, when a Dervish who travelled.
2. **Tartary,** die *Tartarei′; so also*, die Lombardei′, die Normand*ie′*.
3. **By mistake,** aus Versehen.
4. **Thinking it to be,** *say*, as he took it for (halten für).
5. **Caravansary,** die Karawanserei′.
6. **I look about me,** ich sehe um mich.
   ich sehe mich um, *I look round.*
7. **Wallet,** der Reisesack.
8. **Guard,** die Wache; (caution) die Vorsicht, die Hut.
   Stand on your guard, seien Sie auf Ihrer Hut.
   To guard oneself against, sich hüten vor; sich in Acht nehmen vor.
9. **What was his business . . .,** what he had to do . . . (subjunct.).
10. **Take up his night's lodging,** seine Nachtherberge auf′schlagen.

THE DERVISH (2).

It happened that the King himself passed through the gallery during this debate,[1] and smiling at the mistake of the Dervish, asked him how he could possibly[2] be so dull[2] (as) not to distinguish[3] a palace from a caravansary. "Sire," says the Dervish, "give me leave[4] to ask your Majesty a question or two.[5] Who were the persons that lodged in this house when it was first built?" The King replied, his ancestors.[6] "And who was the last person that lodged here?" The King replied, his father. "And who is it," says the Dervish, "that lodges here at present?" The King told him that it was he himself. "And who will be here after you?" The King answered, the young prince, his son. "Ah! sire," said the Dervish, "a house that changes its inhabitants so often, and receives such a perpetual succession [7] of guests, is not a palace, but a caravansary."—*Spectator.*

1. **The debate,** der Wortwechsel.

2. nur; **so dull as not to . . .,** so dull that he could not . . .

3. **Distinguish,** unterscheiden (insep.).

Distinguish oneself, sich aus'zeichnen.

4. **Give leave** = permit.

5. **A question or two,** eine oder zwei Fragen.

6. **Ancestor,** der Vorfahr (*pl.* —en); der Ahn (*pl.* —en).

7. **Succession,** die (Reihen)-folge.

Successive, auf einander folgend.
They worked successively, . . . der Reihe nach; nach einander.

reisen: *travel* [**arise**].
die Reise: *journey; voyage* (Seereise).
Reisende(r): *traveller.*
wohin geht die Reise? *where are you bound for?*
auf Reisen: *travelling; abroad.*
wir reisen morgen ab: *we leave to-morrow.*

geschehen: *to be done, happen.*
Geschichte: *history.*
schicken: *send,* "*cause to happen.*"
das Geschick: 1. *fate;* 2. *skill.*
geschickt: *skilful, adroit.*
Schicksal: *destiny.*
schicklich: *fitting, meet.*
es schickt sich nicht (*or,* es ist unschicklich): *it is not becoming.*

geben: give.
der Geber: *giver.*
das Gift: *poison,* "*given with ill intention.*"
(die Gift: *gift.*)
Mitgift: *dowry.*
freigebig: *generous.*
vergeblich: *to no purpose.*
die Gabe: 1. *donation;* 2. *talent.*
begabt: *endowed, talented.*
gäng und gäbe: *current, customary.*

Strange Music at the Court of the Khedive (1).

Shortly after this we rose to take (our) leave, but the Princess *asked* us to remain, as she had sent for her musicians to entertain us. In a short time six young girls appeared in red and blue dresses with embroidered [1] slippers, [2] and sat in a row at the further end of the room. One played on a violin, [3] another on a lute, two had huge zithers, and the two others tambourines. With this accompaniment they sang Arabian ballads. The music was *strange* and wild, in excellent time, [4] but absolutely devoid of melody. [5] They went [6] on and on from one song to another, singing [6] with high, shrill [7] voices an interminable number *of* verses without any appearance of hesitation or fatigue. It really seemed as if nothing would ever stop[8] them, so I *hazarded* a complimentary[9] remark *as to* their extraordinary *memory*, upon which the Princess eagerly assured me that they could sing more than a thousand such songs *by heart*.[10]

1. **Embroider**, sticken (wk.); die Stickerei.
2. **Slipper**, der Pantoffel.
   Unter dem Pantoffel stehen, *to be henpecked*.
3. **Play** *on* **the violin** (**piano**), Violine (Klavier) spielen; *lute*, die Laute.
   Play at cards, Karten spielen.
4. **Time** (in music), der Takt; das Tempo.
5. **Devoid of melody**, unmelodisch.
   Devoid of fear, furchtlos.
6. **They went on . . . singing**, sie kamen von einem Lied ins andre und sangen.
7. **Shrill**, schrill, gellend [yell].
8. **To stop** (tr.), Einhalt thun (dat.); auf′halten.
   To stop (intr.), an′halten, stehen bleiben.
9. **Complimentary** = polite.
10. **By heart**, auswendig.

STRANGE MUSIC AT THE COURT OF THE KHEDIVE (2).

This was somewhat startling,[1] as they had already sung *for* an hour with scarcely a moment's breathing space,[2] and it was time *for us* to rejoin[3] the gentlemen of our party at the hotel; so we rose to take our leave. The Princess very graciously[4] sent for her two little sons of five and six years old *to see us* before we *left*. Dear little fellows[5] they were—so pretty and well-mannered[6]; they spoke English nicely, and shook hands[7] with us in European fashion. She then gave me a cabinet photograph[8] of the Khedive, which one of the slave-girls wrapped up in a large *square* of pink silk.[9] We thanked her for her kindness and courtesy, and requested her, according to the usual custom, to convey our compliments to the Khedive.[10]—MRS. GEORGE SUMNER, *Our Holiday in the East*.

1. **Startling**, *here*, unbehaglich.
2. **With scarcely . . . space**, ohne sich kaum Zeit zum Athemholen zu gönnen.
3. **To rejoin**, sich (wieder) an′schliessen (dat.).
4. **Gracious(ly)**, gnädig.

5. **Fellows**, *here* (dimin.), Kerlchen (**churl**).

Fellow of a society, Mitglied einer Gesellschaft.
Fellow-soldier, Mitsoldat; *so also*, Mitbürger, Mitschüler.

6. **Well-mannered**, gut gesittet; manierlich.

7. **Shake hands with**, einem die Hand reichen (drücken).

8. **Cabinet photograph**, die Kabinet Photographie.

9. **Pink silk**, die rosa Seide.

10. **To convey . . . Kh.**, uns dem Kh. zu empfehlen.

Custom: 1. der Gebrauch, die Gewohnheit; 2. der Zoll [**toll**].	*Custom-house:* das Zollamt. *Customary:* gebräuchlich, üblich.	*Customer:* der Kunde. *To accustom to:* gewöhnen an (acc.).
Entertain: unterhalten (insep.). *He entertains his visitors:* er bewirtet seine Gäste.	*To entertain a thought (suspicion)*: einen Gedanken (Verdacht) hegen.	*Entertainment:* die Unterhaltung, Bewirtung.
Sure: sicher, gewiss. *Assure (insure)*: versichern.	*Surety:* Sicherheit, Gewissheit. *Assurance:* Versicherung.	*Life-insurance-company:* Lebens-Versicherungs-Gesellschaft.
Heart: das **Herz**, das Gemüt. *With all my heart:* von ganzem Herzen.	*To open one's heart:* sein Herz aus'schütten. *Hearty:* herzlich, innig. *Heartless:* herzlos, mutlos.	*Heart-rending:* herzzerreissend. *Dishearten:* entmutigen, ab'schrecken.

ANIMALS THEIR OWN DOCTORS (1).

Animals cannot send for their doctors in cases of illness,[1] but Nature has enabled[2] them by their own instinct[3] to seek for and find remedies which bring healing in most cases. When animals have fever, they fast,[4] seek out cool, dark places to rest, they drink water, and go so far (as) instinctively to throw themselves into the water when they feel that a cold bath would do them good.[5] Incredible as it sounds,[6] the ants[7] bind up the wounds of their injured ones by covering them with a transparent[8] fluid[9] which they carry in their mouths.[10] The wounded chimpanzee stops[11] the bleeding of his wound by pressing his hands tightly on it, or he binds it with leaves or a sheaf of grass.[12] A dog which had been bitten on[13] the nose by a viper[14] was observed to rush to a running stream,[15] into which he constantly dipped[16] his head, and thereby cured himself.

1. **Case of illness**, der Krankheitsfall.
2. **Enable**, befähigen; instand setzen.
3. **Instinct**, der Instinkt; der Naturtrieb.
   Instinctively, instinktmässig.
4. **To fast**, fasten.
5. **Do good**, wohl'thun (dat.).
6. **Incredible as it sounds**, so unglaublich es klingt; (*or*, so . . . es auch klingen mag).
7. **Ant**, die Ameise [**emmet**].
   Ant-hill, der Ameisenhaufen.
8. **Transparent**, durchsichtig.
9. **Fluid**, die Flüssigkeit.
10. **Mouth**, der Mund (use the sgl.); (of a river) Mündung.
11. **Stop** (tr.), stillen.
12. **Sheaf of grass**, ein Stück Rasen (der Rasen, *turf*).
13. **In**; what case?
14. **Viper**, die Viper.
15. **Running stream**, fliessendes Wasser.
   Four times running, vier Mal hinter einander.
   Running account, laufende Rechnung.
16. **Dip**, ein'tauchen.

beissen: *to* **bite**.
beizen: *to corrode.*
der Biss: *the bite.*
bissig: *biting, fierce.*
Imbiss (im *for* ein): *slight meal.*
der Bissen: *morsel.*
ein bischen (adv.): *a little* (*bit*).
bitter: *bitter.*

ANIMALS THEIR OWN DOCTORS (2).

A pointer[1] which had been run over[2] by a carriage, crept to the river, lay down in it, and remained there *for* three weeks, only coming out now and again although it was winter. Out of pity,[3] those who saw it brought him something to eat daily, and he was healed by this treatment. A badger-dog[4] had received a severe injury[5] to his eye; he lay down in a cool, dark corner, thereby avoiding light and warmth, while it was his usual custom to lie as near the fire as possible. With[6] rest and great abstinence[7] he cured himself, the treatment consisting in[8] constantly licking the under side of his right paw[9] and applying[10] the moistened[11] part to the injured eye. As soon as the paw was dry this process[12] was repeated, and continued[13] for two days and two nights. Cats also cure themselves by constantly licking the wounded place. A wounded cat stayed for days on the banks of a little stream[14] till she was cured; and another, three months old, laid herself, severely hurt as she was, under a spring,[15] and only left the place when she felt well.

1. **Pointer**, der Jagdhund.
2. **Run over**, überfahren (insep.).
3. **Out of pity**, aus Mitleid (n.).
   Take pity on, Mitleid haben mit.
   It is a pity, (es ist) schade.
4. **Badger-dog**, der Dachshund.
5. **Injury**, Verletzung.
6. durch.
7. **Abstinence**, Mässigkeit; Enthaltsamkeit.
8. **Consist in**, bestehen in.
   Consist of, bestehen aus.
9. **Paw**, die Pfote.
10. **Apply**, *here*, legen.
    Apply to (*a person*), sich wenden an (acc.).
    Apply for (*a place*), sich bewerben um.
    He applied himself to the study of modern languages, er widmete sich dem Studium der neueren Sprachen.
11. **Moistened** = *wet*, nass.
12. **Process**, das Verfahren.
    In process of time, mit der Zeit.
13. **Continued** = lasted.
14. **Stream**, der Bach, das Flüsschen.
    der **Strom**, *torrent, river.*
15. **Spring**, der Springbrunnen, die Quelle.

ÆLFRED.

We have few stories of his life that are more than mere legends, but even legend itself never ventured to depart from[1] the outlines[2] of a character which men knew so well. During his months of waiting at Athelney, while the country was overrun[3] by the Danes, he was said to have entered a peasant's hut, and to have been bidden by the housewife, who did not recognise him, to turn[4] the cakes which were baking on the hearth.[5] The young king did as he was bidden, but in the sad thoughts which came over him he forgot his task, and bore in amused silence[6] the scolding of the good wife, who found her cakes spoilt on her return.

This tale, if nothing more than a tale, could never have been told of a man without humour.[7] Tradition[8] told of his genial[9] good-nature,[10] of his chattiness[11] over the adventures of his life, and above all, of his love for song. In his busiest days Ælfred found time to learn the old songs of his race [12] by heart, and bade them be taught in the palace-school. As he translated the tales of the heathen mythology he lingered fondly over [13] and explained them, and in moments of gloom [14] he found comfort in the music of the Psalms.[15]—John Richard Green.

1. **Depart from**, ab'weichen (von).
2. **Outline**, der Umriss.
3. **Overrun**, überschwemmen (insep.).
4. **To turn** (tr.), (um)'wenden.
   - *To turn* (intr.), um'kehren, sich um'drehen.
   - *To turn a corner*, um eine Ecke biegen.
   - *Turning his head, he beheld . . .*, als er sich umsah, erblickte er . . .
   - *The question turns on this point*, die Frage dreht sich darum.
5. **Hearth**, der Herd.
   - *Prov.*—eigner Herd ist Goldes wert, *there is no place like home.*
6. **In amused silence**, *say*, mit heimlichem Vergnügen.
7. **Humour**, das Gemüt.
   - *In a good* (*bad*) *humour*, gut (schlecht) gelaunt.
   - *In the humour for*, aufgelegt zu.
8. **Tradition**, die Sage, Überlieferung.
9. **Genial**, leutselig, heiter.
10. **Good-nature**, Gutmütigkeit.
    - *Ill-nature*, Bösartigkeit.
11. **Chattiness**, Gesprächigkeit.
12. **Race**, der Stamm; das Geschlecht.
    - *Race* (*contest*), das Wettrennen; *race-horse*, das Rennpferd.
13. **To linger over**, (ver)weilen bei.
14. **Gloom**, die Schwermut.
15. **Psalm**, der Psalm (*pl.*—en).

Bismarck *to* his Wife (1).

"Frankfort, 8*th August* 1851.

"Yesterday and to-day I wanted to write to you, but on account of all the hurly-burly [1] of business I did not get to [2] it sooner. It is now late in the evening, and I have just come back from a walk, on which I stripped off the documental dust [3] of the day in the night air, moonshine, and the rustling [4] of poplar leaves. On Saturday I drove with Rochow and Lynar in the afternoon to Rüdesheim; there I took a skiff,[5] and went out on the Rhine, and floated [6] in the moonshine as far as the mouse-tower [7] by Bingen, where the wicked bishop perished. It is something strangely dreamy, thus to lie in the water on a warm, quiet night, slowly driven on by the stream, and to see the sky with moon and stars, and on either side the woody hill-tops[8] and the ruins of the castles in the moonlight, and to hear nothing but the soft splashing[9] of *one's* own motion; I should like to float thus every evening. Then I drank some very nice wine, and sat smoking for a long time on the balcony[10] with Lynar.

1. **Hurly-burly**, der Wirrwarr.
2. **Get to** = come to (zu).
3. **Documental dust**, der Aktenstaub.
4. **Rustling**, das Rauschen.
5. **Skiff**, der Kahn.
6. **Float**, (auf dem Wasser) treiben. *Float* (*in the air*), schweben, wehen. *Floating capital*, das Betriebskapital.
7. Mäuseturm.
8. **Hill-top**, der Berggipfel.
9. **Splashing**, das Plätschern.
10. **Balcony**, der Balkon′; der Erker.

---

fahren : *proceed, drive,* **fare**.
der Vorfahr : *forefather, ancestor.*
die Fahrt : *journey, voyage.*
die Hoffart (=Hochfahrt) : *haughtiness, arrogance.*
die Fähre : **ferry**.
der Ferge : **ferry***man.*
der Gefährte : *companion.*
fertig : *ready* ("*for a journey*").
(ver)fertigen : "*make ready,*" *manufacture.*
führen : ("*cause to proceed*") *conduct, lead.*
die Furt : **ford**.
Frankfurt : *Frankfort.*

treiben : **drive** *on.*
der Zeitvertreib : *pastime.*
der Trieb : *impulse.*
die Trift : *pasturage, meadow,*" *where cattle are driven.*"

BISMARCK *to* HIS WIFE (2).

"On the next morning we went by[1] the steamer[2] to Coblenz, breakfasted there, and then returned to Frankfort. I really[3] undertook the expedition[4] with the purpose of visiting the aged Metternich, who had invited me, at Johannisberg; but the Rhine pleased me so much, that I preferred going to Coblenz, and put off[5] the visit. On our journey that time[6] we saw the Rhine immediately after the Alps and in bad weather; on that fresh summer morning, and after the dusty tediousness[7] of Frankfort, it rose again very much in my esteem. I promise myself much pleasure in being a few days in Rüdesheim with you, the place is so still and rural, and then we will take a little rowing-boat[8] and go gently down stream, ascend the Niederwald and this and that castle, and return by the steamer. One can leave[9] here early in the morning, remain eight hours in Rüdesheim, Bingen, Rheinstein, &c., and be here again in the evening. My appointment[10] here now seems to be sure."

1. mit.

2. **Steamer**, der Dampfer; das Dampfschiff.

3. **Really**, *here*, eigentlich (*which may often be translated by*, "*to tell the truth*," *or* "*properly speaking*"; wirklich *means: in reality, truly*).

4. **Expedition** = journey.

5. **Put off**, auf′schieben.

6. **That time**, damals; *here use the adj.* damalig.

7. **Tediousness**, die Langeweile.

8. **Rowing-boat**, das Ruderboot.

9. **Leave** (intr.), *not* verlassen.

The train leaves at 10, der Zug geht um 10 Uhr ab.
He left in the morning, er reiste des Morgens ab.
We left town, wir verliessen die Stadt.

10. **Appointment here**, Ernennung hierher.

To make an appointment with, sich verabreden (insep.) mit.
To keep an appointment, einer Verabredung nach′kommen.

steigen (auf): *ascend.*
steigern: *raise, enhance,* "*cause to go up.*"
steil: *steep.*
der Steg: *narrow path.*
der Stegreif: **stirrup.**
aus dem Stegreif: *extempore, off-hand.*
die Stiege *or* Steige: *stair.*

laden: 1. **load**, 2. *invite.*
Ladung: *freight, cargo.*
die Last: *burden.*
lästig: *troublesome.*
belästigen: *trouble.*
einem zur Last fallen: *be a burden to; trouble.*
zur Last legen: *charge, tax with.*

sprechen: **speak.**
der Sprecher: *speaker.*
das Sprichwort: *proverb.*
die Sprache: *speech, language.*
das Gespräch: *conversation.*
der Spruch: *saying, passage from the Bible.*
der Anspruch: *claim.*
es nimmt meine Zeit zu sehr in Anspruch: *it takes up* (*claims*) *too much of my time.*
anspruchslos: *unassuming, modest.*

From A LETTER OF LORD HOUGHTON *to* HIS MOTHER.

"DUBLIN, *3rd August* 1831.

"I should have written to thank you for your amusing letter and Harriette's[1] scrap of German[2] from London, but I thought it better to wait till I had surmounted[3] the dangers of the railroad and the passage.[4] The former rather disappointed me. We went quick enough (36 miles in an hour and twenty minutes), but it made you[5] so giddy[6] to look on the ground, and the dust flew so disagreeably in your eyes, that unless one slept all the way, a long railway journey would be anything[7] but pleasant. In one point, however, it is superior[8] to every other kind of travelling—in safety.[9] I cannot conceive a possible accident[10] if you only sit still; for if the boiler[11] was to burst,[12] it could not hurt those in the inside[13] of the carriages. I believe a good many engineers[14] are killed, and this certainly seems rather dangerous. I had a beautiful passage, and was not at all sick—a great wonder for me. This city pleases me. I think it is as handsome as any built of brick can be, and the public buildings are in excellent taste.[15] It is now quite deserted, as the few people I have seen tell me. The Bishop of Kildare asked me to dinner[16] the day I arrived, yesterday. . . . I go to-morrow to Belfast, where a Cambridge friend of mine of the name of Warburton has been waiting some time for me."—*From* Sir Wemyss Reid's *Life of Lord Houghton* (*by permission*).

1. **Harriette**, Henriette.

2. **Scrap of German**, deutsche Brocken (m. pl.).

Scrap of paper, Papierschnitzel (m.).

3. **Surmount**, überstehen (insep.).

4. **Passage**, die Überfahrt.

Passage (*in a house*), der Flur; Gang.
Passage (*in a book*), die Stelle.

5. One.

6. **Giddy**, schwindlich.

7. **Anything but**, nichts weniger als.

8. **Superior to**, überlegen (dat.).

9. **Safety**, *here*, Gefahrlosigkeit.

10. *Say:* conceive (sich denken) an accident possible.

11. **Boiler**, der Kessel.

12. **Burst**, bersten.

13. *Say:* those who sit in the inside (im Innern).

14. **Engineer** (of a railway), der Lokomotivführer.

Civil engineer, der Zivil Ingenieur; Techniker.
Mining —, Bergwerks Ingenieur.

15. **In excellent taste**, von ausgezeichnetem Geschmack.

16. **Ask to dinner**, zum Mittag ein'laden; *arr.*, asked me yesterday, the day (dat.) when (wo) I arrived, to dinner.

schreiben : *to write.*
der Schreiber : *writer, clerk.*
das Schreibheft : *copy-book.*
unbeschreiblich : *indescribable.*
die Schrift : *writing.*
schriftlich : *in writing.*
der Schriftsteller: *author.*

Reply to a Toast[1] (1).

I thank you, both for my grandfather and myself; and now there is one more thing[2] I wish to tell you, that you may share my pleasure about it, as I hope and believe you will. I think there can be no man here who has not (a) respect, and some of you, I am sure, have a very high regard,[3] for my friend Adam Bede. It is well known to every one in this neighbourhood that there is no man whose word[4] can be more depended on than his; that whatever he undertakes to do, he does well, and is as careful[5] for the interests of those[6] who employ him as for his own. I'm proud to say that I was very fond[7] of Adam when I was a little boy, and I have never lost my old feeling for him. I think that shows that I know a good fellow when I find him. It has long been my wish that he should have the management[8] of the woods on the estate,[9] which happen to be very valuable; not only because I think so highly of his character, but because he has the knowledge and the skill[10] which fit[11] him for the place.

1. **Toast,** der Toast; Trinkspruch.

   To propose a toast, einen Toast aus'bringen.
   Toast (bread), geröstetes Brot.

2. **One more thing,** noch etwas.
3. **A very high regard,** die grösste Hochachtung.
4. **Whose word, &c.,** *say,* on whose word one can, &c.
5. **Careful of** (for), bedacht auf.

   Be careful of what you say, seien Sie vorsichtig in dem, was Sie sagen.
   One must be careful of one's health, man muss auf seine Gesundheit achten.

6. **Those who employ him,** seine Arbeitgeber.
7. **To be fond of,** gern haben.
8. **Management,** die Verwaltung.
9. **Estate** (landed property), das Gut.

   To wind up an estate, die Vermögensmasse ordnen.

10. **Skill,** *lit.* die Geschicklichkeit; *here better,* die Erfahrung.
11. **To fit** (qualify), befähigen.

REPLY TO A TOAST (2).

And I am happy to tell you that it is my grandfather's wish too, and it is now settled[1] that Adam shall manage the woods—a change[2] which I am sure will be very much for the advantage[3] of the estate; and I hope you will by-and-by join[4] me in drinking[5] his health, and in wishing him all the prosperity in life that he deserves. But there is a still older friend of mine than Adam Bede present, and I need not tell you that it is Mr. Irwine. I'm sure you will agree with me that we must drink no other person's health until we have drunk his. I know you have all reason to love him, but no one of his parishioners[6] has so much reason as I. Come,[7] charge your glasses, and let us drink to our excellent Rector.[8]—GEORGE ELIOT.

1. **Settled**, bestimmt; abgemacht.
2. **Change**, der Wechsel.
   - *Change of air*, die Luftveränderung.
   - *For a —*, zur Abwechslung.
   - *Will you give me the change?* wollen Sie mir herausgeben?
   - *I have no change*, ich habe kein Kleingeld.
   - *A slight change* (*alteration*), eine kleine Änderung.
   - *A change for the better*, eine (Ver)-besserung.
   - *A change for worse*, eine Verschlimmerung.
3. **Much for the advantage**, sehr zum Vorteil.
4. **To join**, sich anschliessen (dat.).
5. **To drink** (health), auf die Gesundheit trinken.
6. **Parishioner**, das Pfarrkind.
7. **Come!** (interj.), wohlan!
8. **Rector** (eccles.), der Pfarrer *or* Pfarrherr.
   - *Rector of a school*, der Direktor; Vorsteher.

---

verlieren: *to* **lose**.
das Verlies: *dungeon.*

lose: **loose**, *dissolute.*
lösen: *to* **loosen**, *solve.*
(freund)los: (*friend*)**less**.

der Verlust: **loss**.
verlustig (gen.): *deprived of.*

trinken: *to* **drink**.
der Trinker: *drinker.*
trinkbar: *drinkable.*
der Trank: *beverage, drink.*

tränken: *to give to drink*, (**drench**).
die Tränke: *watering-place for animals.*
der Trunk: *draught, drink.*

(be)trunken: *intoxicated*, **drunken**.
der Trunkenbold: *drunkard. See* -bold, *Etym. Gloss.*

Professor John Wilson (“Christopher North”) *to* a Friend (1).

“Ellerey, *January* 1809.

“My dear Harden,—I received your interesting letter this morning about an hour ago, and cannot delay[1] answering it for a single day, deeply concerned[2] as I feel myself in everything that regards your happiness. That you are to leave the clouds and mountains of this our delightful land, gives[3] me, as far as my selfish[4] emotions[5] go, much real pain. I need not say how many happy days I have passed at Brathay, and how affectionately[6] I regard the family living within its walls. Our friendship, which I fear[7] not, in spite of absence and distance, will continue[8] with unabated[9] sincerity, was voluntary on both sides; and during the few years we have known each other, neither of us has found cause to repent[10] of the affection bestowed. That the determination you have formed[11] is in all respects right, I firmly believe, and the consciousness[12] of having sacrificed enjoyments so dear to you, for the sake of those you tenderly love, will no doubt for ever secure your happiness. . . .”

---

1. **I cannot delay, &c.**, ich mag die Antwort darauf nicht . . . auf′schieben.

2. **Concerned in**, beteiligt (interessiert) an (dat.).
    - *I am not concerned about him*, ich bin nicht bekümmert (*or* besorgt) um ihn.
    - *It does not concern me*, es betrifft mich nicht; es geht mich nichts an.
    - *He concerns himself about nothing*, er kümmert sich um nichts.

3. **Gives**, *say*, makes.

4. **Selfish**, selbstisch.

5. **Emotion**, *here=sentiment*, Empfindung.

6. **How affectionately**, *say*, with what affection.

7. *Say: I do not doubt it*, ich zweifle nicht daran.

8. **Continue** (to last), fort′dauern.

9. **Unabated**, unvermindert.

10. **Repent of**, bereuen.

11. **To form a determination**, einen Entschluss fassen.

12. **Consciousness**, das Bewusstsein.

Professor John Wilson (“Christopher North”) *to* a Friend (2).

“As[1] for myself, all my plans[2] of delight and instruction, at least on[3] one great subject, are for the present[4] abandoned. . . . I have not, however, by any means relinquished my scheme[5] of going to Spain, and whether we shall *meet* this summer or not seems very doubtful. I agree[6] with you that travelling will make me, for some years at least, happier than anything else. The knowledge[7] it bestows can be acquired by no other means, and, unless a man be married,[8] it seems very absurd[9] to remain, during the prime[10] of his youth, in one little corner of the world, beautiful and glorious as that corner may be. . . . I cannot conclude[11] without again observing what pleasure I shall have in hearing from you, especially while you are just entering[12] on such a new scheme[13] of life.”—*Christopher North*, Mrs. Gordon.

1. **As for**, was . . . betrifft.
2. *Say:* plans concerning (inbezug auf) pleasure.
3. *Say:* in one great matter (Sache).
4. **For the present**, für den Augenblick.
5. **Scheme**, *here*, intention.
6. **Agree with** (in opinion), uberein′stimmen mit.
7. **Knowledge**, *here*, Erfahrung.
8. **Married**, verheiratet.
9. **Absurd** (=foolish), thöricht, unvernünftig.
10. **Prime of youth**, die Blüte der Jugend.
11. **Conclude**, schliessen.
12. **Enter on**, ein′treten in.
13. **Scheme of life**, die Lebenslage.

Thomas Erskine *to* his Sister (1).

“Rome, 25*th February* 1824.

“My dear Christian,—It is never from forgetfulness,[1] and far less from indifference,[2] that my letters to you are unfrequent;[3] for there is no person in the world that I like better, or think oftener of, than yourself; but really seeing sights[4] is a full occupation of time, and a most fatiguing occupation too. . . . This place from which I write is just a mighty monument of the uncertainty of human things—it is a home[5] for the afflicted and ruined and disappointed; for here they *will see* the traces of a heavier affliction, and a deeper and more widely extended ruin,[6] and a more unlooked-for blight[7] than their own. Here they do not see the tombs of individuals, but of empires—they walk over the ashes of all that this world has produced of[8] mighty and glorious and enduring, of cheerful and prosperous; and they may thus have the consolation of thinking that, when they suffer, they only share the common inheritance of man. . . ."

1. **Forgetfulness**, Vergesslichkeit.
2. **Indifference**, Gleichgültigkeit.
   - *It is indifferent to me where we go*, es ist mir gleichgültig, wohin wir gehen.
   - *An indifferent (tolerable) play*, ein mittelmässiges Stück.
3. **Unfrequent**, *say*, so rare.
4. **Seeing sights, &c.**, *translate freely*, Sehenswürdigkeiten nehmen die Zeit völlig in Anspruch und ermüden noch ausserdem sehr.
   - *At the sight of*, beim Anblick.
   - *Out of —, out of mind*, aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn.
5. die Heimstätte.
6. **Ruin**, der Verfall.
   - *Ruin (of a person)*, der Ruin', das Verderben.
   - *Ruin (old building)*, die Ruine.
   - *To ruin*, zu Grunde richten.
7. das Verderben.
8. an (w. dat.).

gelten: 1. *to be worth* 2. *pass for* (für).
diese Münze gilt einen Gulden: *this coin has the value of a florin.*
er gilt für einen reichen Mann: *he passes for a rich man.*
es gilt mein Leben: *my life is at stake.*
das Geld: *money.*
gültig: *valid.*
die Gilde: *guild, corporation.*

Thomas Erskine *to* his Sister (2).

"The Noels have left this morning for Naples. They pressed me very hard to go with them, but I want to see more of this place, and to get[1] more into its spirit. Rome is not a place to see in company with others. It is too solemn and overwhelming in its principle[2] *to admit of* being felt by a number of people together. Ten people can admire a column or a statue together; but ten people cannot look together into the abyss of past time[3] and glory and genius. It is *like looking* into a grave, or conversing with a departed spirit. I cannot tell you anything which you do not find better in books, only that the half of the truth can never be told you of the general interest of the scene,[4] or of the magnificence of St. Peter's, or of the magic[5] of the Apollo. . . . My dear Christian, I hope Charles is not feeling his arm troublesome; if he does, come away,[6] and I shall be your *cicerone.* It would be an immense delight to me to see you, and I know that both you and Charles would delight in it. Take a lesson in Italian now and then[7] *by way of* preparation. (Give) my best love[8] to all friends.—Yours affectionately."

1. *=penetrate*, ein'dringen (in).
2. Grundlage (f.).
   He is a man of principle, er hat gute Grundsätze.
   To lay down a —, ein Prinzip auf'stellen.
   By principle, grundsätzlich.
3. **Past time,** Vergangenheit.
4. **Scene,** Schauplatz.
   Scene (*view*), Landschaft.
   Scene (*in a play*), die Scene; der Auftritt.
5. **Magic,** die Pracht, der Zauber.
   Magic (adj.), magisch; Zauber- . . .
   Magic flute, die Zauberflöte.
6. *Here:* herüber.
7. **Now and then,** dann und wann.
8. **Love to,** Grüsse an (acc.).

S. WARREN *to* A FRIEND.

"I had but just returned from Hastings, and found your letter on my table. I had already found in the columns[1] of a newspaper the sad and surprising intelligence of your father's death. I can truly say that it unnerved[2] me for several days; for the shock[3] was equally[4] severe and unexpected. I have lost in your admirable[5] father my earliest, my most faithful and affectionate[6] and discreet[7] friend. My heart swells[8] when I reflect upon what he has been to me, what he has done for me. Words but sicken[9] you, smarting[10] under so heavy a blow, and would not relieve me. The mourning[11] I wear externally for your dear father is the faithful type[12] of a sorrowing heart—a heart in which his memory will long be cherished."[13]—*Annals of a Publishing House*, Mrs. Oliphant.

1. **Column**, *here*, die Spalte; (pillar) die Säule.
2. **Unnerve**, entnerven.
3. **The shock** (=blow), der Schlag.
4. **Equally, &c.**, *say*, as . . . as.
5. **Admirable**, bewundernswürdig; *here better*, vortrefflich.
6. **Affectionate**, liebevoll; zärtlich.
   Your — sister (*in a letter*), deine dich liebende Schwester.
7. **Discreet**, umsichtig.
8. **My heart swells**, mir bricht das Herz vor Gram.
9. **Sicken**, *say*, *cause pain*, Schmerz verursachen; wehe thun (dat.).
10. *Say:* who . . . smart, der Sie . . . leiden.
11. **Mourning**, die Trauer.
    To go into — for, Trauer an'legen um.
12. **Type** (image), der Abdruck.
    Type (*model*), das Vorbild, Muster.
13. **To cherish**, im Gedächtnis behalten; hegen.

Peter the Great as (a) Carpenter.[1]

Peter the Great was the first sovereign of Russia who bethought himself of[2] civilising[3] his people, and of causing his country to take her proper[4] position in the family of nations. In order to effect this object,[5] as he possessed no navy[6] and no subjects able to undertake the construction[7] of ships, he determined to travel incognito[8] into various maritime countries.[9] In 1697, then,[10] Peter set out in the suite[11] of his own ambassador, and arrived in the city of Amsterdam, where he entered (himself) as a carpenter, took his place among the artisans,[12] and became in all respects[13] one of them(selves), wearing the same dress, eating the same sort of food, and inhabiting equally humble[14] lodgings.[15] In this way he passed several months, bearing[16] a considerable part in the building of a ship, which was named *St. Peter*, and afterwards purchased by the royal artisan as the germ[17] from which was to proceed a mighty navy.

1. **Carpenter,** der Zimmermann.
2. **Bethink oneself of . . .,** daran denken . . . zu (inf.).
3. **Civilise,** civilisieren; bilden.
4. **Proper** (suitable), passend, recht.
   To think proper, für gut halten.
5. **Object** (aim), das Ziel, der Zweck.
6. **Navy,** die Flotte; Marine.
7. **Construction,** der Bau (*pl.* —ten); die Konstruktion.
8. **Incognito,** unter fremdem Namen; inkognito.
9. **Maritime country,** der Seestaat.
10. **Then** = thus, also.
11. **Suite** (followers), das Gefolge.
    Suite of rooms, eine Reihe von Zimmern; eine Zimmerflucht.
12. **Artisan,** der Handwerker.
13. **In all respects,** in jeder Hinsicht.
    Respect (esteem), (Hoch)achtung.
    With respect to, in Bezug auf (acc.), hinsichtlich (gen.).
    Respects, Grüsse (pl.); Empfehlung.
14. **Humble,** bescheiden.
15. **Lodgings,** Wohnung.
    Furnished lodgings, möblierte Zimmer.
    Board and lodgings, Wohnung und Kost (f.); Pension (f.).
16. **Bearing,** and bore . . .
17. **Germ,** der Keim.

---

treten: tread, *step.*
betreten : *set foot on.*
ein′treten (in) : *enter.*
der Tritt : *tread, step.*

Eintritt : *entrance.*
ins Mittel treten : *interpose.*

einem zu nahe treten : "*step too near,*" *offend, wrong.*

teilen: *divide, share,* **deal.**
der Teil (das Teil) : *part, share.*
die Teilung : *division, dismemberment.*

teilhaft(ig) (gen.) : *sharing in.*
teilbar : *divisible.*
etwas wird einem zu teil : *something falls to one's lot.*

teil′nehmen an (dat.) : *take part in, interest oneself in.*
die Teilnahme an (dat.) : *sympathy, interest.*

Luther's Fortitude (1).

Martin Luther was not called upon[1] to lay down his life[2] for his faith; but from the day that[3] he declared himself against the Pope, he daily ran the risk of losing it. At the beginning of his great struggle he stood almost entirely alone. The odds[4] against him were tremendous. "On one side," said he himself, "are learning, genius, rank, power, sanctity, miracles; on the other, Wycliffe, Lorenzo Valla, Augustine, and Luther—a poor creature, a man of yesterday, standing well-nigh alone with a few friends."[5] Summoned by the Emperor to appear at Worms, to answer the charge[6] made against him of heresy,[7] he determined to answer in person.[8] Those about him[9] told him that he would lose his life if he went, and they urged[10] him to flee. "No," said he, "I will repair thither, though I should find there thrice as many devils as (there are) tiles[11] upon the housetops." Warned against[12] the bitter enmity of a certain Duke George, he said, "I will go there, though for nine whole days (running) it rained Duke Georges."[13]

1. **Called upon**, berufen.

2. **To lay down one's life**, sein Leben ein'setzen.

3. **From the day that**, von dem Tage an, wo.

4. **The odds**, die Uebermacht.

The odds are on his side, die Wahrscheinlichkeit ist für ihn.
Odd (*uneven*), ungerade; (*strange*) seltsam, wunderlich.
Four score and odd, etliche (einige) achtzig.
An odd glove, ein einzelner Handschuh.

5. **Standing . . . friends**, dem nur einige Freunde zur Seite stehen.

6. **Answer a charge**, sich gegen eine Anklage verteidigen.

7. **Heresy**, die Ketzerei.

der Ketzer, *heretic.*

8. **In person**, persönlich.

9. **Those about him** = those who were about him (in seiner Umgebung).

10. **Urge**, drängen; dringen (in, *acc.*).

Urgent(*ly*), dringend.

11. **Tile**, der Ziegel.

12. **Warn against**, warnen vor (dat.).

Warn (*admonish*), ermahnen.
At a minute's warning, in kürzester Frist.

13. **Duke Georges**, *say*, Dukes George.

Tell: sagen.
Tell (*a story*): erzählen.
Tell lies: lügen.
A telling blow: ein entscheidender Schlag.
Every shot told: jede Kugel traf.
Tale (*story, narrative*): die Erzählung, Geschichte.
Tell tales out of school: aus der Schule schwätzen.

LUTHER'S FORTITUDE (2).

Luther was as good as his word;[1] and he set forth upon[2] his perilous journey. When he came in sight of the old bell-towers[3] of Worms, he stood up in his chariot and sang, "Eine feste Burg ist unser Gott"—the "Marseillaise" of the Reformation—the words and music of which he is said to have improvised[4] only two days before. Shortly before the meeting[5] of the Diet,[6] an old soldier, George Freundesberg, put his hand upon Luther's shoulder, and said to him: "Good monk, good monk, take heed[7] what thou doest; thou art going into a harder fight than any of us have ever yet been in." But Luther's only answer to the veteran[8] was, that he had determined to stand upon[9] the Bible and his conscience. Luther's courageous defence before the Diet is on record,[10] and forms one of the most glorious[11] pages in history.

---

1. **Was as good as his word,** blieb bei seinem Wort.
2. **Set forth upon** = undertook.
3. **Bell-tower,** der Glockenturm.
4. **Improvise,** aus dem Stegreif dichten.
5. **Meeting,** Versammlung; Sitzung.
6. **The Diet,** der Reichstag.
7. **To take heed,** acht geben.
8. **Veteran,** der Alte; der Veteran'.
9. **Stand upon,** sich stützen auf (acc.).
10. **On record,** in Erinnerung; eine historische Thatsache.
    To leave a good record, ein gutes Gedächtnis hinterlassen.
11. **Glorious,** ruhmreich; glorreich.

LUTHER'S FORTITUDE (3).

When finally urged by the Emperor to retract,[1] he said firmly: "Sire, unless I am convinced of my error by the testimony[2] of Scripture[3] or by manifest[4] evidence, I cannot and will not retract, for we must never act contrary to our conscience. Such is[5] my profession of faith,[6] and you must expect none other from me. *Hier stehe ich: Ich kann nicht anders: Gott helfe mir!*" He had to do his duty—to obey the orders of a Power higher than that of kings—and he did it at all hazards.[7] Afterwards, when hard pressed[8] by his enemies at Augsburg, Luther said that "if he had five hundred heads, he would lose them all rather than recant[9] his articles concerning faith."[10] Like all[11] courageous men, his strength only seemed to grow in proportion to[12] the difficulties he had to encounter[13] and overcome. "There is no man in Germany," said Hutten, "who more (utterly) despises death than does Luther."

And to his moral[14] courage, perhaps more than to that of any other (single) man, do we owe[15] the liberation of modern thought, and the vindication[16] of the great rights of the human understanding.

1. **Urged to retract**, zum Widerruf gedrängt.
2. **Testimony**, das Zeugnis.
3. **Scripture**, die (heilige) Schrift.
4. **Manifest**, augenscheinlich, klar.
5. **Such is** = that is.
6. **Profession of faith**, das Glaubensbekenntnis.
7. **At all hazards**, auf jede Gefahr hin.
8. **Hard pressed**, hart bedrängt.
9. **To recant**, widerrufen (insep.).
10. **Articles concerning faith**, die Glaubenssätze.
11. **Like all . . .**, wie bei allen . . .
12. **In proportion to**, im Verhältnis zu.

    Proportion (*symmetry*), das Ebenmass, Gleichmass.
    Proportionate(*ly*), angemessen, entsprechend (dat.).

13. **To encounter**, *here*, bekämpfen.
14. **Moral**, sittlich.
15. **Owe**, verdanken (dat.).

    All I have I owe to him, alles was ich habe, verdanke ich ihm.
    He owes me ten pounds, er schuldet mir 10 Pfund; *or*, er ist mir . . . schuldig.

16. **Vindication**, *say*, victory.

helfen: help.
der Helfer: *helper.*
die Hilfe: *help, assistance.*

I cannot **help** *thinking:* ich kann nicht umhin zu denken.

behilflich sein: *to assist.*
der Gehilfe: *assistant, helper.*

Help yourself (*at table*): bedienen Sie sich.
I cannot help it: ich kann nichts dafür.

unbeholfen: *awkward, clumsy.*
sich behelfen: *make shift; do without.*

It cannot be helped: es lässt sich nichts thun.

Professor John Wilson ("Christopher North") *to* a Friend (1).

"Oxford, 13*th April* 1806.

"My dearest Robert,—If I have not answered your letter so soon as perhaps I should have done, it was neither from being indifferent to the very agreeable contents[1] of it, nor careless[2] of that happiness which I see awaits you in life, and which no soul on earth deserves better than you. Most genuine[3] satisfaction it did give me to hear of the kindness which your father's memory [4] has procured you. In your case it may justly be said that a good man's righteousness [5] is an inheritance to his children. That happiness, prosperity,[6] and peace may ever attend [7] you, is a wish I need not express to one who knows me so well as you do. As to myself, I have not a very great deal to say."

1. **Contents**, der Inhalt (*cp.* die Brille, die Asche, die Schere).
2. **Careless of** (unconcerned), unbekümmert um.

   Careless (*negligent*), nachlässig.

3. **Genuine** = true.
4. **Memory**, das Andenken.
5. **Righteousness**, die Rechtschaffenheit.
6. **Prosperity**, das Wohlergehen.

   National prosperity, die Wohlfahrt des Landes.

7. **Attend**, *here*, begleiten; folgen (dat.).

PROFESSOR JOHN WILSON ("CHRISTOPHER NORTH") *to* A FRIEND (2).

"I am going on [1] pretty much in the old way, sometimes unhappy enough, God knows! and at other times tolerably comfortable. . . . I expected to hear something from D., informing [2] me of your intention relative [3] to our summer tour [4] to the lakes. I wrote him how I was situated [5] at present; but I would like to hear what your intentions are, as I might perhaps accommodate [6] myself in a great measure to them. I am uncertain whether I shall be in Scotland again for some [7] years. If you could meet me at the lakes in July early,[8] even without our other friends, I think we might pass the time most happily. But I expect to hear from you soon at great length.[9] . . . Remember [10] me kindly to Finlay and Smith [10] and to all you love, mother and sisters.—Yours ever, JOHN WILSON."

—*Christopher North*, MRS. GORDON.

1. **I am going on, &c.,** mir geht es so ziemlich.

2. **Informing me,** *say*, which was to . . ., auf′klären (über, *w. acc.*).

   I have been informed that . . ., mir wurde mitgeteilt, dass . . .
   He is well informed, er ist wohl unterrichtet.

3. **Relative to,** inbezug auf (acc.).

4. **Summer tour,** der Sommerausflug, *or* die Sommer reise.

   Wedding tour, circular tour, Hochzeitsreise, Rundreise.

5. **How I was situated,** in welcher Lage ich mich . . . befand.

6. **To accommodate oneself to,** sich richten nach.

   We must — ourselves to circumstances, wir müssen uns in die Verhältnisse schicken.
   He could not — so many in his house, . . . unter′bringen.

7. **For some years,** *here*, in den nächsten Jahren.

8. **In July early,** anfangs Juli.

9. **At great length,** ausführlich.

10. **Remember me, &c.,** grüssen Sie F. und S. bestens von mir.

ANECDOTE OF SHELLEY (I).

The following curious[1] ghost story respecting[2] Shelley was related by Byron to Captain Medwin, after his death :—

Shortly before his fatal[3] voyage to Leghorn,[4] the inhabitants of the country-house at San Lorenzo were alarmed[5] at midnight by piercing shrieks.[6] They rushed out of their bedrooms and found Shelley in the saloon[7] with his eyes wide open, and gazing on vacancy,[8] as though he beheld (some) spectre.[9] *On waking him*, he related that he had had a vision.[10] He thought that a figure[11] wrapped in a mantle came to[12] his bedside and beckoned to[13] him. He got up and followed it; when in the hall, the phantom[14] lifted up the hood[15] of his cloak, showed Shelley the phantasm of himself,[16] and saying "*Siete satisfatto?*" vanished.

Shelley had been reading a *strange* drama, which is *supposed* to have been written by Calderon, entitled[17] *El embozado, ó el encapotado* (The man with the veil or shroud).

1. **Curious** (strange), sonderbar, seltsam.

   Curious (*inquisitive*), neugierig; (*remarkable*) merkwürdig.

2. **Respecting** (prep.), betreffend; über.

3. **Fatal,** verhängnisvoll, unglücklich.

   Fatal wound, tödliche (gefährliche) Wunde.

4. **Leghorn,** Livorno.

5. **To alarm,** erschrecken (wk.).

6. **Piercing shriek**, der durchdringende Schrei.

Piercing cold, die schneidende Kälte.

7. **Saloon**, der Saal (*pl.* Säle); Salon (pron. as in Fr.).

8. **Vacancy**, die Leere.

Vacant post, die erledigte Stelle; die Vacanz.

9. **Spectre**, das Gespenst.

10. **Vision**, Erscheinung; das Traumgesicht.

11. **Figure**, die Gestalt; (arith.) die Ziffer.

To cut a figure, eine Figur machen.

To figure (intr.), eine Rolle spielen.

12. an (case?).

13. **To beckon to**, zu'winken, zu'nicken (dat.).

14. **Phantom** = spectre; *phantasm*, das (Trug)bild.

15. **Hood**, die Haube.

16. *Say:* his own.

17. **Entitle** (books), betiteln.

I am entitled to, ich bin berechtigt zu.

Anecdote of Shelley (2).

It is so scarce that Washington Irving told me he had sought for it without success in several of the public libraries[1] of Spain. The story is—that a kind of Cipriano or Faust is through life thwarted[2] in all his plans for the acquisition of wealth, or honour, or happiness, by a masked[3] stranger, who stands in his way like some Alastor or evil spirit. He is at length in love,[4]—the day is fixed for his marriage—when the unknown contrives to sow dissension[5] between him and his betrothed,[6] and to break off the match.[7] Infuriate with his wrongs,[8] he breathes nothing but revenge,[9] but all his attempts to discover his mysterious foe prove abortive.[10] At length his persecutor appears of his own accord.[11] When about to fight, the Embozado unmasks,[12] and discovers the phantom of himself, saying, "Are you satisfied?" The hero of the play dies with horror. This play had worked strongly on[13] Shelley's imagination, and accounts for[14] the awful scene in San Lorenzo.

1. **Library**, die Bibliothek'.

2. **To thwart** (tr.), vereiteln (of things only); *here*, hindern.

3. **To mask**, maskieren, vermummen.

4. **In love**, verliebt; [*to be in love with*, verliebt sein in (acc.)].

Love of freedom, Liebe zur Freiheit, Freiheitsliebe.

5. **Sow dissension**, Zwietracht stiften (unter).

6. **Betrothed** (fiancée), die Braut.

7. **Break off the match**, die Heirat rückgängig machen.

He is not his match, er ist ihm nicht gewachsen.

More than a match for, überlegen (dat.).

To make a good match, eine gute Partie machen.

He has met his match, er hat seinen Mann (*or* seinesgleichen) gefunden.

8. **The wrong** (injury), Kränkung.

To be (*in the*) *wrong*, Unrecht haben; sich irren.

9. **Breathe revenge**, auf Rache sinnen; Rache schnauben.

10. **Prove abortive**, fehl′schlagen.

11. **Of one's own accord**, freiwillig; aus eignem Antrieb.

12. **Unmask**, die Maske ab′nehmen.

13. **Work on**, wirken auf.

14. **Account for** = explain.

S. WARREN *to* HIS PUBLISHER.

"I beg to return[1] you my affectionate thanks for your very kind letter and its remittance.[2] I shall ever feel gratified[3] for the warm expressions of personal regard[4] which were contained in your last letter, and hope that the friendship, which on my part has been so auspiciously[5] commenced, may continue.[6] Rely on it, my dear sir, I can never forget that it was you who brought me before the public,[7] and by the splendour of your own introduction insured me a successful reception. I am proud and happy to think that my papers[8] have—if I am rightly informed[9]—at all enlarged the sale of your Magazine:[10] and I wish I could do more than say that my best services are at your command[11] for the future; for I am now, thank God, free from many, if not all, (of the) cares which ate away[12] my peace of mind in former days. I have married a most amiable and affectionate wife, am comfortably and even elegantly settled,[13] and, in short, am myself again."—*The Annals of a Publishing House*, MRS. OLIPHANT.

1. **Return affectionate thanks,** herzlichen Dank sagen.

2. **Remittance,** die Geldsendung.

3. **Feel gratified** (for), Freude empfinden (über).

4. **Regard,** *here*, attention.

I have a great regard for him, ich habe grosse Achtung vor ihm.
With — to your letter, in betreff Ihres Briefes; *or* was Ihren Brief betrifft.
Without — to his own interests, ohne Rücksicht auf sein eigenes Interesse.
Give my (kind) —s to her, grüssen Sie sie (freundlichst) von mir.

5. **Auspiciously** = happily.

6. **Continue,** fort′dauern.

7. **Public,** Öffentlichkeit; das Publikum.

Public opinion, öffentliche Meinung.

8. **Papers,** Schriften.

9. **Informed,** unterrichtet.

10. **Magazine,** die Zeitschrift; das Magazin.

Magazine (storehouse), das Warenlager; Magazin.

11. **To be at one's command,** einem zur Verfügung stehen.

12. zehrten an.

13. **Settled,** *here*, eingerichtet.

The business is settled, das Geschäft ist abgemacht.

LORD CLIVE (1).

Clive's voyage was unusually tedious [1] even for that age. The ship remained some months at the Brazils,[2] where the young adventurer picked up [3] some knowledge of Portuguese, and spent all his pocket-money. He did *not* arrive in India *till* more than [4] a year after he had left England.[4] His situation at Madras was most painful. His funds [5] were exhausted. His pay [6] was small. He had *contracted* debts. He *was* wretchedly *lodged*, no small calamity [7] in a climate which can be made tolerable [8] to a European only by spacious and well-placed [9] apartments. He had been furnished [10] with letters of recommendation to a gentleman who might have assisted him; but when he landed at Fort St. George, he found that this gentleman had sailed for England. The lad's shy and haughty [11] disposition withheld him from introducing himself to strangers. He was several months in India before he became acquainted with a single family.

1. **Tedious,** langwierig; (währen, *to last*).

2. (**The**) **Brazils,** Brasilien.

3. **Pick up,** auf′schnappen (*familiar*).

To pick up one's strength, wieder zu Kräften kommen.

4. *Say:* after a year had elapsed since his departure from England.

5. **Funds** = means (plur.).

6. **Pay** (of officers), Besoldung.
To serve for pay, um Sold (m.) dienen.
7. **Calamity**, *here*, Übelstand (m.).
8. **Tolerable**, erträglich.
9. **Well - placed**, günstig gelegen.
10. Provided.
11. stolze Gemütsart.

Lord Clive (2).

The climate affected[1] his health and spirits.[2] His duties were (of a kind) ill-suited to his ardent and daring character. He pined for his home, and in his letters to his relations expressed his feelings in language softer and more pensive[3] than we should have expected either from the waywardness[4] of his boyhood or from the inflexible[5] sternness of his later years. "I have not enjoyed," says he, "one happy day since I left my native country;" and again, "I must confess, at intervals,[6] when I think of my dear native England, it affects me in a very particular manner. . . . If I[7] should be so far blest[7] as to revisit again my own country, but (more) especially Manchester, the centre[8] of all my wishes, all that I could hope or desire for would be presented before[9] me in one view."—Macaulay.

1. **Affect**, an'greifen.
My words affected him, —— gingen ihm sehr nahe (*or* zu Herzen).
It did not affect (*concern*) *anybody*, es berührte Niemand.
He affects illness, er stellt sich krank.
2. **Spirits**, der Geist.
3. **Pensive**, sinnig.
4. **Waywardness**, der Eigensinn.
5. unbeugsame Strenge.
6. Times.
7. If it should be granted (vergönnt) to me.
8. = *Goal*, das Ziel.
9. gewährt (granted).

Lord Houghton (Richard M. Milnes) *to* Sir Robert Peel (1).

["Private.[1]]

Smyrna, *28th Nov.* 1842.

"Dear Sir Robert Peel,—It is just possible you may have some Christmas leisure[2] to read a gossiping[3] letter; if not, pray throw this into the fire, for I can tell you nothing that you do not know, or at least cannot know from a hundred better sources[4] of information. I have spent the last two or three months in Greece and Turkey. The former country I had visited some ten years ago, and I felt quite indignant[5] at the little advance[6] which it has made since its independence, until I reflected[7] how slow the progress of a country exhausted[8] by revolution must necessarily be. There is security of person and property, an increase[9] in some branches[10] of production, such as the currant[11] wine, and a few roads are in process of construction;[12] but whatever good one finds cannot, I fear, be attributed[13] to the Government. All one could hear of the acts of the King and the authorities[14] was so stupid, or worse, that one almost felt[15] sure there[16] must be another side of the question,[16] but I was sorry to be unable to find any other excuses than[17] arise from the difficulties of the case and the incapacity[18] of those who have to deal with them. . . ."

1. **Private**, privat.
   das Privatleben; der Privatmann; die Privatschule.

2. **Leisure**, die Musse; (adj.) müssig.
   To be at —, Musse haben.
   Prov.: Müssiggang ist aller Laster Anfang, *idleness is the mother of all evil.*

3. **Gossiping letter**, *say*, Plauderbrief.

4. **Source of information**, die Unterrichtsquelle.

5. **Indignant at**, empört über.

6. **Advance** (progress), der Fortschritt (mostly used in the plural).
   Advance of an army, das Vorrücken eines Heeres.
   Advance of money, der (Geld) vorschuss; das Darlehn (**loan**).
   I went in —, ich ging voraus.
   To pay in —, im voraus bezahlen.

7. **To reflect**, überlegen (insep.).

8. **Exhausted**, erschöpft.

9. **Increase**, die Zunahme.
   To be on the —, im Zunehmen sein; (*of price*) steigen.
   Increase of salary, die Gehaltszulage.

10. **Branch of production**, der Produktionszweig.

11. **Currant wine**, der Rosinenwein (Rosine, *f.* **raisin**).

12. **In process of construction**, im Bau begriffen.

13. **Attribute to**, zu'schreiben (dat.).

14. **Authorities**, die Behörden (f. plur.).

15. **Feel sure**, überzeugt sein.

16. *Say:* that the question must have another side.

17. **Than arise**, *say*, than those which arise (sich ergeben).

18. **Incapacity**, Unfähigkeit.

Lord Houghton (Richard M. Milnes) *to* Sir Robert Peel (2).

"It is unfortunate[1] that the Foreign Ministers[2] have been compelled by circumstances to interfere[3] as they have done, almost with the personal expenditure of the Sovereign, so that he evidently regards them as spies[4] upon[5] his affairs, and derives[6] no advantage from their presence and advice. He has built a huge palace, the design,[7] I believe, of his father, which might look massive[8] and imposing in the middle of a Bavarian sand-plain,[9] but is simply heavy[10] and disfiguring under the shadow of the Parthenon. His pretty, dressy[11] wife, too,[12] does him no good,[12] as she does nothing to please or attach[13] the people. I think it is matter of deep regret that the form[14] of the Constitution was not fixed[15] at first. It may be very true that the country is not fit[16] for representative[17] government, but almost anything[18] must be better than the action[19] of indefinite desires and confused[20] hopes on so excitable[21] a people."

1. *Say:* a misfortune.
2. **Foreign Ministers,** die auswärtigen Minister.
3. **Interfere with,** *here,* ein′greifen in (acc.).
    - *Interfere* (*meddle with*), sich ein′mischen in etwas.
    - *Interfere* (*intervene*), dazwischen′treten.
4. **Spy,** der Spion.
5. In.
6. **Derive advantage,** Vorteil ziehen.
7. **Design** (plan), der Plan.
8. **Massive and imposing,** massiv′ und imposant′ (stattlich).
9. **Sand-plain,** die Sandebene.
10. **Heavy and disfiguring,** schwerfällig und verunstaltend.
11. **Dressy,** putzsüchtig.
12. **Does him no good,** nützt ihm auch (too) nichts.
13. **Attach,** *here,* fesseln.
14. **Form of the Constitution,** die Verfassungsform.
15. **Fix,** fest′setzen.
16. **Be fit for,** passen für.
17. **Representative,** repräsentativ′.
18. *Say: everything else,* alles andere.
19. **Action,** *here,* das Wirken.
20. **Confused,** verworren.
21. **Excitable,** erregbar.

Lord Houghton (Richard M. Milnes) *to* Sir Robert Peel (3).

"If it comes into some Greek's head that the Constitution may be got[1] by removing the King, his life is not safe an hour. The *parties* most to blame in the whole concern[2] appear to me to have been the Regency,[3] who have laid no one solid foundation,[4] supplied[5] no one of the national necessities,[5] and have left to this poor young man such a task as the best head and heart would surmount[6] with difficulty. The stability[7] of the Ottoman Empire has become such diplomatic slang[8] that one can hardly write about it, yet after all[9] it is the absorbing[10] subject of one's reflections in Turkey. It is quite true that one feels at Constantinople that the Turks are only encamped[11] in Europe, that it is to all intents and purposes[12] a Greek town with mosques[13] in it, and that the Turks are there to govern and to pray. This governing is carried to such an extent[14] that every Turk not in office or public employment[15] is in fact in disgrace,[16] and holds himself retired from society."

1. **Get** (obtain), erlangen.
2. **Concern** (matter), die Sache.
   He has no — with that, er hat damit nichts zu schaffen (thun).
   A commercial —, ein kaufmännisches Geschäft.
   The whole -- does not affect me, die ganze Geschichte berührt mich nicht.
3. **Regency**, die Regentschaft.
4. **Foundation**, die Grundlage.
5. *Translate freely:* nicht einem der nationalen Bedürfnisse Genüge gethan hat.
6. **Surmount**, überwinden (insep.).
7. **Stability** (continuity), die Fortdauer; Stabilität.
8. **Slang**, *here*, Redensart (phrase); *we have no word in German with the comprehensive meaning of "slang," and have therefore adopted* das Slang *from E. and* der Jargon' *from French:* das Börsenslang, *stock exchange slang;* der Bühnenjargon, *theatrical slang.*
9. **After all**, schliesslich.
10. **Absorbing . . . reflections**, der einen ganz in Anspruch nehmende Gegenstand des Denkens.
11. **Are encamped**, *say*, have a camp (Lager, *n.*).
12. **To all intents and purposes**, in jeder Hinsicht; ganz und gar.

13. **Mosque**, die Moschee (*pl.* —n.).

14. *Say:* goes so far.

15. **Public employment**, öffentliche Anstellung.

16. **Be in disgrace**, sich in Ungnade befinden.

He is a — to his family, er ist eine Schande für seine Familie.
Disgraceful, schändlich.

Lord Houghton (Richard M. Milnes) *to* Sir Robert Peel (4).

"But it is quite true that no part of the *élément chrétien*, about which the French talk so much, is fit, or indeed has any inclination, to assume[1] the supremacy, and that so long as the Porte[2] governs its Christian subjects with moderation,[3] and abstains from capricious[4] insolence, and is impressionable[5] by the suggestions[5] of Foreign Ministers on such points, there is every reason to suppose that they will prefer its authority[6] to that of any other Government. The chief difficulty of the Porte seems to be that[7] of affording sufficient protection against local[8] tyranny and injustice in the more distant parts of the Empire, in which the Sultan's authority is little regarded.[9] . . . I had intended to go hence to Beyroot, but as that place is now blockaded[10] by the insurgents,[11] and the Pasha *all but* in their hands, I should be unable to travel about, and must content myself with visiting the 'old man wonderful' in Egypt. . . . Will[12] you present my respectful regards to Lady Peel.[12]—Believe me,[13] &c., RICHARD M. MILNES."

—*From* SIR WEMYSS REID'S *Life of Lord Houghton* (*by permission*).

1. **Assume the supremacy**, die Obergewalt (Vorherrschaft) ergreifen.

2. **Porte**, die Pforte.

3. **Moderation**, Mässigung.

In —, mit Mass.

4. **Capricious insolence**, mutwillige Anmassung.

5. empfänglich für die Anregungen.

6. **Authority**, *here*, Herrschaft.

Authority (*power*), die Gewalt, Macht.
To be in —, die Gewalt in Händen haben.
To exercise one's —, seine Macht aus'üben.
He has lost his —, er hat sein Ansehen verloren.
On the best authority, aus der besten Quelle.

7. **To be that . . .**, *say*, to consist in . . .
8. **Local**, örtlich.
9. **Regarded**, anerkannt.
10. **To blockade**, blockieren.
11. **Insurgent**, aufständisch.
12. Wollen Sie Lady Peel meine achtungsvollen Grüsse übergeben.
13. Ihr ergebener.

BYRON *to* HIS FRIEND ANDREA LONDS.

"DEAR FRIEND,—The sight of your handwriting gave me the greatest pleasure. Greece has ever been for me, as it must be for all men of any feeling or education, the promised[1] land of valour, of the arts, and of liberty; nor did the time I passed in my youth in travelling[2] among her ruins[2] *at all* chill[3] my affection for the birth-place of heroes. In addition[4] to this, I am bound to yourself by ties of friendship and gratitude for the hospitality which I experienced from you during my stay in that country, of which you are now become one of the first defenders and ornaments. To see myself serving, by your side and under your eyes, in the cause[5] of Greece, will be to me one of the happiest events of my life.—In the meantime, with the hope of our again meeting, I am, as ever, &c.,

"NOEL BYRON."

—*Letters and Journals of Lord Byron*,
THOMAS MOORE.

1. **Promised land**, das gelobte Land.
2. **In travelling among, &c.**, seine Ruinen durchwandernd.
3. **Chill**, *here*, ab'kühlen.
4. **In addition to this**, ausserdem; dazu.
5. **In the cause**, für die Sache.

binden : *to* **bind.**
die Binde : *sling, cravat.*
der Bindfaden : *string.*
der Band : *volume.*

das Band : *ribbon, bond.*
die Bande : *troop, gang.*
bändigen : *to tame.*
der Bund, das Bündnis : *league, alliance.*

bündig : *binding, valid.*
"kurz und bündig" : *short and to the point.*
das Bündel : *bundle.*

BYRON *to* GOETHE.

"LEGHORN,[1] *24th July* 1823.

"ILLUSTRIOUS[2] SIR,—I cannot thank you as you ought to be thanked for the lines[3] my young friend, Mr. Sterling, sent me of yours; and it would but ill become[4] me to *pretend* to exchange[5] verses with him who, for fifty years, has been the undisputed sovereign of European literature. You must therefore accept my most sincere acknowledgments[6] in prose—and in hasty[7] prose too; for I am at present on my voyage to Greece once more, and surrounded by hurry and *bustle*, which hardly allow a moment even to gratitude and admiration to express themselves.

"I sailed from Genoa some days ago, was driven back by a gale of wind, and have since sailed again and arrived here, Leghorn, this morning, to receive[8] on board some Greek passengers[9] for their struggling country.

"Here also I found your lines and Mr. Sterling's letter, and I could not have had a more favourable omen,[10] a more agreeable surprise, than a word of Goethe, written by his own hand.

"I am returning to Greece, to see if I can be of any little use there: if ever I come back, I will pay a visit to Weimar, to offer[11] the sincere homage[11] of one of the many millions of your admirers.

"I have the honour to be,[12] ever and most, your obliged[12]

"NOEL BYRON."

—*Letters and Journals of Lord Byron*,
THOMAS MOORE.

---

1. **Leghorn**, Livorno.
2. **Illustrious**, erlaucht.
3. **Line**, die Zeile.
   Line (*string*), die Schnur; (*geom.*) die Linie.
4. **Ill become**, schlecht an′stehen.
5. **Exchange verses** (words), Verse (Worte) wechseln.
   I will — my watch for this one, ich werde meine Uhr gegen diese (um)′tauschen.
   The exchange, der Tausch; (*comm.*) die Börse.

6. Anerkennung in Prosa (f.).
7. **Hasty** (hurried), hastig; die Hast, *the hurry*.
8. **Receive on board**, an Bord nehmen.
9. **Passenger**, der Passagier.
10. **Omen**, das Vorzeichen, Omen.
11. **To offer homage**, Huldigung dar'bieten.
12. **To be ever, &c.**, immer und ganz zu sein Ihr ergebener.

JOHN BRIGHT *to* LORD HOUGHTON.

"KELSO, N.B., 25*th November* 1881.

"MY DEAR LORD HOUGHTON,—It is very kind of you to remember me at this time, and to send me the gift of your two volumes. I thank you warmly for your kindness. I came down here[1] on Monday, and the time of the journey passed rapidly as I read portions of your first volume. I have a great love of poetry,[2] but I suspect few have less capacity for writing it than I have. What makes it easy to some and impossible to others I cannot understand. I console myself with the belief that it is necessary for some of us to write and speak only in prose.[3] And so you are to lose your now only daughter. It is cruel, but inevitable.[4] I have four daughters now scattered and gone,[5] and my house is almost as lonely as yours. My boys remain with me, but they do not make[6] up for the loss of my girls. I hope your daughters will be happy, and that their happiness will do[7] something to lessen the misery of having lost them. I remember the pleasant evenings at Fryston, and I can imagine how changed is now the scene;[8] but I will not further moralise.[9]—Believe me, always sincerely yours,

JOHN BRIGHT."

—*From* SIR WEMYSS REID'S *Life of Lord Houghton* (*by permission*).

1. **Down here**, hierher.
2. **Poetry**, die Poesie; Dichtung.
Poem, das Gedicht.
Poet, der Dichter.
Poetical, dichterisch.
3. **Prose**, die Prosa; (adj.) prosaisch.

[4] **Inevitable**, unvermeidlich.

[5] **Scattered and gone**, zerstreut und fern.

[6] **Make up for**, ersetzen.

[7] etwas dazu bei'tragen (contribute).

[8] die Scene.

[9] **Moralise**, moralisieren.

Wanderings in China (1).

"*On board*[1] *the 'Pei-Ho,'*
Nearing[2] Hong-Kong, *Christmas Eve*, 1878.

"You will wonder, when you receive this letter posted[3] in Hong-Kong, where I hope to arrive to-morrow!

"(It is) not that my four months in Japan have by any means exhausted its fascination[4]—on the contrary, I purpose returning there in spring, when the double cherry-blossoms are in their glory;[5] but meanwhile the hills are white with snow, and I have been nearly frozen, living in paper houses, without fires—only such warmth as we could extract[6] from ornamental[7] little charcoal braziers.[7] So I have fled southward with the swallows, and sailed from Nagasaki, intending to spend Christmas at Shanghai. There, however, I only stayed three days, for the horrid river of yellow mud[8] and the hideousness[9] of the flat country round,[10] and, above all,[11] notwithstanding the genuine[12] kindness of several residents, the oppressive[13] dreariness of finding myself alone in a great dull[14] hotel, where there was not a creature to be seen except Chinese[15] servants, depressed[16] me to such a *pitch*, that I resolved to risk spending Christmas Day at sea[17] rather than remain there. . . ."

---

[1] **On board,** an Bord.

[2] vor.

[3] **To post** (a letter), einen Brief auf'geben.

[4] **Fascination,** der Zauber.

[5] **Glory,** die Pracht.

To find — in, seinen Ruhm suchen in.

[6] **Extract from**=to obtain.

[7] zierliche kleine Holzkohlen-Pfannen.

[8] **Mud**, der Schlamm (**slime**).

[9] **Hideousness,** die Scheusslichkeit.

[10] **Round** (adv.), ringsum.

[11] **Above all,** vor allem.

12. **Genuine** (sincere), aufrichtig.

13. **Oppressive dreariness**, die niederschlagende Öde.

14. **Dull** (tedious), langweilig; *dull is cognate with Ger.* toll, *mad.*

Dull of apprehension, schwer von Begriff.
Dull of hearing, schwerhörig.
Dull weather, trübes Wetter.
Business is dull, das Geschäft ist flau.
Dull (*stupid*), dumm.

15. **Chinese**, chinesisch.

16. **To depress** (fig.), herunter'stimmen.

17. **At sea**, auf See.

I am quite at — (fig.), ich bin ganz im ungewissen.
To put to —, in See stechen.

fliehen: *to* **flee.** die Flucht: **flight**, *escape.*	flüchten: *take to flight, run away.* flüchtig: 1. *fugitive*, 2. *fleeting, hasty.*	der Flüchtling: *refugee, fugitive.*
sich entschliessen: *to resolve, decide.*	entschlossen: *determined.* die Entschlossenheit: *determination.*	der Entschluss: *resolution.*

WANDERINGS IN CHINA (2).

"*Care*[1] *of* MRS. SNOWDEN, CITY OF VICTORIA,
ISLE OF HONG-KONG, *Christmas Day.*

"Certainly fortune[2] has favoured me, for we reached this most lovely city early this morning, and have had a most enjoyable[3] Christmas Day. I had not the remotest[4] conception that I was coming to anything so beautiful; so, when with[5] the earliest light of dawn[5] we slowly—very slowly—steamed into this exquisite harbour, its beauty, so suddenly revealed,[6] left me mute[7] with delight. Perhaps the contrast[8] between these encircling[9] ranges of shapely hills and the dead level[10] of the Shanghai coast help to make these seem more impressive.[11] Certainly I have seen no harbour to compare with this, though I suppose Rio Janeiro claims[12] the palm of beauty above all others. . . .

"I have already seen enough to convince me that it would be difficult to find more fascinating winter quarters[13] than this oft-abused[14] city. As to climate, although in the same latitude[15] as Calcutta, it is far cooler, and whatever it may be in June or July, to-day it is delicious and balmy,[16] like the sweetest summer day in England; and I am told that this is a *fair sample* of the whole winter at Hong-Kong, and that for five consecutive[17] months there will probably not be even a shower![18] . . ."

1. **Care of,** per Adresse.
2. **Fortune** (fate), das Schicksal.
   Good —, Glück (n.); ill —, Unglück.
   By good fortune, glücklicherweise.
   Everybody is the founder of his own fortune, Jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied.
   To come into a fortune, zu Vermögen kommen.
3. **Enjoyable,** *here*, vergnügt; (palatable) geniessbar.
4. **Remotest conception,** der entfernteste Begriff.
5. mit dem ersten Frühlicht.
6. **Revealed,** enthüllt.
7. **Mute with,** stumm vor.
8. **Contrast,** der Gegensatz.
9. **Encircling ranges,** einschliessende Reihen.
10. **Level** (plain), die Ebene.
   Level of the sea, der Meeresspiegel.
   To put on a — with, auf gleiche Stufe stellen.
11. **Impressive,** eindrucksvoll.
12. **To claim the palm of beauty,** den Preis der Schönheit beanspruchen.
13. **Winter quarters,** der Winteraufenthalt.
14. **Oft-abused,** oft geschmäht.
15. **Latitude,** die Breite.
16. **Balmy,** balsamisch.
17. **Consecutive,** aufeinander folgend.
18. **Shower,** der Regenschauer; *similarly* der Hagelschauer; *but* "*a shower of stones*" (fig.), der Steinhagel.

---

mögen: *like*, **may**; orig. "*to have power.*"
die Macht: *power*, **might**.
Ohnmacht: swoon, impotence.
mächtig: **mighty**, powerful.
sich bemächtigen (gen.): *get into one's power, seize.*
möglich: *possible.*
vermögen (zu): *be able to, have power.*
das Vermögen: 1. *ability;* 2. *wealth.*
ich möchte gern: *I would fain . . .*
er ist der deutschen Sprache mächtig: *he possesses a good knowledge of the G. language.*
wo möglich: *if possible.*
er thut sein Möglichstes: *he does his utmost.*

Wanderings in China (3).

"We arrived here in time[1] to find Mrs. Snowden waiting to welcome me to cosy[2] five o'clock tea in the pretty English drawing-room.[3] In short, everything is so pleasant that already I have begun to feel[4] myself quite at home in this British isle of Hong-Kong. Now it is time to dress for dinner. Every one here seems to have a dinner-party to-night. . . . One singular feature[5] in the streets of

Canton is the multitude of blind beggars, who go about in strings [6] of eight or ten together—literally the blind leading the blind. I met a gentleman the other day who assured me that he once saw six hundred of these blind beggars, all assembled to *share* a beneficent [7] distribution of rice. Nor are other beggars lacking—wild, unkempt-looking [8] creatures, who gather in picturesque [9] groups round the clay ovens,[10] where, on payment [11] of infinitesimal [12] coin, savoury [13] food is prepared and served out to them smoking hot."

1. **In time, &c.**, zeitig genug, um . . . zu treffen, die . . .

2. **Cosy**, gemütlich.

3. **Drawing-room**, das Empfangszimmer; der Salon.

4. **To feel at home**, sich heimisch fühlen.

5. **Feature**, der Zug; die Eigentümlichkeit.

Features of the face, Gesichtszüge.
The leading features of the treaty, die Grundzüge des Vertrages.

6. **String**, *here*, die Reihe; *string is cognate with* Strang (m.), *rope*.

String (*of mus. instrum.*), die Saite; die Saiten zu hoch spannen, *to strain the strings too high*.
A string of pearls, eine Schnur Perlen.

7. **Beneficent distribution**, wohlthätige Verteilung.

8. **Unkempt-looking**, roh ("ungekämmt") aussehend.

9. **Picturesque**, malerisch.

10. **Clay oven**, der Lehmofen.

11. **On payment**, gegen Zahlung.

12. **Infinitesimal**, unendlich klein.

13. **Savoury**, schmackhaft.

Wanderings in China (4).

"Of course we made a point [1] of going to see the shops where dried rats [2] and fresh frogs, and nicely cooked cats and dogs are displayed [3] for sale, at [4] so much a portion, the more highly esteemed pieces being charged [5] extra. Some people are so prejudiced [6] as to consider these cat and rat stalls [7] *rather* a nasty [8] sight; but I don't see that a nice fat puppy [9] is much worse than the sucking [10] pig on the next stall, or indeed anything like so unpleasant as the great bleeding carcasses [11] in our own butchers' shops.[12] (It is) only at certain restaurants [13] that these dainties[14] are provided to suit[15] special customers, who are chiefly respectable tradesmen. But in the early summer, men of all ranks, and in all parts of China, make a point of eating dogs, fried in oil, with garlic[16] and water-chestnuts,[17] as a sort of tonic[18] and antidote against probable illness. So summer brings 'dog days' even in China.

"C. F. Gordon Cumming."

1. **I make a point of**, ich mache es mir zur Pflicht.
2. **Rat**, die Ratte; **frog**, der Frosch.
3. **Displayed for sale**, zum Verkauf ausgelegt.
4. **At so much a portion**, zu so und so viel die Portion.
5. **To charge extra**, besonders berechnen.
6. **Prejudiced**, voreingenommen.
7. **Stall**, der Stand; (der Stall, *stable*).
   Stall in a theatre, der Parkettplatz, *or* Sperrsitz.
8. **Nasty**, ekelhaft.
9. **Puppy**, das Hündchen.
10. **Sucking pig**, das Spanferkel; (Span *fr. Mhg.* spen, *milk;* Ferkel *is cognate with Eng.* **farrow**, *a litter of pigs*).
11. **Carcasses**, *here*, die Fleischviertel.
    Carcass, (lit.) der Tierleichnam; das Aas (*O.E.* aês; *from* essen).
12. **Butcher's shop**, der Fleischerladen.
13. **Restaurant**, das Gasthaus; die Restauration.
14. **Dainty**, der Leckerbissen.
15. **To suit**, *here*, bedienen.
16. **Garlic**, der Knoblauch; (Knob *cognate with E.* **clove** (*of garlic*); Lauch, *m.* **leek**).
17. **Water-chestnut**, die Wasserkastanie.
18. **Tonic and antidote** (against), nervenstärkendes und Gegenmittel (für).

---

gleich: **like**, *equal.*
gleichen: *resemble.*
vergleichen: *to compare.*
das Gleichnis: *simile.*
meines-, deines-, seinesgleichen: *my, your, his like or equals.*
desgleichen, gleichfalls: *in like manner, likewise.*
obgleich: *although.*

Mr. John Bright's Address to the Students in Glasgow, *on the 22nd March* 1883 (1).

"Would you believe that if you were to add up all the expenditure in this country since the beginning of the century, and during the lifetime of some thousands of people now living—expenditure[1] upon war, war debts, expenditure of[2] military and naval war kind[2]—what do you suppose it[3] comes to? You could not guess, and if

I told you, you would be no wiser. It comes to the sum of £4,414,000,000 sterling of taxes.[4] I say you would be no wiser. I don't know that we are any wiser from hearing that a man is worth[5] a million, except that he is a rich man. We don't know very well[6] what a million is. But what are twenty millions, and what are one hundred millions, or what are a thousand millions, or four thousand millions. It is like[7] speaking of those great astronomical distances of which at lectures[8] we hear so much and still know so little. But if these military expenses have come to £4,414,000,000, how much has the real government, the civil government of the country, cost during the same time? It has cost £1,012,000,000."

1. **Expenditure**, die Ausgabe; *use the plur.*

2. für Land- und Seekriegswesen.

3. *Say: "how much it makes."*

4. **Tax**, die Steuer; Abgabe (f.), (das Steuer, *rudder*).

steuern, *to steer;* (fig. with dat.) *to check, put a stop to.*
besteuern, *to tax:* der Tabak ist hoch besteuert.
You tax my patience, Sie stellen meine Geduld auf die Probe.

5. Possesses.

He is worth £1000, er besitzt 1000 Pfund; (er hat ein Vermögen von . . .).
His house is worth much, sein Haus ist viel wert.
It is not worth (your) while, es ist nicht der Mühe (gen.) wert.
Worth reading, seeing, lesenswert, sehenswert.
But: keinen Thaler wert; keinen Schuss Pulver wert; *why the accusative?*

6. **We don't know very well**, wir wissen nicht recht.

7. As if.

8. **Lecture**, der Vortrag (die Lektüre, *reading:* eine sehr unterhaltende Lektüre).

Curtain lecture, die Gardinenpredigt.

MR. JOHN BRIGHT'S ADDRESS TO THE STUDENTS IN GLASGOW, *on the 22nd March* 1883 (2).

"Less than one one-fifth of all our expenditure has been in our civil[1] government; more than four fifths has been expended in wars past or wars prepared for in the future. I want to[2] ask any sensible[3] *body* of men—be they as young as these students, or be they as old as we always believe professors to be—I want to ask them whether it should be necessary that the wealth, the labour, the comfort, the happiness of the population of thirty-five millions of people of these islands, should be taxed[4] to the amount[5] of this tremendous and inconceivable expenditure which I have just mentioned to you? . . . We find poverty and misery. What does it mean when all these families are living in homes of one room to us who have several rooms and all the comforts of life? It means more than I can describe and more than I will attempt to enter into.[6] And as need begets[7] need, so poverty and misery beget poverty and misery; and so in all our great towns, and not a little in some of our smaller towns, there are misery and helplessness such as I have described."

1. **Civil** (opp. of military, naval, &c.), bürgerlich, zivil: der Zivilingenieur; der Bürgerkrieg.

Civilise, zivilisieren; *civility*, Höflichkeit.

2. **I want to**, ich möchte.

3. **Sensible**, vernünftig, verständig.

A sensible proposal, ein vernünftiger Vorschlag.

A sensible (*considerable*) *loss*, ein empfindlicher Verlust.

4. See Note 4 of the previous exercise.

5. **To the amount of**, bis zur Höhe von.

6. **Enter into** (fig.), ein′gehen auf (acc.).

7. **Beget**, erzeugen.

MR. JOHN BRIGHT'S ADDRESS TO THE STUDENTS IN GLASGOW, *on the 22nd March* 1883 (3).

"In fact, looking at the past[1]—to me it is a melancholy (thing) to look at—there is much of it which excites in me, not astonishment only, but horror.[2] (The fact is) there passes[3] before my eyes a vision[4] of millions of families—not individuals, but families—fathers, mothers, children, passing ghastly,[5] sorrow-stricken,[6] in never-ending procession[7] from their cradle to their grave. . . . Now, I want to ask you whether the future is to be no better than the past? Do we march[8] or do we not to a brighter time?[8] For myself, as you know, it will not be possible for me to see it; but even whilst the sands of life are running,[9] it may be one's duty, if it be possible in the smallest degree, to promote[10] it. For you young gentlemen that are before me, that have done[11] me the honour to invite[12] me here to address you,[12] I would[13] say that you have before you, many of you, the prospect of writing the transactions[14] of the public policy[14] of your country for forty or fifty, or even, it may be, for more years *to come.* On you and such as you depends greatly our future. . . .

1. **The past,** Vergangenheit.
   The present, die Gegenwart.
   The future, die Zukunft.
2. **Horror,** das Entsetzen.
3. **Pass before,** hin'schreiten vor.
4. **Vision,** Erscheinung.
5. **Ghastly,** geisterhaft.
6. **Sorrow-stricken,** kummerbeladen.
7. **Procession,** der Zug.
8. gehen wir einer lichteren Zeit entgegen oder nicht?
9. *Here* (= elapse), verrinnen.
10. **Promote** (tr.), fördern; fort'helfen (dat.).
    Promote (*in office*), befördern.
    Promote a company, eine Gesellschaft gründen.
11. **Do honour,** Ehre an'thun *or* erweisen.
12. mich zu einer Ansprache an Sie einzuladen.
13. *Here:* möchte.
14. die Geschäfte der Politik.

THE ABDERITES (1).

The Abderites were not deficient[1] in witty[2] sallies; but their sallies seldom suited[3] the occasion on which they were made, or they were made after the proper time for them was gone. They spoke much, but always without reflecting[4] for a moment what they intended to say or how they should say it. The natural consequence of this was, that they seldom opened their mouths without saying something silly. Unfortunately, this bad habit extended[5] to their actions, for usually they shut the cage when the bird was gone. This brought on them the reproach of being inconsiderate;[6] but experience proved that they had no better success when they took time to consider. Whenever they did (what frequently happened) something very silly, the reason was that they wanted to do it rather too well;[7] and whenever they held very long and serious deliberations in the affairs of their commonwealth,[8] one could be quite sure that among all possible resolutions they would take the very worst.

1. **I am deficient (wanting) in**, es fehlt mir an (dat.).

Deficient (*imperfect*), mangelhaft; unzulänglich.
Deficiency, der Mangel; (*comm.*) das Deficit.

2. **Witty sally**, der witzige Einfall.

3. **Suit**, *here*, passen auf (acc.).

The hat suits you, der Hut kleidet Sie; steht Ihnen gut.
This suits my purpose, dies entspricht meinem Zwecke.
Will to-morrow suit you? passt es Ihnen morgen?
Well (*ill*) *suited for*, gut (schlecht) geeignet zu.

4. **Reflect**, überlegen (insep.); nach′denken.

5. **Extend to** (intr.), sich erstrecken auf (acc.).

He extended the empire, er erweiterte das Reich.
Extent, Ausdehnung.
To the — of, bis zum Betrage von.

6. **Inconsiderate**, unbesonnen; unüberlegt.

Inconsiderate towards, rücksichtslos gegen.

7. **Rather too well**, gar zu gut.

8. **Commonwealth**, der Staat; die Republik.

THE ABDERITES (2).

Once they purchased a very beautiful Venus of ivory[1] which was counted among the master works of Praxiteles. The statue was about five feet high, and was to be put on an altar of the goddess of love. When it arrived, the whole town of Abdera was lost in admiration of[2] the beauty of their Venus; for the Abderites wanted to pass as[3] excellent connoisseurs[4] and enthusiastic lovers[5] of the fine arts. The statue is too beautiful, cried they unanimously,[6] to stand on a low place. A master-piece which does so much honour to the city, and which has cost so much, cannot be put too high, it must be the first thing to meet a stranger's eye[7] when he enters Abdera. According to this lucky idea they put the little pretty image on an obelisk eighty feet high; and although it was now impossible to recognise what it was *intended to* represent, yet they forced every stranger to confess that nothing more perfect could be seen.—*After* WIELAND.

1. **Ivory**, Elfenbein (n.).
2. über.
3. **Pass as**, gelten für.
4. **Connoisseur**, der Kenner.
5. **Enthusiastic lover**, schwärmerischer Liebhaber.

Lover of nature, flowers, &c., Naturfreund, Blumenfreund.

6. **Unanimously**, einstimmig.
7. **To meet one's eye**, einem ins Auge fallen.

AFRICAN HOSPITALITY (1).

Mungo Park, the celebrated African traveller, gives the following account[1] of the hospitable[2] treatment[3] which he received from a negro woman. "(Being) arrived at Sego, the capital of the kingdom of Bambarra, situated on the banks of the Niger, I wished to pass over to that part of the town in which the King resides; but from[4] the number of persons eager[5] to obtain a passage,[6] I was under the necessity of waiting two hours. During this time the people who had crossed the river carried information to[7] Mausong, the King, that a white man was waiting for a passage and was coming to see him. He immediately sent over one of his chief men, who informed me that the King could not possibly see me until he knew what had brought me into his country, and that I must not presume[8] to cross the river without the King's permission. He therefore advised me to lodge for that night at a distant village, to which he pointed, and said that in the morning he would give me further instructions[9] how to conduct myself.[10] This was very discouraging."

1. **Account**, Bericht (m.).
2. **Hospitable**, gastfreundlich.
3. **Treatment**, *here*, Bewirtung.

Treatment (of persons), Behandlung.
Treatment (of things), Bearbeitung.

4. **On account of**, infolge.
5. **Eager** (desirous), begierig (nach).

Eager (keen), eifrig.

6. **Passage** (transit), die Überfahrt.

Passage (in a book), die Stelle.

7. **Carry information to,** berichten (dat.).

8. **Presume** (dare), wagen; (suppose) vermuten.

9. **Instruction** (directions), der Befehl, die Weisung.

Instruction (*information*), der Unterricht.

Instructive, lehrreich, belehrend.

10. **How to . . . myself,** how I was to . . . myself.

wissen: *know* (wit, wot).
die Wiss-begier(de): *desire of knowledge.*
wissen**t**lich: *deliberate*(*ly*), *knowing.*
Wissenschaft: *knowledge, science.*
der Witz: *wit.*
gewiss: *certain, assured.*
gewissermassen: *in some sort, in a certain measure.*
das Bewusstsein: *consciousness.*
das Gewissen: *conscience.*

dürfen: *be permitted,* dare.
dürftig: *needy, poor.*
bedürfen: *lack, require.*
das Bedürfnis: *necessity, want.*
darben: *suffer want.*
bieder: *upright, honest.*
Biedermann: *man of integrity, "homme comme il faut."*

kommen: come.
der Nachkomme: *successor.*
der Ankömmling: *newcomer.*
bequem: *convenient, comfortable.*
vollkommen: *perfect.*
bewillkomm(n)en: *to welcome.*
die Ankun**ft**: *arrival.*
die Zukun**ft**: *future.*

African Hospitality (2).

"However, as there was no remedy,[1] I set off for[2] the village, where I found, to my great mortification,[3] that no person would admit[4] me into his house. Everybody regarded me with astonishment and fear, and I was obliged to sit the whole day without victuals in the shade of a tree. The night threatened to be very uncomfortable; for the wind rose, and there was a great appearance of heavy rain.[5] The wild beasts, too, were so numerous in the neighbourhood, that I should have been under the necessity of climbing up the tree and resting among the branches. About sunset, however, as I was preparing to pass[6] the night in this manner, and had turned my horse loose[7] that it might graze at liberty,[8] a negro woman, returning from the labours of the field,[9] stopped[10] to observe me, and perceiving that I was weary and dejected,[11] inquired into[12] my situation. I briefly explained it to her, after which, with looks of great compassion,[13] she took up my saddle and bridle and told me to follow her. Having conducted me into her hut, she lighted a lamp, spread a mat [14] on the floor, and told me I might remain there for the night."

1. **There is no remedy** (for it), es ist nichts (dagegen) zu machen.

The remedy (*cure*), das Heilmittel; die Hilfe.

2. **To set off for**, sich auf'machen nach.

3. **To . . . mortification**, zu meinem grossen Ärger (Leidwesen).

4. **Admit** (into the house), bei sich auf'nehmen.

Admit (*grant, confess*), zu'geben; gestehen.

5. **There was a great . . . rain**, ein heftiger Regen stand in Aussicht.

6. **To pass** (time), zu'bringen.

To pass (*occur*), geschehen, passieren.
To pass an examination, eine Prüfung bestehen.
Time passes quickly, die Zeit vergeht (verfliesst) schnell.
I passed you in the street, ich bin . . . an Ihnen vorbeigegangen.
He passes for a miser, er gilt für einen Geizhals.

7. **Turn loose**, los'machen.

8. **At liberty**, *here*, nach Belieben.

To set at liberty, in Freiheit setzen; befreien.

9. **Labours of the field**, die Feldarbeit (sgl.).

10. **To stop**, stehen bleiben.

die Uhr ist stehen geblieben.

11. **Weary and dejected**, erschöpft und niedergeschlagen.

I am weary with *travelling*, ich bin müde vom Reisen.
I am weary of *this work*, ich bin dieser Arbeit (gen.) überdrüssig.
It was a weary (*tiresome*) *journey*, eine ermüdende Reise.

12. **Inquire into**, sich erkundigen nach.

13. **With looks of great compassion**, mit sehr mitleidigen Blicken.

14. **Mat**, die Matte.

African Hospitality (3).

"Finding that I was very hungry, she went out to procure [1] me something to eat, and returned in a short time with a very good fish, which she half-broiled [2] over the embers,[3] and gave me for supper. The rites of hospitality being thus performed [4] towards a stranger in distress, my worthy benefactress pointed [5] to the mat and told me I might sleep there without apprehension. The female part of the family, which had been gazing on me all the while in fixed astonishment,[6] resumed [7] their task of spinning cotton, in which they continued [8] during a great part of the night. They lightened their labour by songs, one of which[9] was composed[10] extempore,[11] for I was myself the subject[12] of it. It was sung by one of the young women, the rest joining in[13] a sort of chorus. The melody was sweet and plaintive, and the words literally translated[14] were these: 'The winds roared, and the rain fell; the poor white man, faint and weary, came and sat under our tree. He has no mother to bring him milk, no wife to grind his corn.' Chorus: 'Let us pity the white man; no mother has he to bring him milk, no wife to grind his corn.' Trifling as[15] these events may appear to the reader, they were to me affecting[16] in the highest degree. In the morning I presented to my compassionate landlady two of the four brass buttons[17] which remained[18] on my waistcoat, the only recompense I could make her, and which was most joyfully accepted." — PARK'S TRAVELS (*slightly altered*).

1. **I procure**, ich verschaffe mir (verschaffte, verschafft).

2. **Half-broil,** halb gar kochen.

3. **The embers,** die heisse Asche (sgl.).

4. **To perform rites of hospitality,** Gastfreundschaft (aus′)-üben.

5. **Point to,** weisen auf.

6. **To gaze on in fixed astonishment,** an′starren (acc.).

7. **To resume,** wieder auf′-nehmen.

8. **I continue** (tr.) (my story), ich setze (meine Geschichte) fort.

I continue (intr.) reading, ich fahre fort zu lesen.

9. **One of which,** of which (wovon) one.

10. **To compose,** dichten (a poem); (of music) komponieren.

To compose oneself, sich beruhigen.

11. **Extempore,** aus dem Stegreif; unvorbereitet.

12. **The subject,** der Gegenstand.

Loyal subjects of the king, treue Unterthanen des Königs.
Subject (adj.), unterthan (dat.).
Subject (*liable*) *to*, ausgesetzt.

13. **The rest joining in,** *say*, whilst the others joined in [ein′-stimmen (in)].

14. **Literally translated,** wörtlich übersetzt.

15. **Trifling as . . .,** *say*, however trifling (unbedeutend) . . .

16. **Were . . . affecting,** *say*, touched (rühren).

17. **Brass button,** der Messingknopf [E. **knob**].

18. **Remained,** *say*, still were.

mahlen (orig. str.): *grind corn.*
das Mehl: *meal, flour.*
der Malter: *corn- (wood-) measure.*
(zer)malmen: *crush to pieces.*
die Mühle: *mill.*
der Müller: *miller.*

bleiben (*for* be-leiben), *to remain.*
das Überbleibsel: *remainder, rest.*
der Leib: *body* (=E. **life**).
leibhaft: *bodily, incarnate.*
leiblich: *corporal;* ein leiblicher Bruder, *full brother.*

Frederick the Great (1).

Considered as an administrator,[1] Frederick had[2] undoubtedly many titles to praise. Order[3] was strictly maintained throughout his dominions. Property was secure. A great liberty of speaking and of writing was allowed. Confident[4] in the irresistible strength derived from a great army, the King looked down on malcontents and libellers[5] with a wise disdain, and gave little encouragement[6] to spies[7] and informers.[8] When he was told of the disaffection of one of his subjects, he merely asked, "How many thousand men can he bring into the field?" He once saw a crowd staring at[9] something on a wall. He rode up and found that the object of curiosity was a scurrilous placard[10] against himself. The placard had been *posted up* so high that it was not easy to read it. Frederick ordered his attendants to take it down and *put* it lower.

1. **Administrator,** der Verwalter.
2. **To have a title to** = to deserve.
3. **Maintain order,** Ordnung aufrecht erhalten.
   Maintain one's family, seine Familie ernähren.
4. **Confident of,** im Vertrauen auf (acc.).
5. **Libeller,** Verfasser von Schmähschriften.
6. **Encouragement,** Ermunterung.
7. **Spy,** der Spion.
8. **Informer,** Angeber (m.).
9. **Stare at,** an'starren.
10. **Scurrilous placard,** gemeines Pasquill *or* Plakat.

Frederick the Great (2).

"My people and I," said he, "have come to an agreement[1] which satisfies us both. They are to say what they please, and I am to do what I please." No person would have dared to publish[2] in London satires[3] on George the Second approaching[4] to the atrocity[4] of those satires on Frederick which the booksellers sold with impunity. One bookseller sent to the palace a copy[5] of the most stinging[6] lampoon[7] that perhaps was ever written in the world, the "Memoirs[8] of Voltaire," published by Beaumarchais, and asked for his Majesty's orders. "Do not advertise[9] it in an offensive manner," said the King; "but sell it by all means. I hope it will pay you well." Even among statesmen accustomed to the licence[10] of a free press,[11] such steadfastness[12] of mind as this[12] is not very common.—MACAULAY.

1. **To come to an agreement,** ein Übereinkommen treffen
2. **Publish,** veröffentlichen.

Publisher, der Verleger.

3. **Satire,** die Satire; Spottschrift.
4. von nur annähernder Schärfe, wie . . .
5. **A copy,** Exemplar (n.).
6. **Stinging** = biting.
7. **Lampoon,** Schmähschrift (f.); *cp.* libeller.
8. **Memoirs,** Memoiren (pl.).
9. **Advertise,** öffentlich an'kündigen.

Advertisement, Ankündigung; Anzeige.

10. **Licence,** Ausschweifung.

Licentious, ausschweifend.
Poetical licence, dichterische Freiheit.

11. **Free press,** freie Presse *or* Pressfreiheit.
12. eine solche Gemütsruhe.

---

lesen: *gather, read.*
der Leser: *reader.*
les*er*lich: legible.

belesen (adj.): *well-read.*
Belesenheit: *extensive reading.*

auserlesen: *picked, choice.*

I am at **liberty** *to go*: es steht mir frei zu gehen, *or* ich darf gehen.

I take the liberty: ich nehme mir die Freiheit; ich erlaube mir.

FREDERICK'S ADDRESS TO THE SUPERIOR[1] OFFICERS OF HIS ARMY (1).

Gentlemen, you are aware that the Prince of Lorraine has succeeded in conquering Schweidnitz, in defeating the Duke of Bevern, and in making himself master of Breslau, while I was forced to check[2] the movements of the French and the Imperial troops. Part of Silesia, my capital, and all my military stores[3] which were contained therein, are lost. My adversity would have reached its highest pitch if I did not place unconditional[4] confidence in the valour, firmness, and patriotism which you have shown on so many occasions. I acknowledge the services you have rendered to the Fatherland and to me with the deepest and most heartfelt emotion.[5] There is hardly one among you who has not distinguished himself by some great and honourable deed, and I flatter myself that on this occasion you will not let anything be lacking which the State has a right to demand of your bravery. This epoch is approaching. I should consider nothing achieved if I left Silesia in the possession of the Austrians.

1. **Superior**, höher.
2. **To check**, Einhalt thun (dat.).

We could not check (restrain) him, . . . zurück'halten.

3. **Military stores**, der Kriegsvorrat.

I have not got it in store, ich habe es nicht vorrätig (*or* auf Lager).
To set great store by a thing, auf etwas (acc.) grossen Wert legen.

4. **Unconditional**, unbedingt.
5. mit der innigsten Rührung meines Herzens.

Of **superior** *quality* (comm.): von vorzüglicher Qualität.
Superior force: die Übermacht.
He is my superior in office: . . . mein Vorgesetzter im Amte.
Superior to most people in learning: den Meisten an Gelehrsamkeit überlegen.

FREDERICK'S ADDRESS TO THE SUPERIOR OFFICERS OF HIS ARMY (2).

Understand therefore that, contrary to all military tactics,[1] I shall attack Prince Charles's army, though three times as strong as mine, wherever I find it. Here is no question of the number of the enemy, nor of the importance of his position. I hope all that will be overcome[2] by the courage of my troops and their prompt obedience to my injunctions. I must risk this attempt or all will be lost. We must either beat the enemy, or allow ourselves to be buried before his batteries. This is what I think, and how I shall act.

Make my resolve known to all the officers of the army, and prepare the soldiers for[3] what scenes must soon follow, telling them that I consider I have the right to require unconditional obedience from them. Furthermore, if you consider that you are Prussians, you will surely not prove yourselves unworthy of that prerogative.[4] If, however, there be one or other among you who fears to share all dangers with me, he can receive his discharge[5] this day without suffering the least reproach from me.—KUGLER.

---

1. **Military tactics**, die Kriegskunst.
2. **To overcome**, überwinden (insep.).
3. For the scenes (der Auftritt) which . . .
4. **Prerogative**, der Vorzug.
5. **Discharge**, der Abschied. *Discharge of duty*, Pflichterfüllung.

To **discharge** *a cargo:* eine Ladung löschen.

To discharge a gun: eine Kanone ab′feuern.

To discharge a prisoner: einen Gefangenen frei′sprechen.

The Adventures of a Philosophic Vagabond[1] (1).

I set boldly forward[2] the next morning. . . . When I came to Louvain[3] I was resolved not to go sneaking to[4] the lower professors, but openly tendered[5] my talents to the principal[6] himself. I went, had admittance,[7] and offered him my service as a master of the Greek language, which, I had been told, was a desideratum[8] in his University. The principal seemed at first to doubt of my abilities; but of these I offered[9] to convince him, by turning a part[10] of any Greek author he should fix upon[11] into Latin. Finding me perfectly earnest in my proposals, he addressed me thus: "You see me, young man; I never learned Greek, and I don't find that I have ever missed it. I have had a doctor's cap and gown without Greek; I have ten thousand florins a year without Greek; I eat heartily without Greek; and, in short,"[12] continued he, "as I don't know Greek, I do not believe there is[13] any good in it."

1. **Vagabond**, der Landstreicher.
2. **Set forth** (forward), sich auf′machen; sich auf den Weg machen.
3. **Louvain**, Löwen.
4. **To go sneaking** (**to**), kriechen (vor).
5. **Tender** (offer), an′bieten.
6. **Principal** (of Univ.), der Rektor.
7. **Admittance**, der Zutritt.
8. **A desideratum** (desirable), erwünscht.
9. **Offer**, sich erbieten.
10. **Part** (passage), die Stelle.
11. **Fix upon**, bestimmen.
12. **In short**, kurz.

Short of money, knapp bei Geld.
Nothing short of death, nichts als der Tod.
He came short of our expectations, er entsprach . . . (dat.) nicht.
To stop short, plötzlich stille stehen; inne′halten.

13. **There is, &c.**, dass es zu irgend etwas nützt (nütze ist).

What is it good for? wozu nützt (dient) es?

Know: wissen, **kennen**.
Well-known: bekannt.
Knowledge: das Wissen, die Kenntnis.
Acknowledge: an′erkennen, *p.p.* anerkannt.
To the best of my knowledge: nach meinem besten Wissen.
Knowledge in mathematics: Kenntnisse in der Mathematik.
Worth knowing: wissenswert.
Knowingly: 1. (*on purpose*) mit Wissen und Willen; 2. (*cunningly*) auf eine schlaue Art.

kriech′en: *creep, crouch.*
der Kriecher: *cringing person.*
die Kriecherei: *servility.*

THE ADVENTURES OF A PHILOSOPHIC VAGABOND (2).

I was now too far from home to think of returning; so I resolved to go forward. I had some knowledge of music, with a tolerable[1] voice, and now turned[2] what was once my amusement into a present means of subsistence.[3] I passed[4] among the harmless[5] peasants of Flanders, and among such of the French as were poor enough to be very merry; for I ever found them sprightly in proportion to[6] their wants. Whenever I approached a peasant's house towards nightfall,[7] I played one of my most merry tunes, and that procured me not only a lodging, but subsistence for the next day. I once or twice attempted to play for[8] people of fashion;[9] but they always thought my performance[10] odious,[11] and never rewarded me even with a trifle.

This was to me the more extraordinary, as [12] whenever I used in better days to play (for company), when playing was my amusement, my music never failed to throw them into raptures, and the ladies especially; but as it was now my only means, it was received with contempt; a proof how ready the world is to underrate [13] those talents by which a man is supported.[14]

1. **Tolerable** (middling), leidlich; erträglich.
2. **Turn into,** *here,* benutzen.
3. **Means of subsistence,** Mittel für den Lebensunterhalt.
4. **Pass,** *here,* umher′ziehen.
5. **Harmless,** harmlos.
6. **In proportion to,** im Verhältnis zu.
7. **Towards nightfall,** gegen Abend.
8. vor.
9. **People of fashion,** vornehme Leute.
    - *Fashion,* die Mode; (*custom*) die Sitte, der Gebrauch.
    - *Out of fashion,* aus der Mode.
    - *In this fashion* (*manner*), auf diese Art (und Weise).
10. **Performance,** das Spiel.
11. **Odious,** abscheulich (*lit.* verhasst).
12. *Turn:* as in better days when (wo) I used to play for my amusement (zu meinem Vernügen) my music always threw the company into raptures (in Entzücken vesetzen).
13. **Underrate,** unterschätzen (insep.); gering achten.
14. **Is supported** = supports himself (sich ernähren).

THE ADVENTURES OF A PHILOSOPHIC VAGABOND (3).

In this manner I proceeded to Paris, with no design but [1] (just) to look about me, and then to go forward. The people of Paris are much fonder of strangers that have money than of those that have wit.[2] As I could not boast much of either, I was no great favourite. After walking about the town four or five days, and seeing the outsides [3] of the best houses, I was preparing to leave this retreat [4] of venal hospitality, when,[5] passing through one of the principal streets, whom should I meet but our cousin to whom you first recommended me. This meeting was very agreeable to me, and I believe not displeasing to him. He inquired into the nature [6] of my journey to Paris, and informed me of his own business there, which was to collect pictures, medals,[7] and antiques[8] of all kinds, for a gentleman in London, who had just stepped into taste[9] and a large fortune.[10] I was the more surprised at seeing our cousin pitched upon[11] for this office, as he himself had often assured me he knew nothing of the matter. Upon asking how he had been taught[12] the art of a cognoscento[13] so very suddenly, he assured me that nothing was more easy. The whole secret consisted in a strict adherence to[14] two rules: the one [is] always to observe the picture might have been better if the painter had taken more pains;[15] and the other, to praise the work of Pietro Perugino. "But," says he, "as I once taught you how to be an author in London, I'll now undertake to instruct you in the art of picture-buying at Paris." . . .

1. **With no design but,** in keiner andern Absicht als.

2. **Wit,** der Verstand, Witz.

> *I am at my wit's end,* ich weiss mir nicht zu raten, noch zu helfen.
> *To wit,* nämlich; das heisst.

3. **The outside,** das äussere, die Aussenseite (*cp.* Innenseite, Vorderseite).

> *At the outside he is twenty years old,* höchstens ist er . . .

4. **Retreat,** *here,* place.

5. Begin a new sentence and turn: then (da) I met, passing . . . streets, nobody else but our cousin.

6. **Nature,** *here,* "purpose," der Zweck.

7. **Medal,** die Medaille; die Denkmünze.

8. **The antique,** die Antiquität; das Altertumsstück.

9. **Taste,** *here,* Kunstliebe.

10. **To step into fortune,** zu Vermögen kommen.

11. **Pitched upon,** auserwählt.

12. **How . . . taught,** how he had learnt.

13. **Cognoscento,** der Kunstkenner.

14. **Strict adherence to,** das strenge Festhalten an.

15. **I take pains,** ich gebe mir Mühe.

---

heissen: *bid, command.*
das Geheiss: *command, bidding.*
der Schultheiss: *magistrate.*
die Verheissung: *promise.*
sich anheischig machen: *pledge oneself.*
was soll das heissen? *what does that mean?*
das heisst (*abbr.* d. h.): *that is to say, that is equal to.*
das heisst gelaufen: *that's what I call running, that is good running.*

THE ADVENTURES OF A PHILOSOPHIC VAGABOND (4).

When he had finished his commission [1] in Paris, he left me strongly recommended [2] to several men of distinction, as a person very proper for a travelling tutor; [3] and after some time I was employed in that capacity by a gentleman who brought his ward [4] to Paris, in order to set him forward [5] on his tour through Europe. I was to be the young gentleman's governor,[6] but with a proviso [7] that he should always be permitted to govern himself. My pupil, in fact, understood the art [8] of guiding in money concerns [8] much better than I. He was heir to [9] a fortune of about two hundred thousand pounds, left him by an uncle in the West Indies; [10] and his guardians, to qualify [11] him for the management [12] of it, had bound [13] him apprentice to an attorney. Thus avarice was his prevailing [14] passion: all his questions on the road were how money might be saved; which was the least expensive course of travel; [15] whether anything could be bought that could turn [16] to account when disposed of again in London.

1. **Commission,** der Auftrag (beauftragen (wk.), *to commission*).

2. **With a good recommendation,** Empfehlung an (acc.).

3. **Travelling tutor,** Reisebegleiter.

4. **Ward,** der Mündel.

5. **To set forward** = accompany.

6. **Governor** (tutor), Hofmeister; (of province) Statthalter.

7. **With a proviso,** mit dem Vorbehalt.

8. **The art, &c.,** die Kunst, Geldgeschäfte zu leiten.

9. **Heir to** = heir of.

10. **The West Indies,** Westindien (no article);—(Ostindien).

11. **Qualify,** befähigen.

12. **Management,** Verwaltung.

13. **Had bound, &c.,** hatten ihn zu einem Rechtsanwalt in die Lehre gegeben.

14. **Prevailing,** (vor)herrschend.

15. **Course of travel,** die Reiseroute.

16. **That could turn, &c.,** *say*, that could be sold again with profit (der Gewinn) in London.

To **save** *from danger:* aus der Gefahr (er)reten.
To save appearances: den Schein bewahren.
To save money, time, and trouble: Geld, Zeit und Mühe (er)sparen.
God save the King: Gott erhalte den König.
All save three: Alle ausser drei(en), *or* drei ausgenommen.
Saving: sparsam.
Savings: Ersparnisse (pl. f. and n.).
A saviour: ein Retter.
The Saviour: der Heiland, der Erlöser.

THE ADVENTURES OF A PHILOSOPHIC VAGABOND (5).

Such curiosities[1] on the way as could be seen for nothing[2] he was ready enough to look at; but if the sight of them was to be paid for, he usually asserted that he had been told they were not worth seeing.[3] He never paid a bill[4] that[5] he would not observe[5] how amazingly expensive travelling was, and all this though he was not yet twenty-one. When[6] arrived at Leghorn,[7] as we took a walk to look at the port and shipping,[8] he inquired the expense[9] of the passage by sea home to England. This he was informed was but a trifle compared to[10] his returning by land.[11] He was therefore unable to withstand the temptation; so paying me the small part of my salary[12] (that was) due,[13] he took leave, and embarked[14] with only one attendant for London. I now, therefore, was left once more upon the world at large;[15] but (then) it was a thing[16] I was used to.—GOLDSMITH.

1. **Curiosity** (sight), Sehenswürdigkeit.

Curiosity (*inquisitiveness*), die Neugier(de).

2. **For nothing**, umsonst.
3. **Worth seeing**, sehenswert.
4. **Bill**, Rechnung; (of a bird) der Schnabel.

Bill of fare, die Speisekarte.
Bill of exchange, der Wechsel.

5. Without observing.
6. *Say:* when we arrived at Leghorn and . . .
7. **Leghorn**, Livorno.
8. **Shipping** = the ships.
9. **Expense**, die Kosten.
10. **Compared to**, im Vergleich zu.
11. **Returning by land**, die Rückreise über Land.
12. **Salary**, das (der) Gehalt (*pl.* ¨–er).

der Gehalt, *contents*, *value*.

13. **Due**, fällig, schuldig.
14. **To embark**, sich ein'schiffen (nach) . . .
15. **Left upon the world at large**, in die weite Welt gesetzt.

Learned (*polite*) *world*, die gelehrte (feine) Welt.
That is the way of the world, so geht es in der Welt.
Not for all the world, um Alles in der Welt nicht; um keinen Preis.

16. etwas.

Looking Backward[1] (1).

I first saw the light in the city *of* Boston in the year 1857. "What!" you[2] say; "1857? That is an *odd* slip.[3] He means 1957, of course." I beg pardon, but there is no mistake. (It was) about four in the afternoon of December the 26th (that) I first breathed the east wind of Boston, which, I[4] assure the reader, was at that remote *period* marked by[5] the same penetrating quality characterising[6] it in the present year of grace,[7] 2000.

These statements seem so absurd[8] on their face,[9] especially *when* I add that I am a young man apparently of about thirty years of age, that no person can be blamed *for refusing* to read another word *of what* promises to be a mere imposition upon[10] his credulity.[11] Nevertheless, I earnestly assure the reader that no imposition[12] is intended, and will undertake, if he *shall* follow me a few pages, to entirely convince him of this. If I may, then,[13] provisionally[14] assume, with the pledge[15] of justifying the assumption,[16] that I know better than the reader when I *was* born, I will *go on with* my narrative."

---

1. **Looking backward**, der Rückblick.

2. *Turn:* says the reader.

3. **Slip** (mistake), der Fehler; (Schreibfehler, Druckfehler).
   - *Slip* (*of the foot*), der Fehltritt (also fig. *error*).
   - *That was a slip of the tongue* (*pen*), ich habe mich versprochen (verschrieben).
   - *A slip of paper*, ein Stückchen Papier.

4. An interpolated clause in German: *as I assure* . . .

5. **To be marked by**, sich aus′zeichnen durch.

6. **Characterise**, aus′zeichnen; charakterisieren.

7. **Year of grace**, Jahr des Heils.

8. **Absurd**, albern, abgeschmackt (*fr.* ab *and* Geschmack; "*tasteless*").

9. **On their face** (obviously), offenbar.

10. **Imposition upon**, *here*, "abuse of," der Missbrauch.

11. **Credulity**, Leichtgläubigkeit.

12. **Imposition**, *turn*, that I do not intend to impose upon [hintergehen (insep.)] him.

13. **Then** = therefore.

14. **Provisionally**, vorläufig.

15. **Pledge**, here, *promise*.
   - *To leave for a pledge*, als Pfand lassen.
   - *He pledged himself*, er gelobte; er machte sich anheischig.
   - *To take the pledge*, das Gelübde ab′legen.

16. **Assumption** = statement.

zeihen (*relat. with* zeigen): *accuse, impeach.*
bezichtigen: *to accuse of, charge with* (*acc. of pers.; gen. of thing*).
die Bezichtigung: *accusation.*
verzichten (auf) *or* Verzicht leisten auf: *to renounce.*
verzeihen: *to pardon.*
verzeihlich: *pardonable.*
die Verzeihung: *pardon.*

NOTE.—The simple verb *zeihen* has somewhat fallen into disuse, and is replaced by *an'klagen* or *bezichtigen.*

LOOKING BACKWARD (2).

As every schoolboy knows, in the latter part of the nineteenth century the civilisation of to-day,[1] or anything like it,[2] did not exist, although the elements[3] which were to develop it were already in ferment.[4] Nothing had, however, occurred to modify[5] the immemorial[6] division of society into the four classes, or nations, as they may be more fitly[7] called, since the differences between them were far greater than those between *any* nations nowadays[8]—of the rich and the poor, the educated and the ignorant. I myself was rich and also educated, and possessed, therefore, all the elements of happiness enjoyed by the most fortunate in that *age.* Living in luxury,[9] and occupied only with the (pursuit of the) pleasures and refinements[10] of life, I derived the means of my support from the labour of others, rendering[11] *no sort of* service in return. My parents and grandparents had lived in the same way, and I expected that my descendants, if I had *any*, would enjoy a *like* easy existence.

1. **Of to-day**, heutig (adj.); *so also* morgig, gestrig.
2. **Anything like it**, any similar (one).
3. **Element**, das Element; *farther on it will be better translated by* die Vorbedingung.
4. **Ferment**, die Gärung.
5. **Modify**, ab'ändern.
6. **Immemorial**, seit undenklichen Zeiten bestehend.
7. **Fitly**, schicklich, treffend.
8. *Insert:* "namely, the differences."
9. **Luxury**, der Luxus, die Üppigkeit.
10. **Refinement**, *here,* Annehmlichkeit.
11. **Render a service in return**, einen Gegendienst leisten (*cp.* der Gegengruss, die Gegenliebe).

Looking Backward (3).

By way of[1] attempting to give the reader some general impression of the *way* people lived together in those days, and especially of the relations[2] of the rich and poor to one another, perhaps I cannot do better than compare society as it *then* was to a prodigious[3] coach *which* the masses of humanity were harnessed *to*[4] and dragged toilsomely[5] along[6] a very hilly and sandy road. The driver was hunger, and permitted no lagging, though the pace was necessarily very slow. Despite the difficulty of drawing the coach at all[7] along so *hard* a road, the top[8] was covered with passengers who never *got down*, even[9] at the steepest ascents. These seats on top[10] were very *breezy* and comfortable. Well up out of the dust,[11] their occupants[12] could enjoy the scenery at their leisure,[13] or critically discuss[14] the merits of the straining[15] team.[16] Naturally such places were in great demand,[17] and the competition[18] for them was *keen*, every one seeking as the first *end* in life to secure a seat on the coach for himself and to leave it to his child after him.[19]
—Edward Bellamy.

1. **By way of** = in order to; "attempting" may be left out, since it is not essential to the meaning.

2. **Relation** (to), die Beziehung (zu).

3. **Prodigious**, ungeheuer, riesenhaft.

4. **Harness to**, spannen vor.

5. **Toilsomely**, mühselig; (die Mühsal).

6. **To drag along**, dahin'-schleppen; vorwärts bringen.

7. **At all**, überhaupt (*in negat. sense:* gar nicht, gar kein).

8. **The top** (of carriage), das Verdeck; *otherwise* die Spitze, der Gipfel.

He cried at the top of his voice, . . . so laut er konnte.
From top to bottom, von oben bis unten.

9. **Even**, *here say*, even not.

10. **Seat on top**, der Decksitz.

11. **Well up . . . dust**, ausser dem Bereiche des Staubes.

12. **Occupant**, der Inhaber.

13. **At their leisure**, *here*, in Ruhe.

Leisure hours, Mussestunden.

14. **Critically discuss** (*criticise*), kritisieren.

The critical moment, der entscheidende Augenblick.
Critical times, bedenkliche Zeiten.

15. **To strain,** sich an′strengen.
To strain every nerve, jeden Nerv an′spannen.
The relations between them are rather strained, die Beziehungen zwischen ihnen sind etwas gespannt.

16. **Team,** das Gespann.
A team of workmen, Abteilung, Arbeiter.

17. **In great demand,** sehr begehrt.

18. **Competition,** *here,* der Andrang; (in business) die Konkurrenz.

19. **To leave after him,** hinterlassen (insep.).

spannen: *to strain.*
spannender Roman: *exciting, fascinating novel.*
die Spanne Zeit: *short space of time.*
ein- (zwei-, vier-) spänniger Wagen: *one- (two-, four-) horse vehicle.*
die Spannung: *tension, suspense.*
an′spannen: *yoke to.*
ab′spannen: *unyoke.*
anspannende Arbeit: *exerting work; cp. E. "on the stretch."*
abgespannt: *tired, jaded.*
er war gespannt (darauf) zu hören: *he was anxious to hear. . . .*

THE DEAD SEA.

The Dead Sea varies[1] from five to eight miles in breadth, and is about forty miles long, nearly the same length as the Lake of Geneva.[2] We all dismounted and sat on some bare[3] trunks of trees[4] which lie blanched on the shores like giant bones. A lifeless little island of stones was[5] just in front of us, and the heavy, blue, clear water settled quietly round it,[6] beautiful and still as death. The great silence of the Dead Sea has a strange and solemnising[7] effect; but we did not find the scenery gloomy,[8] as we expected. The sunshine[9] was so brilliant, and the mountains which encircled the blue sea were so richly shaded[10] with exquisite soft tints of purple,[11] that our prevailing sensation[12] was one[13] of delight; but we were told that the southern end is far more dreary[14] and repelling[15] than the northern. The smell of the water is very disagreeable, and its taste is nauseous[16] in the extreme, salt, bitter, and burning. There were several little dead fish on the shore, which had come down the Jordan and had been killed by the sulphurous[17] water. My husband bathed in the Dead Sea, and so great is the buoyancy[18] of the water, that he was able to lie down at full length[19] without moving a finger, as[20] comfortably and with as great a feeling of security as if he had been lying on a mattress.[21]—*Our Holiday in the East*, MRS. GEORGE SUMNER.

1. *Say:* the breadth of . . . varies (schwankt).
2. **Lake of Geneva**, der Genfer See.
3. **Bare**, kahl, nackt.
    - *At the bare mention of it*, bei der blossen Erwähnung davon.
    - *Bare-foot(ed)* (adj.), barfuss, barfüssig.
4. **Trunk of a tree**, der Baumstamm.
5. Lay.
6. **Settled round it**, umspülte es ruhig.
7. **Strange and solemnising**, seltsam, (adv.) feierlich.
8. **Gloomy**, düster.
9. *Put:* the sun shone so . . .
10. **Shaded**, *here*, abgetönt.
11. **Tints of purple**, Purpurfarben.
12. **Sensation**, der Eindruck.
    - *To have a sensation*, ein Gefühl haben.
    - *To make a sensation*, Aufsehen (n.) erregen.
13. =*Delightful*, erfreulich.
14. **Dreary**, öde, schauerlich.
15. **Repellent**, abstossend.
16. **Nauseous**, widrig; ekelhaft.
17. **Sulphurous**, schweflig.
18. **Buoyancy**, die Tragfähigkeit.
19. **At full length**, lang ausgestreckt.
20. *Insert:* und zwar.
21. **Mattress**, die Matratze.

---

stossen: *push, thrust.*
der Stoss: *blow, thrust.*
anstössig: *displeasing, offensive.*
unumstösslich: *irrefutable.*
stottern: *stutter.*
stutzen (fig.): *be taken aback.*
stutzig: *startled, puzzled.*

leben: *to* **live.**
das Leben: *life.*
lebend: *alive.*
der Lebemann: *person enjoying life, worldling.*
lebhaft: *lively.*
leblos: *lifeless.*
lebendig: *living, vivid.*
das Lebensalter: *age.*
lebenslänglich: *lifelong.*
es gilt das Leben: *life is at stake.*
ums Leben kommen (*or* um'kommen): *perish.*
ums Leben bringen (*or* um'bringen): *to kill.*

PART THIRD.

FROM THE "HISTORY OF ENGLAND" (1).

The history of our country during the last hundred and sixty years is eminently the history of physical,[1] of moral, and of intellectual improvement. Those who compare the age[2] on which their lot has fallen with a golden age which exists only in their imagination may talk of degeneracy[3] and decay;[4] but no man who is correctly informed[5] as to the past will be disposed to take a morose[6] or desponding[7] view of the present. I should very imperfectly execute the task which I have undertaken if I were merely to treat[8] of battles and sieges, of the rise and fall[9] of administrations, of intrigues[10] in the palace, and of debates[11] in the parliament.

1. **Physical** — **moral** — **intellectual**, physisch — moralisch — intellektuell, *or* körperlich—sittlich—geistig.
2. **Age**, das Zeitalter.
3. **Degeneracy**, Entartung.
   Degenerate, entartet.
4. **Decay**, der Verfall.
5. **Informed**, unterrichtet.
6. **Morose**, grämlich; mürrisch.
7. **Desponding**, verzagt.
8. **Treat**, handeln (von).
   handeln mit, *to deal in.*
9. **Rise and fall**, Enstehen und Verfall.
   The rise and fall of stocks, das Steigen und Fallen der Fonds.
10. **Intrigue**, die Intrigue; Ränke (m. plur.).
11. **Debate**, Verhandlung.
    Debate (*discussion*), die Debatte; Diskussion.

FROM THE "HISTORY OF ENGLAND" (2).

It will be my endeavour to relate the history of the people as well as the history of the government, to trace[1] the progress of useful and ornamental[2] arts, to describe the rise of religious sects[3] and the changes[4] of literary taste, to portray the manners of successive[5] generations, and not to pass by[6] with neglect even the revolutions which have taken place in dress, furniture,[7] repasts, and public amusements. I shall cheerfully bear the reproach of having descended below the dignity of history, if I can succeed in placing before the English of the nineteenth century a true picture of the life of their ancestors.

1. **Trace** = describe.
2. **Ornamental**, zierlich.
3. **Sect**, die Sekte.
4. **Changes**, *here*, Wandlungen.
5. **Successive**, auf einander folgend.
6. **Pass by**, übergehen (insep.).
7. **Furniture**, Hausgerät (n.).

From the "History of England" (3).

The sources of the noblest rivers, which spread fertility over continents,[1] and bear richly-laden fleets to the sea, are to be sought in wild and barren[2] mountain tracts,[3] incorrectly laid down in maps,[4] and rarely explored by travellers. To such a tract[5] the history of our country during the sixteenth century may not unaptly be compared. Sterile[6] and obscure as is that portion of our annals,[7] *it is* there *that* we must seek for the origin of our freedom, our prosperity, and our glory. Then *it was that* the great English people was formed, that the national character began to exhibit those peculiarities which it has ever since retained, and that our fathers became emphatically[8] islanders[9]—islanders not merely in geographical position, but in their politics, their feelings, and their manners.

1. Countries.
2. **Barren**, dürr; unfruchtbar.
3. Bergkette (f.).
4. **Map**, Landkarte (f.).
5. **Tract**, *here*, Kette.

   Tract of land, der (Land)strich.

   A (religious) tract, (religiöses) Traktat; Abhandlung.
6. **Sterile** = unfruitful.
7. **Annals**, Jahrbücher; Annalen.
8. **Emphatically**, entschieden.
9. **Islander**, Insulaner.

FROM THE "HISTORY OF ENGLAND" (4).

Then first appeared with distinctness that constitution[1] which has ever since, through all changes, preserved its identity; that constitution of which all the other free constitutions are copies,[2] and which, in spite of some defects, deserves to be regarded as the best under which any great society has ever yet existed during many ages.[3] Then it was that the most ancient colleges[4] which still exist at both the great national seats of learning[5] were founded. Then was formed that language, less musical indeed than the languages of the south, but in force, in richness, in aptitude[6] for all the highest purposes of the poet, the philosopher, and the orator, inferior to the tongue of Greece alone. Then, too, appeared the first faint dawn[7] of the noble literature, the most splendid and the most durable of the many glories[8] of England.—MACAULAY.

1. **Constitution,** Verfassung.

He has a good constitution, . . . eine gute Konstitution; Natur.
A constitutional disease, eine angeborene Krankheit.
Constitutional right (*polit.*), verfassungsgemässes Recht.

2. **Copy,** Nachahmung.

Make a copy of the letter, . . . Abschrift (f.).
Fair copy, die Reinschrift.
Not a single copy of the book, kein einziges Exemplar . . .
Copybook, das Heft (*fr.* haften, *to be fixed*).

3. **Ages** = centuries.
4. **College** = University.
5. **Learning,** Gelehrsamkeit.
6. **Aptitude,** Tauglichkeit.
7. **Dawn,** *say,* beginnings.

At dawn, bei Tagesanbruch; (Morgendämmerung).
In the dawn of evening, in der Abenddämmerung.

8. **Glory,** Herrlichkeit; Ruhm *has no plural.*

A VISIT TO GOETHE (1).

I will not attempt to retrace[1] here a portrait of the great poet's features. They are too well known from existing[2] pictures, busts,[3] and prints,[4] to require it. I need only say that, although upwards of eighty years had left their indelible[5] traces[6] on his countenance, it was still one of the most striking[7] that had ever met my eyes. He looked like what he was—one of Nature's noblemen. Rising from his seat, he gave me his hand, and, with a good-natured[8] smile, which put[9] me at my ease at once, and satisfied me that he had not taken[10] offence at my unauthorised[11] note, he motioned[12] me to be seated, and asked me what was my object in visiting Germany. After a few minutes of general conversation, he pointed to a large volume lying before him on the table, and said, "It is curious that when your visit was announced to me I was engaged[13] on making a few notes on your old English literature. Is that a subject which has ever engaged[14] your attention?"

1. **Retrace a portrait**, ein Bild entwerfen.
2. **Existing**, vorhanden.
3. **Bust**, die Büste.
4. **Print** (engraving), der Stich.

   In print, gedruckt.
   Out of print, vergriffen.

5. **Indelible**, unverwischbar.
6. **Trace**, die Spur.

   Trace (*track*), die Fährte; auf falscher Fährte sein, *to be on the wrong track.*

7. **Striking**, *here*, bedeutend.

   Striking likeness, auffallende Ähnlichkeit.

8. **Good-natured**, gutmütig.
9. **To put at ease**, heimisch fühlen lassen.
10. **Take offence at**, Anstoss nehmen an (dat.).
11. **Unauthorised**, unbefugt.
12. **To motion** (to beckon), bedeuten; zu'winken.
13. **Engaged on**, beschäftigt mit.
14. **To engage attention**, die Aufmerksamkeit auf sich lenken.

A VISIT TO GOETHE (2).

To this I was fortunately able to make an affirmative[1] reply, as I had, not long before, when at Oxford, spent some time in[2] the study of Anglo-Saxon, and was, moreover, well up[3] in Chaucer, which enabled me to elucidate[4] a few old words and phrases which he had marked as requiring[5] explanation. This circumstance evidently gave him pleasure, and he asked me whether I could not defer[6] my departure for a day or two, adding that his daughter-in-law, Madame de Goethe, had a few friends coming to her in the evening, and that he should like to introduce me to her and them. It is needless to say that I gladly acquiesced;[7] and I spent two days most agreeably in Weimar, passing half-an-hour of each morning with Goethe, and the evenings in the salon of Madame de Goethe, where I met all the élite[8] of Weimar society. On the third morning, when I went to take leave of the poet, after thanking him for all his kindness to me, I ventured to ask if he would complete[9] it by writing for me a stanza[10] which I might keep as an autograph[11] memento of my visit. After a minute's reflection he wrote for me the following quatrain:[12]—

> "Liegt dir gestern klar und offen,
> Wirkst du heute kräftig treu:
> Kannst auch auf ein Morgen hoffen,
> Das nicht minder glücklich sei!"

—*From the "Cornhill Magazine."*

1. **To make an affirmative reply**, eine bejahende Antwort geben (auf).
2. mit.
3. **Well up**, gut bewandert.
4. **To elucidate**, erläutern.
5. **Requiring explanation**, der Erklärung bedürftig.
6. **To defer for a day or two**, ein bis zwei Tage verschieben.
7. **To acquiesce**, zu'stimmen.
8. **Élite**, die Elite.
9. **To complete**, vervollständigen.
10. **Stanza**, die Strophe.
11. **Autograph memento**, eigenhändiges Andenken.
12. **Quatrain**, die vierzeilige Strophe.

---

drucken: *to print.*
der Drucker: *printer.*
die Druckerei: *printing-office.*
drücken: *press, oppress.*
der Drücker: *latch-key*, **trigger**.
der Druck: *pressure, print.*
Eindruck: *impression.*
Ausdruck: *expression.*
ausdrücklich: *expressly, explicit(ly).*

schieben: *to push*, **shove.**
auf'schieben: *to defer, postpone.*
der Aufschub: *postponement.*
die Schublade: *drawer.*
der Schuft: *rascal, scamp.*

halten: to **hold**, *keep.*
ungehalten (über): *angry (at).*
die Haltung: *demeanour.*
haltbar: *durable.*
behalten: *keep, retain.*
der Behälter: *reservoir.*

SOCIAL[1] ORGANISATION AND SOCIAL LIFE (1).

There are people into whose heads it never enters[2] to conceive of any better state of society[3] than that which now exists—who imagine that the idea that there could be a state of society in which greed[4] would be banished, prisons stand empty, individual interests[5] be subordinated[6] to general interests, and no one seek to rob or to oppress his neighbour, is but the dream of impracticable[7] dreamers, for whom these practical, level-headed[8] men who pride themselves on recognising facts as they are, have a hearty contempt. But such men—though some of them write books, and some of them occupy the chairs of universities,[9] and some of them stand in pulpits[10]—do not think. If they were accustomed to dine in such eating-houses[11] as are to be found in the lower quarters of London and Paris, where the knives and forks are chained to the table, they would deem it the natural, ineradicable disposition[12] of man to carry off the knife and fork with which he has eaten.

1. **Social**, gesellschaftlich; social.

   Social evening, geselliger Abend.
   Social intercourse, gesellschaftlicher (*or* geselliger) Verkehr.

2. **It enters into my head**, es kommt mir in den Sinn.

3. **State of society**, der Gesellschaftszustand.

4. **Greed**, die Habgier; der Geiz.

5. **Individual interest**, das persönliche Interesse.

6. **Subordinate(d)**, untergeordnet.

7. **Impracticable** (not practical), unpraktisch; [unausführbar, *in what sense?*].

8. **Level-headed**, gescheut, verständig.

   A (dead) level country, ein (völlig) ebenes Land.
   Level of the sea, der Meeresspiegel.
   On a level with, auf gleicher Höhe mit.
   Somebody of his own level, jemand seinesgleichen.

9. **Occupy . . . Univ.**, Lehrstühle ein'nehmen.

10. **Pulpit**, die Kanzel; stand in, *say*, speak from.

11. **Eating-house**, das Speisehaus.

12. **Ineradicable disposition**, unausrottbare Neigung.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION AND SOCIAL LIFE (2).

Take[1] a company of well-bred[2] men and women dining together. There is no struggling for[3] food; no attempt on the part of any one to get more than his neighbour; no attempt to gorge or to carry off. On the contrary, each one is anxious[4] to help[5] his neighbour before he partakes[6] himself; to offer to others the best, rather than pick it out[7] for himself; and should any one show the slightest disposition to prefer the gratification[8] of his own appetite to that of the others, or in any way to act the pilferer,[9] the swift and heavy penalty of social contempt and ostracism[10] would show how such conduct is reprobated[11] by common opinion.[12]—HENRY GEORGE.

1. Man nehme.
2. **Well-bred**, wohlerzogen.
3. **Struggling for**, Zank (m.) um.
4. **Anxious**, eifrig bemüht.
   Anxious (*uneasy*), besorgt, ängstlich (um, wegen).
   I am anxious to see him, ich bin begierig, ihn zu sehen, *or* ich möchte ihn gern sehen.
5. **To help** (at table), bedienen.
6. **To partake**, *here*, essen.
7. **To pick out**, aus'suchen.
8. **Gratification**, Befriedigung.
   I had the gratification to see it, ich hatte die Freude . . .
9. **Act the pilferer**, *say*, etwas beiseite schaffen (to purloin).
10. **Ostracism**, der Ostracismus.
11. **To reprobate**, verurteilen (insep.).
12. **Common opinion**, öffentliche Meinung.

---

der Sinn: *sense, mind.*
sinnig: *thoughtful;* ein sinniges Gedicht.
sinnlich: *sensuous, material;* ein sinnlicher Mensch, *or* Sinnenmensch, *sensualist.*
sinnen (str.), *meditate.*
feindlich gesinnt: "*hostile-minded,*" *hostile.*
der Unsinn: *nonsense.*
unsinnig: *nonsensical, absurd.*
die Sinn*en*welt: *material world.*
sinnreich: *ingenious, witty.*
sinnlos: *senseless.*

die Gier(de): **greed,** *desire.*
gierig (nach): **greedy,** *eager.*
begierig: *desirous.*
begehren: *desire,* **yearn.**
begehrlich: *covetous.*
gern(e): *willingly, fain.*

nehmen: *take.*
der Name: *name.*
nämlich: *namely, to wit.*
namen*t*lich: *especially.*
nennen (for *nemnen*): *to name, call.*
(an)genehm: *agreeable.*
Annehmlichkeit: *amenity.*
vernehmen: "*take hold with the senses,*" *perceive.*
die Vernun*f*t: *reason.*

The Wallace of Sweden (1).

Some three or four hundred years ago[1] the two small kingdoms of Denmark and Sweden were in a continual state[2] of feud with each other, in much[3] the same manner as England and Scotland used to be about (um) the same period, and from very nearly the same causes.[4] It was[5] always a great object with the Danes to add Sweden to their monarchy[6]—an arrangement which the Swedes by no means liked, but which they more than once had to submit to. Christian II., King of Denmark, usurped[7] the Swedish crown in the year 1520, and was no sooner proclaimed King[8] than he set about destroying[9] the dearly-cherished institutions of the country, and putting many of the noblest Swedes to death. One of his greatest atrocities[10] was the beheading[11] of ninety-four Swedish noblemen, in the course of a few days, in the market-place of Stockholm, besides consigning[12] many more to dungeons in different parts of Denmark.

1. **Some . . . ago,** vor etwa drei-bis vierhundert Jahren.

2. **State** (condition), der Zustand; die Lage.

    State (*polit.*), das Reich, der Staat.
    State (*pomp*), die Pracht, das Gepränge; [prangen, *to be splendid*].
    He lives in great state, er macht grossen Staat.
    United States, die vereinigten Staaten von Nord-Amerika.

3. **Much** (about), ungefähr.

4. **From . . . causes,** aus beinahe demselben Grunde.

5. *Say:* the Danes strove [streben (nach)] for a long time . . .

6. **Monarchy,** die Monarchie; (*so also* Gallerie, Philosophie, *&c.*).

7. **Usurp,** sich bemächtigen (gen.).

8. **Proclaim King,** zum König aus'rufen.

9. **Set about destroying,** began to destroy.

10. **Atrocity** (crime), das Verbrechen; (cruelty) Grausamkeit.

11. *Say:* that he beheaded (enthaupten).

12. **Besides consigning . . . ,** and (that he) besides (ausserdem) . . .

    Consign to dungeon, in's Gefängnis werfen.

---

pflegen: 1. *to be used to*; 2. *tend, take care of.*
die Pflege: *care, fostering.*
der Pflegevater: *foster-father.*
der Pflegling: *ward.*
die Pflicht: *duty* [**plight**].
schulpflichtig: "*bound to school,*" *of school age.*
verpflichten: *oblige, engage.*

werfen : *throw*, **warp.** verwerflich : *objectionable.*	die Werfte, *or* der Werft : **wharf**, *dockyard.* der Wurf : *throw, cast.*	der Würfel : *cube, die.* der Maulwurf : **mole.**
fangen : *catch, seize* **[fang].** der Fang : *capture.*	der Empfang : *reception, receipt.* empfänglich : *susceptible, sensitive.*	fähig : *capable, fit.* befähigen : *enable.*

The Wallace of Sweden (2).

This conduct on the part [1] of Christian was not relished [2] by the people on whom he had imposed himself [3] as King. They, very naturally, murmured at the loss of their liberty, and resolved on seizing the first favourable opportunity of restoring their national independence. It is to be remarked,[4] that in almost all such cases of national disaster, whether in ancient or modern times, some daring spirit [5] has arisen to combat with the usurper,[6] and strike a patriotic blow [7] for his unhappy country. Wallace of Scotland was one of these heroic men, and Sweden had such another in the person of a young nobleman named Gustavus Vasa. This intrepid *individual*, who was a descendant of [8] the old royal family of Sweden—a family which had enjoyed [9] the sovereign power [10] *prior to* the national misfortunes—was endowed with many excellent qualities of mind,[11] and his handsome person [12] and noble countenance prepossessed all in his favour.[13] His artless [14] eloquence was irresistible, and his prudence was equalled by [15] his courage and the boldness of his conceptions.[16]

1. **On the part**, von seiten.
2. **Was not relished**, did not please.
3. **To impose oneself on**, sich auf′drängen (dat.).
4. **To be remarked** = remarkable.
5. **Daring spirit**, *say*, hero.
6. **Usurper**, der Usurpator, Thronräuber.
7. **Strike a blow**, einen Schlag thun.
   - *It strikes ten*, es schlägt zehn Uhr.
   - *To strike a coin*, eine Münze prägen.
   - *To strike work*, die Arbeit ein′stellen.
   - *Strike while the iron is hot*, man muss das Eisen schmieden, solange es heiss ist.
   - *A striking likeness*, auf′fallende Ähnlichkeit.

8. **To be a descendant of,** ab'stammen von.

9. **Enjoy,** sich erfreuen (gen.); geniessen.

> *How did you enjoy the concert?* wie hat Ihnen das Konzert gefallen?
> *I enjoyed my dinner,* das Mittag hat mir gut geschmeckt.

10. **Sovereign power,** die Herrschaft.

11. **Endowed with . . . qualities of mind,** mit . . . Geistesanlagen aus'gestattet.

12. **Person** (*here,* figure), die Gestalt.

13. **I prepossess . . . in my favour,** ich nehme . . . (acc.) für mich ein.

14. **Artless,** ungekünstelt.

15. **Was equalled by** (corresponded to), entsprechen (dat.).

16. **Conception** (idea), die Idee', der Begriff.

---

dringen: *press, urge,* **throng**. zudringlich: *importunate.*	der Drang: *ardent desire, impulse.* die (das) Drangsal: *affliction.*	drängen: *crowd, urge.* das Gedränge: *crowding.* die Bedrängnis: *oppression, distress.*
schliessen: *close, finish.* schliesslich: *finally, in conclusion.* das Schloss: 1. *lock* [**slot**]; 2. *castle.*	der Schlosser: *locksmith.* der Schlüssel: key. der Schluss: *conclusion, inference, close.*	der Entschluss: *resolution.* die Entschlossenheit: *determination.* die Schleuse (*fr.* écluse): **sluice**, *drain.*
hangen (intr.): *be suspended,* **hang**. hängen (tr.): *suspend, hang.* anhänglich: *attached, devoted.*	Unabhängigkeit: *independence.* es hängt von ihm ab: *it depends on him.* henken: *to execute by hanging.*	der Henker: *executioner, hangman.* der Henkel: *handle, hook,* "*by which a thing is hung up.*"

THE WALLACE OF SWEDEN (3).

Having made himself conspicuous[1] by his endeavours to avert the thraldom[2] of his country, he was seized by order[3] of Christian, and lodged in a Danish prison. In the solitude of his dungeon he resolved that he would deliver Sweden from the usurper. He first directed[4] his attention to the gaining[5] of his own liberty, which he at length with some difficulty effected, and forthwith fled in the disguise of[6] a peasant, taking a path[7] which led him back to his native country. The adventures of Gustavus are now full of interest.[8] The narrow escapes which he made from his enemies,[9] who were everywhere searching for him, resemble more (those of) romance[10] than (the events of) sober[11] history. It is mentioned that he wrought for some time in the iron mines[12] as a common labourer, but being very nearly discovered (while) in this situation, he consulted his safety by leaving the spot,[13] and wandering towards the poor, hilly region of Dalecarlia, where he imagined[14] he should find a secure retreat.[15] The place to which he bent[16] his steps was the residence[17] of a disbanded[18] officer named Peterson, whom he had formerly known and benefited.[19]

1. **To make oneself conspicuous**, sich hervor'thun.
2. **Thraldom**, Knechtschaft, die Sklaverei.
3. **By order**, auf Befehl.
4. **To direct (to)**, richten, lenken (auf, *acc.*).
5. **The gaining**, (Wieder)erlangung, (Wieder)gewinnung.
6. **In the disguise of** (disguised), verkleidet . . .
7. **To take a path**, einen Pfad ein'schlagen.
8. **Full of interest** = exceedingly interesting.
9. **The narrow . . . enemies** = how he repeatedly escaped his enemies who . . .

   To have a narrow escape, mit genauer Not entkommen (dat.).
10. **Romance**, der Roman ; das Romantische.
11. **Sober**, ernst(haft) ; (temperate) mässig, nüchtern.
12. **Iron mine**, das Eisenbergwerk.
13. **He consulted . . . spot**, *say*, he left the spot for his safety's sake and wandered.
14. **Imagined he should find** = hoped to find.
15. **Retreat** (refuge), die Zuflucht ; (seclusion) Zurückgezogenheit.

    To beat a retreat (fig.), sich zurück'ziehen.
16. **Bent** = directed (lenken).
17. **Residence**, der Wohnort, der Wohnsitz.
18. **Disbanded**, abgedankt.
19. **To benefit**, nützen (dat.), fördern.

greifen : *catch, grasp*, **gripe**. greifbar : *seizable, palpable.*	der Griff : *handle, hilt*, **grip**. Begriff : *idea, notion.* der Griffel : *slate-pencil.*	zu den Waffen greifen : *take up arms.* zu andern Mitteln greifen : *have recourse to other means.*
gewinnen : *gain*, **win**. der Gewinn (Gewinst) : *profit, gain, winning.*	die Oberhand gewinnen (über) : *get the mastery of.*	einen lieb gewinnen : *become fond of.* das Freie gewinnen : *gain the open field.*
hoffen (auf) : **hope** *for.* hoffen*t*lich : *it is to be hoped, I hope.*	Hoffnung : *hope.* hoffnungsreich : *promising, hopeful.*	Hoffnung geben auf "*bid fair to . . .*"

THE WALLACE OF SWEDEN (4).

Peterson—we here quote[1] the account given by Sir Robert Ker Porter in his "Travels in Russia and Sweden"—Peterson received him with every mark of friendship, nay,[2] treated him with that respect[3] and submission[4] which noble minds are proud to pay to the truly great when robbed of their external honours. He seemed more afflicted[5] by the misfortunes of Gustavus than the prince (was) himself, and exclaimed[6] with such vehemence against the Danes, that instead of awaiting a proposal to take up arms, he offered, unasked, to try[7] the spirit[8] of the mountaineers,[9] and declared that himself and his vassals[10] would be the first to set an example,[11] and turn out under the command[12] of his beloved general. Gustavus was rejoiced that he had at last found a man who was not afraid to draw his sword in the defence[13] of his country, and endeavoured, by the most impressive arguments,[14] and the prospect of a suitable recompense for the personal risks[15] he ran, to confirm him in so generous a resolution. Peterson answered with repeated assurances of fidelity: he named the gentlemen and the leading[16] persons among the peasants whom he hoped to engage in[17] the enterprise. Gustavus relied on his word, and promising not to name himself to any while he was absent, some days afterwards saw him leave the house to put his design[18] in execution.[19]

1. **Quote**, an'führen; citieren.
   Quotation (*quoted passage*), die angeführte Stelle; das Citat.
2. **Nay** (not only so), ja; sogar.
3. **Respect**, Achtung; Verehrung.
   In all respects, in jeder Hinsicht.
   With respect to (*respecting*) *your proposal*, in Bezug auf Ihren Vorschlag.
   To pay respect, Achtung erweisen (dat.).
4. **Submission**, Unterwürfigkeit.
   Submission to (*resignation*), Ergebung in.
   Submission (*subjugation*), Unterwerfung.
5. **Afflicted**, betrübt (über, *acc.*).
6. **Exclaimed**, *say*, pronounced himself.
7. **Try**, auf die Probe stellen; erforschen.
8. **Spirit**, *here*, die Gesinnung.

9. **Mountaineer,** Bergbewohner.

10. **Vassal,** der Vasall, der Lehnsmann (*pl.* Mannen).

11. **To set an example,** mit gutem Beispiel voran′gehen.

12. **Turn out under the command,** *say,* sich um das Banner scharen, (lit.) *to flock round the banner.*

13. **In the defence,** zur Verteidigung.

14. **Impressive arguments,** eindringliche Argumente.

15. **To run a risk,** Gefahr laufen.

16. **Leading,** vornehmst, Haupt-.

17. **To engage in,** *turn,* to win for.

18. **Design,** das Vorhaben.

Design (*pattern*), das Muster; (*drawing*, Zeichnung).
He has no design to rob us, keine Absicht uns zu berauben.

19. **Put in execution,** aus′führen.

---

weisen: *point out, show.*
die Weisung: *direction, order.*
weis machen (einem etwas): *make one believe (impose upon).*
naseweis: *pert, saucy, impertinent.*
die Weisheit: *wisdom.*
die Weise: *manner.*
der Beweis: *proof.*

bieten: *offer*, **bid**.
gebieten: *command.*
das Gebiet: *dominion, province.*
der Gebieter: *commander.*
das Gebot: *commandment.*
der Bote: *messenger.*
die Botschaft: *message, news, embassy.*
der Büttel: **beadle,** *bailiff.*

THE WALLACE OF SWEDEN (5).

It was indeed a design, and a black one.[1] Under the specious[2] cloak of zealous affection for Gustavus, the traitor was contriving[3] his ruin.[4] The hope of making his court to[5] the Danish tyrant, and the expectation of a large reward, made this second Judas resolve to sacrifice his honour to his ambition, and, for the sake of a few ducats, violate the most sacred laws of hospitality, by betraying his guest. In pursuance of[6] that base resolution, he went straight[7] to one of Christian's officers commanding[8] in the province, and informed him that Gustavus was his prisoner. Having committed[9] this treachery, he had not the courage to face[10] his victim, and telling the Dane how to surprise[11] the prince, who (he said) believed himself (to be) under the protection of a friend, he proposed taking a wider circuit[12] home, while they, apparently[13] unknown to him, rifled[14] it of its treasure. "It will be an easy matter," said he, "for not even my wife knows that it is Gustavus." Accordingly, the officer, at the head of a party[15] of well-armed soldiers, marched directly to the lake. The men invested the house, while the leader, abruptly[16] entering, found Peterson's wife, according to the fashion of those days, employed in culinary preparations.[17]

1. **And a black one,** und zwar ein böser.

2. **Specious,** scheinheilig, falsch.

3. **Contrive,** ersinnen.

He contrived to escape, es gelang ihm zu entkommen.

4. **Ruin,** das Verderben.

5. **To make court to,** einer Person den Hof machen.

Court of justice, der Gerichtshof, das Gericht.

6. **In pursuance of**=in order to carry out . . .

7. **Straight** (adv.), geradeswegs; auf der Stelle.

8. **Command,** *here,* den Befehl führen.

9. **Commit** (a sin), begehen, aus'üben.

Commit to memory, auswendig lernen.
Commit oneself, sich bloss'stellen.

10. **To face,** (einem) ins Gesicht sehen.

The window faces the garden, . . . geht auf den Garten.
He faced the danger, er trotzte der Gefahr.

11. **How to surprise**=how he could . . . (pres. subj.).

12. **Take a circuit,** einen Umweg machen.

13. **Apparent(ly),** augenscheinlich.

14. **To rifle,** berauben (gen. of thing).

15. **Party,** *here,* die Truppe; (polit.) die Partei.

To give a party (company), eine Gesellschaft geben.
The parties concerned, die Beteiligten.
The offended party, der beleidigte Teil.

16. **Abrupt(ly),** plötzlich; schroff.

17. **Employed . . . preparations,** mit den Vorbereitungen für die Küche beschäftigt.

---

gelingen: *prove successful.*
langen: *stretch, reach.*

gelangen: *arrive, attain.*
ans Ziel gelangen: *attain one's end.*

auf die Nachwelt gelangen: *be handed down to posterity.*

der Hof: 1. *yard;* 2. *farm;* 3. *palace, court,*
der Höfling: *courtier.*
höfisch: *fawning.*

höflich: *polite.*
hübsch: *pretty* (= höfisch).

am (bei) Hofe: *at court.*
auf dem Hofe: *in the courtyard.*

der Spiesz: *spear, pike,* **spit.**
die Spitze: 1. *point, summit;* 2. *lace.*

der Spitzname: *nickname.*
der Spitzbube: *thief, rascal.*
spitz(ig): *pointed.*

spitzfindig: *shrewd, sophistical.*
spitzen: *point, sharpen.*
das ist auf mich gespitzt: *that is aimed at me.*

THE WALLACE OF SWEDEN (6).

At some distance from her sat a young man in a rustic[1] garb, lopping off[2] the knots[3] from the broken branch of a tree. The officer went up to her[4] and told her he came in King Christian's name to demand the rebel Gustavus, who he knew[5] was concealed under her roof. The dauntless woman never[6] changed colour; she immediately guessed the man whom her husband had introduced as a miner's son to be the Swedish hero. The door was blocked up[7] by soldiers. In an instant she replied, without once glancing at[8] Gustavus, who sat motionless with[9] surprise, "If you mean[10] the melancholy gentleman my husband has[11] had here these few days,[11] he has just[12] walked out into the wood on the other side of the hill. Some of those soldiers may readily seize him, as he has no arms with him." The officer did not suspect the easy simplicity[13] of her manner, and ordered part of the men to go in quest of[14] him. At that moment, suddenly turning her eyes on[15] Gustavus, she flew up to him, and catching the stick out of his hand, exclaimed in an angry voice,[16] "Unmannerly wretch![17] what! sit[18] before your betters? Don't you see the King's officer in the room? Get out of my sight, or some of them shall give you a drubbing."[19]

---

1. **Rustic**, ländlich.
2. **Lop off**, ab′schlagen.
3. **Knot**, der **Knoten**, der Knorren.
4. **Up to her**, auf sie zu.
5. **Who he knew**, *say*, who as he knew (subjunct.).
6. **Never**, *say*, not even.
7. **To block up**, versperren.
8. **Glance at**, an′blicken (acc.).
9. **Motionless with**, regungslos vor.
10. **Mean**, meinen; *mean to* (intend), beabsichtigen.

    This means (signifies) death, dies bedeutet . . .

    What does he mean by this, was will er damit sagen (*cp.* Fr. *vouloir dire*).

    I mean it for your good, ich meine es gut mit Ihnen.

11. Has since a few days.
12. **Just** (adv. of time), (so)eben; (exactly) gerade.

    I met him just as I . . ., ich traf ihn, gerade als ich . . .

    He is just as good as you, ebenso gut wie Sie.

13. **Easy simplicity**, die schlichte Einfachheit.

14. **Go in quest of,** auf′suchen (acc.).

15. **Turn eyes on**, die Augen richten (auf, *acc.*).

16. **In an angry voice**, wütend.

17. **Unmannerly wretch,** unmanierlicher Wicht.

18. er bleibt sitzen in Gegenwart vornehmer Leute. *The third person is used to express contempt.*

19. **A drubbing**, eine Tracht Prügel.

scheren: **shear**, *concern.*
die Schar: *band, troop.*
scharen: *form into troops.*
bescheren: *bestow, present, "give as a* **share**."
die Schere: *scissors,* **shears**.
die (Schaf)schur: *sheep-shearing.*
scharf: **sharp**.
schärfen: **sharpen**.
Sie sind Alle über einen Kamm geschoren: *they are all of the same stamp.*
die Schererei (coll.): *trouble, annoyance.*

The Wallace of Sweden (7).

As she spoke she struck him a blow on the back with all her strength, and opening a side door, "There, get into the scullery,"[1] cried she, "it is the fittest place for such company!" and giving him another knock, she flung the stick after him,[2] and shut the door. "Sure,"[3] added she, in a great heat,[4] "never woman was plagued with such a lout[5] of a slave!" The officer begged she would not disturb herself on his account; but she, affecting[6] great reverence for the King, and respect for his representative,[7] prayed him to enter her parlour[8] while she brought some refreshment. The Dane civilly complied[9]—perhaps glad enough to get[10] (from the side) of a shrew;[11] and she immediately hastened to Gustavus, whom she had bolted in,[12] and, by means of a back passage,[13] conducted him in a moment to a little apartment which projected[14] from the side of the house close to the bank of the lake where the fishers' boats lay; she lowered him down,[15] and giving him a direction[16] to an honest curate[17] across the lake, committed him to Providence.[18] After making this narrow escape, Gustavus was not long in effecting[19] the independence of Sweden. He took the opportunity[20] of a festival, at which the peasants of the canton assembled, and appeared in the midst of them.

1. **Get into the scullery**, fort! in die Spülkammer!

2. **After him**, hinter ihm her.

3. **Sure** (adv.), wahrhaftig.

4. **Heat** (excitement), Aufregung.

5. **Lout of a slave**, der Tölpel; Lümmel.

6. **To affect** (pretend), vor'geben; (er)heucheln.

7. **Representative**, der Stellvertreter.

8. **Parlour**, Wohnzimmer (Ess-, Schlaf-, Fremdenzimmer).

9. **Civilly complied**, *say*, followed her invitation.

Comply with, willfahren (wk. dat.).

10. **To get**, *here*, davon'kommen.

11. **Shrew**, das böse Weib.

12. **To bolt in** = to lock in.

The bolt, der **Bolzen**, der Riegel.

13. **Back passage**, der hintere Durchgang.

14. **Project**, vor'springen.

15. **Lower down**, hinab'lassen.

16. **Give a direction**, weisen.

17. **Curate**, der Vicar.

18. **Commit to Providence**, der Vorsehung empfehlen.

19. **After making . . . in effecting**, *arr.*, after G. had made his narrow escape (mit genauer Not entkommen), it did not take (dauern) long till he . . .

20. **I take the opportunity**, ich benutze die Gelegenheit.

---

rufen: *call out.*
der Ruf: *call, fame, report.*
der Beruf: *calling, vocation.*
das Gerücht: *rumour.*
berüchtigt: *ill-reputed.*
ruchbar: *notorious.*

riechen: *smell, scent.*
rauchen: *smoke, fume,* **reek.**
räuchern: *fumigate.*
der Geruch: *smell, odour.*
anrüchig: *in bad odour, of ill-repute.*

The Wallace of Sweden (8).

His noble and confident[1] air,[2] his misfortunes, and the general hatred against Christian, all lent[3] an irresistible power[4] to his words. The people rushed to arms,[5] the castle of the governor was stormed, and emboldened by his success, the Dalecarlians—who may be called the highlanders of Sweden—flocked together under the banners of the conqueror. From this moment Gustavus entered upon a career of victory.[6] At the head of a self-raised[7] army, he advanced[8] rapidly, and completed the expulsion of the enemy. The Estates[9] first conferred upon[10] him the title of administrator, and afterwards proclaimed him as King.[11] Gustavus, however, was not ambitious of[12] sovereignty, and would rather have remained an elective president,[13] notwithstanding his claims of birth. It was not without a sufficient reason that he hesitated to accept the office of King. At this period (1523) Europe was torn with religious dissensions,[14] and the reigning monarchs had an extremely delicate[15] and difficult task in preserving a balance[16] betwixt the advocates[17] of the reformed[18] doctrines and their adversaries.

1. **Confident**, zuversichtlich.

Confident of success, des Erfolges gewiss.

2. **Air** (appearance), das Aussehen.

Air (*mus.*), die Melodie, das Lied; (*manner*) die Art, Miene.
He gives himself airs, er thut vornehm.
Change of air, Luftveränderung.

3. **Lend**, verleihen.

4. **All lent . . . charm**, everything gave . . . charm (der Reiz).

5. **To rush to arms**, zu den Waffen greifen.

6. **From . . . victory**, von nun an begann der Siegeslauf G.'s.

7. **Self-raised**, voluntary, freiwillig.

8. **To advance**, vor'rücken.

To advance (*elevate*), erhöhen, fördern.
At an advanced age, im vorgerückten Alter.
To advance a claim, Anspruch machen (auf, *acc.*).
To advance (*money*), Geld leihen, vor'schiessen.

9. **The Estates**, die Stände.

10. **Confer upon**, verleihen (dat.).

11. **Proclaim as King**, zum König aus'rufen.

12. **To be ambitious of**, streben nach.

13. **Elective president**, Wahlpräsident.

14. **Religious dissensions**, religiöse Zwietracht.

15. **Delicate**, *here*, misslich.

Delicately formed, zart gebaut.
Of delicate health, kränklich.
A man of delicate tastes, ein M. von verwöhntem Geschmack.

16. **Balance**, das Gleichgewicht.

17. **Advocate** (adherer), Anhänger; Verteidiger; (lawyer) Advokat.

18. **Reformed**, reformiert.

THE WALLACE OF SWEDEN (9).

The behaviour of Gustavus upon this occasion is acknowledged[1] (to have been) exceedingly prudent. He effected the establishment of[2] reformed usages to the satisfaction of all parties. After performing this important duty, he perfected[3] the legislation,[4] formed by his taste and judgment the character of the nation, softened manners, encouraged[5] industry and learning,[6] and extended commerce. After a glorious reign of thirty-seven years, he died in 1560, at the mature age of seventy. What became of Sweden after the death of this extraordinary man is a question[7] which may be asked. It continued[8] a monarchy under his descendants till 1809, when the reigning monarch, Gustavus IV., was expelled[9] from the kingly office for[10] repeated acts of folly[11] and bad government. A collateral branch[12] of the family ascended the throne; but death carrying off[13] the crown-prince in 1810, the Estates made choice of Bernadotte, one of Bonaparte's generals, as sovereign, and this eminent individual became King of Sweden—which is now united to[14] Norway—under the title of Charles XIV. His son is now the reigning monarch. In the meanwhile, the expelled imbecile, Gustavus IV., became an eccentric[15] religious fanatic,[16] and for some years furnished amusement[17] to the courtly circles of the Continent. His son, we believe.[18] is a lieutenant-colonel[19] in the Austrian service, and takes the name[20] (of) Gustaveson.—*Chambers's Miscellany.*

---

1. **To acknowledge,** an'erkennen (*als*) (*p. p.* anerkannt); (admit) zu'geben.

> *I acknowledge the receipt of your letter,* ich bestätige den Empfang Ihres Briefes.

2. **Effected the establishment of,** *say,* he established (fest'setzen).

3. **To perfect,** vervoll'kommnen (insep.), (*adj.* vollkommen).

4. **Legislation,** Gesetzgebung.

5. **Encourage,** befördern; (a person) ermutigen.

6. **Learning,** die Wissenschaft; (scholarship) Gelehrsamkeit.

7. **Ask a question,** eine Frage stellen.

8. **Continued,** remained.

9. **Expel,** vertreiben.

10. **For,** on account of.

11. **Act of folly** = foolish act.

> *Act* (*deed*), Handlung, die That.
> *Act* (*of a play*), der Aufzug, der Akt.
> *Act of Parliament,* die Parlamentsakte, das Gesetz.
> *He was taken in the very act,* er wurde auf frischer That ertappt.

12. **Collateral branch,** die Seitenlinie.

13. **Carry off,** *here,* weg'raffen.

14. **United to,** vereinigt mit.

15. **Eccentric,** excentrisch; überspannt.

16. **Religious fanatic,** der Religionsschwärmer; Fanatiker.

17. **Furnished . . . amusement,** diente . . . zur Unterhaltung.

18. **We believe** = as we believe.

19. **Lieutenant-colonel,** der Oberstlieutnant.

20. **Takes the name** = has assumed (an'nehmen) the name.

AN EVENTFUL ACQUAINTANCE (1).

One evening, as they were walking on their lawn,[1] which sloped[2] to the lake, they heard the sound of a flute, played with a skill so exquisite as to draw them,[3] surprised and spell-bound,[4] to the banks. The musician was a young man, in a boat, which he had moored[5] beneath the trees of their demesne.[6] He was alone, or, rather, he had one companion, in a large Newfoundland dog,[7] that sat watchful at the helm[8] of the boat, and appeared to enjoy[9] the music as much as his master. As the ladies approached the spot, the dog growled, and the young man ceased, though without seeing the fair[10] causes of his companion's displeasure. The sun, then setting, shone full on his countenance as he looked round; and that countenance was one that might have haunted[11] the nymphs of Delos; the face of Apollo, not (as) the[12] hero, but the shepherd—not the Python-slayer,[13] but the young dreamer by shady places—whom the sculptor has portrayed[14] leaning idly against the tree—the boy-god[15] whose home is yet on earth,[16] and to whom the Oracle and the Spheres[17] are still unknown.

1. **Lawn**, der Rasenplatz.

2. **Slope,** (sich) neigen, senken.
The slope, der Abhang.

3. **As to draw them**, *say*, that they felt themselves drawn (sich hingezogen fühlen).

4. **Spell-bound**, bezaubert.

5. **To moor**, vor Anker legen.

6. **Demesne**, das Landgut, die Domäne.

7. **Newfoundland dog**, der Neufundländer.

8. **Helm**, das Steuer.
Helmet, der Helm.

9. **Enjoy**, Gefallen finden an (dat.).

10. **Fair** = beautiful.
Fair hair, blondes Haar.
A fair wind, ein günstiger Wind.
A fair cause, eine gerechte Sache.
The fair sex, das schöne Geschlecht.
To be in a fair way, gute Aussichten haben.
The fair, die Messe, der Jahrmarkt.

11. **To haunt**, verfolgen.

12. "**The hero**" is appos. to "Apollo"; what case?

13. **Python-slayer**, Pythontöter.

14. **To portray**, *here*, meisseln.

15. **Boy-god**, Götterknabe.

16. **On earth**, auf Erden.

17. **Sphere**, die Sphäre; (astr.) der Himmelskörper.
Sphere of activity, der Wirkungskreis.
It is not my sphere, es ist nicht mein Fach.

finden : find.
der Finder : *finder.*
erfinderisch : *inventive.*
empfinden : *to feel, perceive.*
empfindlich : *sensitive.*
der Fund : *discovery, thing found.*
der Findling : *foundling.*
spitzfindig : *shrewd, crafty.*

scheinen : *seem,* **shine.**
der Schein : *shine, appearance;* zum Schein, *for appearance' sake.*
wahrscheinlich: *probable.*
scheinbar : *seeming, ostensible.*
der Schemen : *phantom.*
der Schimmer : *glimmer, shimmer.*
erscheinen : *to appear.*
Erscheinung : *appearance.*

kennen : *to* **know (ken).**
die Kunde : *news, information.*
der Kunde : *customer, "person known."*
kundig (gen.) : *acquainted, expert:* der Sprache kundig.
sich erkundigen (nach) : *inquire.*
verkünden: *make known, proclaim.*
die Kunst : *art.*

AN EVENTFUL ACQUAINTANCE (2).

At the moment the dog leaped from the boat, and the elder lady uttered a faint cry of alarm,[1] which, directing[2] the attention of the musician, brought him also ashore. He called off his dog, and apologised,[3] with a not ungraceful[4] mixture of diffidence[5] and ease,[6] for his intrusion.[7] He was not aware the place was inhabited—it was a favourite haunt[8] of his—he lived near. The elder lady was pleased with his address,[9] and struck[10] with his appearance. There was, indeed, in his manner that indefinable charm, which is more attractive than mere personal appearance, and which can never be imitated or acquired. They parted, however, without establishing[11] any formal acquaintance. A few days after, they met at dinner at a neighbouring house, and were introduced[12] (by name). That of the young man seemed strange to the ladies; not so theirs to him. He turned pale when he heard it, and remained silent and aloof the rest of the evening. They met again and often; and for some weeks—nay, even[13] for months—he appeared to avoid, as much as possible, the acquaintance so auspiciously begun; but by little and little the beauty of the younger lady seemed to gain ground[14] on his diffidence and repugnance.[15] Excursions[16] among the neighbouring mountains threw them together, and at last he fairly surrendered himself to the charm he had at first determined to resist.—LYTTON.

1. **Cry of alarm**, der Angstruf.
2. **Directing** = directed (erregen) . . . and . . .
3. **Apologise**, sich entschuldigen; um Entschuldigung bitten.
4. **Ungraceful**, ungefällig.
5. **Diffidence**, die Schüchternheit.
6. **Ease**, die Zuversicht.
   - *To feel at ease*, sich behaglich (ungeniert) fühlen.
   - *Ill at ease*, unzufrieden, unruhig.
7. **Intrusion**, das Eindrängen.
   - *To intrude*, sich auf′drängen; stören.
   - *I* hope *I don't intrude*, hoffentlich störe ich nicht?
8. **Favourite haunt**, der Lieblingsplatz.
9. **Address** (manner), das Auftreten, das Benehmen.
   - *Address* (*on a letter*), die Adresse.
   - *Address* (*speech*), die (An)rede; Ansprache.
   - *To pay one's addresses* (*to a lady*), (einer Dame) den Hof machen.
10. **Struck**, agreeably surprised.
11. **Establish**, *here*, schliessen, machen.
    - *To establish a business*, ein Geschäft begründen; etablieren.
    - *Established fact*, feststehende Thatsache.
12. **Introduce**, vor′stellen.
13. **Nay even**, ja sogar.
14. **Gain ground**, siegen über.
15. **Repugnance**, die Abneigung.
    - *I did it with great repugnance*, . . . höchst ungern.
16. **Excursion**, der Ausflug.

---

springen: *leap*, **spring**. der (Spring)brunnen: *spring*, *well*.	sprengen (causat.): *break open*, *blast*. der Sprengel: *diocese*, *parish*.	der Ursprung: *origin*, *source*.
erbleichen: *turn pale*. bleich: *pale*. die Bleiche: **bleach**-*yard*.	verblichen: *faded*, *grown wan*. der Blick: *glance*.	blicken: *cast a look*. blitzen: *lighten*, *flash*. das Blech: *sheet metal*.
scheiden: *part*, *separate*. der Unterschied: *difference*. der Bescheid: *information*.	bescheiden: 1. (verb) *inform*; 2. (adj.) *modest*. beschieden: *allotted*, *ordered*.	Bescheid wissen: *know one's way*. Bescheid sagen (lassen): *send word*, *inform*.

COLUMBUS' FIRST RETURN TO EUROPE (1).

The voyage was prosperous till the fourteenth of February, and he had advanced near five hundred leagues[1] across the Atlantic Ocean, when the wind began to rise, and continued to blow with increasing rage, which terminated in a furious hurricane.[2] Everything that the naval skill[3] and experience of Columbus could devise[4] was employed in order to save the ships. But it was impossible to withstand the violence of the storm, and, as they were still far from any land, destruction seemed inevitable. The sailors had recourse to[5] prayers to the Almighty God, to the invocation of Saints, to vows[6] and charms,[7] to everything that religion dictates or superstition suggests[8] to the affrighted mind of man. No prospect[9] of deliverance appearing, they abandoned themselves to despair, and expected every moment to be swallowed up in the waves. Beside the passions which naturally agitate and alarm[10] the human mind in such awful situations, when certain Death, in one of his most terrible forms,[11] is before it, Columbus had to endure[12] feelings of distress[13] peculiar to himself.

1. **League**, die Seemeile.
2. **Hurricane**, der **Orkan**.
3. **Naval skill**, die Seekunst.

   Naval power, Seemacht; *naval stores*, Schiffsvorräte.

4. **Devise**, ersinnen, erdenken.

   To devise means, Mittel ausfindig machen; ersinnen.

5. **To have recourse to**, Zuflucht nehmen zu.
6. **The vow**, das Gelübde, das Gelöbnis (*verb*, geloben).
7. **Charm**, das Zaubermittel; (fig.) der Zauber, der Reiz.
8. **Suggest**, ein′geben, in den Sinn geben (dat.).

   Suggest (*propose*), vor′schlagen, an′deuten.
   At the suggestion of, auf Anraten des . . .

9. **Prospect**, Aussicht (auf); [(scenery) die Landschaft].

   To hold out a prospect, in Aussicht stellen.

10. **To alarm**, erschrecken; beunruhigen (insep.).

    The alarm, der **Lärm**; (*fear*) die Angst.
    To sound an alarm, Lärm blasen *or* schlagen.
    To take alarm at, über etwas in Angst geraten.

11. **Form**, die Gestalt.

    That is bad form, gegen den guten Ton.
    For form's sake, der Form wegen.

12. **Endure** (bear), ertragen, erdulden.

    Endure (*last*), dauern.

13. **Feelings of distress**, *say*, sorrows.

I.—**raten** : *advise.*
der Rat : 1. *counsel*; 2. *counsellor.*
Stadtrat: *town-councillor.*
der Ratschlag : *advice.*
(be)ratschlagen (insep. wk.) : *deliberate.*
rätlich, ratsam : *advisable.*
verraten : *betray.*
der Verrat : *treason.*
der Verräter : *traitor.*
verräterisch: *treacherous.*

II.—**raten** : *guess.*
das Rätsel : **riddle**.
rätselhaft : *mysterious.*
enträtseln : *unravel, unriddle.*

III.—**geraten**: *turn out, fall into.*
in Zorn geraten: *fall into a passion.*
ins Stocken geraten: *to come to a stand.*
Alles gerät ihm: *everything succeeds with him.*
wohl geratene Kinder: *well-bred children.*
auf's Geratewohl: *at random.*
das Gerät, die Gerätschaft: *implements, tools, household stuff.*
der Vorrat: *stock, supply.*
vorrätig: *in stock, on hand.*

Columbus' First Return to Europe (2).

He dreaded that all knowledge[1] of the amazing discoveries which he had made was now to perish; mankind were to be deprived of every benefit that might have been derived from the happy success[2] of his schemes,[3] and his own name would descend to posterity as that of a rash,[4] deluded adventurer, instead of being transmitted with the honour due[5] to the author[6] and conductor of the most noble enterprise that had ever been undertaken. These reflections extinguished all sense of his own personal danger. Less affected[7] with the loss of life than solicitous to preserve the memory[8] of what he had attempted and achieved, he retired to his cabin,[9] and wrote, upon parchment,[10] a short account of the voyage which he had made, of the course which he had taken, of the situation and riches of the countries which he had discovered, and of the colony that he had left there. Having wrapped up this in an oiled cloth,[11] which he enclosed in a cake of wax, he put it into a cask carefully stopped up,[12] and threw it into the sea, in hopes[13] that some fortunate accident might preserve a deposit of so much importance to the world. At length Providence interposed[14] to save a life reserved[15] for other services. The wind abated,[16] the sea became calm, and on the evening of the fifteenth, Columbus and his companions discovered land. They found it to be St. Mary, one of the Azores.[17]—ROBERTSON.

1. **Knowledge**:

Knowledge (*information*), die Kunde, die Kenntnis.
The tree of knowledge, der Baum der Erkenntnis.
To my knowledge, he is . . ., so viel ich weiss, ist er . . .
It has come to my knowledge, ich habe erfahren.

2. **Success**, der Erfolg.

I wish you success in your undertaking, ich wünsche Ihnen Glück zu Ihrem Unternehmen.

3. **Scheme**, der Plan; der Entwurf.

To form a scheme, einen Plan machen *or* entwerfen.
Scheming (adj.), intrigant.

4. **Rash**, unbesonnen, tollkühn. *The German word* **rasch** *means "quick, speedy."*

5. **Due** (adj.), gebührend, geziemend.

Honour to whom honour is due, Ehre dem Ehre gebührt.
The bill is due to-day, der Wechsel ist heute fällig.
To give every one his due, jedem das seinige geben.

6. **Author**, der Urheber; (of a book) der Schriftsteller, Verfasser.

7. **Affected**, bekümmert (um).

8. **Memory**, die Erinnerung, das Andenken (an *w. acc.*).

In memory of my departed father, zum Andenken an meinen seligen Vater.
He has an excellent memory, er hat ein vortreffliches Gedächtnis.
Memorable, denkwürdig.

9. **Cabin**, die Kajüte.

10. **Parchment**, das Pergament.

11. **Oiled cloth**, das Wachstuch.

12. **Stopped up**, zugestopft.

13. **In hopes**, in der Hoffnung.

14. **Interpose**, sich ins Mittel legen.

15. **Reserved** (destined), bestimmt.

Your friend is rather reserved, . . . zurückhaltend, verschlossen.
Without reserve, ohne Rückhalt; ohne Einschränkung.

16. **Abate** (intr.), nach'lassen, sich legen.

Abate (*the price*), herab'setzen; (*pain*) mildern.

17. **The Azores**, die Azoren.

ON READING NEW BOOKS.

I cannot understand the rage[1] manifested by the greater part of the world for reading new books. If the public[2] had read all those books that have *gone* before, I can conceive how they should not wish to read the same work twice over; but when I consider the countless volumes that lie unopened, unregarded,[3] unread, and unthought of,[4] I cannot enter[5] into the pathetic complaints that I hear made,[6] that Sir Walter writes no more, that the press[7] is idle, that Lord Byron is dead. If I have not read a book before, it is, to all intents[8] and purposes, new to me, whether it was printed yesterday or three hundred years ago. If it be urged[9] that it has no modern, passing[10] incidents, and is out of date[11] and old-fashioned,[12] then it is so much the newer: it is farther removed from other works that I have lately read, from the familiar routine[13] of ordinary life, and makes so much more addition to my knowledge. But many people would as soon think of putting[14] on old armour as of taking up a book not published within the last month, or year at the utmost. There is a fashion in reading as well as in dress, which lasts only for the season.[15]

—WILLIAM HAZLITT.

1. **Rage** (eagerness), die Gier; (fury) die Wut.

   To be in a rage, wütend sein.
   Rage for money, die Geldgier.

2. **The public**, das Publikum.

   In public, öffentlich.

3. **Unregarded**, unbeachtet.
4. Forgotten.
5. **Enter into**, *here, agree with*, bei'stimmen.
6. **To make complaints**, Klagen an'stellen.
7. **The press** (printing), die Presse.

   In press, unter der Presse.
   Press (*wardrobe*), der (Kleider)-schrank.

8. **To all intents and purposes**, völlig; in jeder Hinsicht.
9. **To urge** (to lay stress on), betonen.
10. **Passing incidents**, vorübergehende Vorfälle.
11. **Out of date**, überlebt; veraltet.

    Up to date, zeitgemäss; modern.
    Date (*of a letter*), das Datum, *pl.* Data *or* Daten.
    Under this day's date, mit dem heutigen.
    At three months' date, drei Monate dato.

12. **Old-fashioned**, altmodisch.
13. **Familiar routine**, der gewohnheitsmässige Gang; *we also say*, die Routine.
14. **To put on armour**, eine Rüstung an'legen.
15. **Season** (for something), die Saison.

    Season (*time of year*), die Jahreszeit.
    Everything in its season, alles zu seiner Zeit.
    In (*due*) *season*, zur rechten Zeit.

---

vergessen: *to* **forget**.
vergesslich: *forgetful*.

ergötzen: *to delight*.
ergötzlich: *pleasing*, *delightful*.

sollen: shall, should.
die Schuld: 1. *debt*; 2. *guilt*.

schuldig: 1. *indebted*; 2. *guilty*.
beschuldigen: *accuse*.
entschuldigen: *excuse*.

die Schuldigkeit: *obligation, duty*.
schulden: *to owe*.
der Schuldner: *debtor*.

WALTER SCOTT TO HIS SON CHARLES.

I cannot too much impress upon your mind[1] that labour is the condition[2] which God has imposed on[3] us in every station of life;[4] there is nothing worth having[5] that can be had[6] without it, from the bread which the peasant wins with the sweat[7] of his brow, to the sports[8] by which the rich man must get rid of his ennui.[9] . . . As for knowledge,[10] it can no more be planted in the human mind without labour than[11] a field of wheat can be produced without the previous[12] use of the plough. There is, indeed,[13] this great difference, that chance or circumstances may so cause it that another shall reap what the farmer sows;[14] but no man can be deprived, (whether) by accident or misfortune, of the fruits of his own studies, and the liberal and extended acquisitions of knowledge[15] (which he makes) are (all) for his own use.[16] Labour, therefore, my dear boy, and improve[17] the time. In youth our steps are light, and our minds[18] are ductile, and knowledge is easily laid up;[19] but if we neglect our spring, our summers will be useless and contemptible, our harvest will be chaff,[20] and the winter of our old age unrespected and desolate.

---

1. **I cannot . . . mind,** ich kann dir nicht genug ein'schärfen.
2. **Condition,** der Zustand; die Lage.
    - *Upon condition* (*that*), mit (unter) der Bedingung (dass).
    - *The conditions then were different*, damals waren die Umstände anders.
3. **Impose upon,** auf'erlegen (*past part.* auferlegt) (dat.).
4. **Station of life,** die Lebensstufe.
5. **Worth having,** was des Besitzes wert ist.
6. **Can be had,** *say*, can be acquired.
7. **With the sweat, &c.,** im Schweisse seines Angesichts.
8. **Sports,** *here*, der Sport.
9. **Ennui,** die Langeweile.
10. **Knowledge,** die Kenntnisse; das Wissen.
11. **No more . . . than,** ebensowenig . . . als.
12. **Without the previous, &c.,** ohne vorher gepflügt zu werden.
13. **Indeed,** allerdings.
14. Has sown.
15. **Liberal and extended acquisitions of knowledge,** die Erwerbung ausgedehnter Kenntnisse.
16. **For his own use,** für den eigenen Gebrauch.
17. **Improve,** *here*, benutzen.
18. **Our minds, &c.,** unser Gemüt ist lenksam.
19. **Is easily laid up,** lässt sich leicht an'sammeln.
20. **Chaff,** die Spreu.

---

werben (um): *to woo.*
sich bewerben (um): *apply for.*
erwerben: *acquire.*
der Erwerb: *acquisition, gain.*
das Gewerbe: *trade, industry.*
gewerblich: *industrial.*

To cause: verursachen (insep.), *or* veranlassen (insep. wk.).
the cause: 1. (*reason*) der Grund; die Ursache; 2. (*affair*) die Sache; Angelegenheit.
causeless: grundlos; ohne Ursache.

FREDERIC WILLIAM.

It is remarkable, that though the main end[1] of Frederic William's administration was to have a great military force,[2] though his reign forms an important epoch[3] in the history of military discipline, and though his dominant[4] passion was[5] the love of military display,[6] he was yet one of the most pacific[7] of princes. We are afraid that his aversion to[8] war was not the effect of humanity,[9] but was merely one of his thousand whims. His feeling about his troops seems to have resembled a miser's[10] feeling about his money. He loved to collect them, to count them, to see them increase; but he could not find it in his heart[11] to break in upon[12] the precious[13] hoard. He looked forward to[14] some future time when his Patagonian battalions[15] were to drive hostile infantry before them like sheep; but this future time was always receding,[16] and it is probable that if his life had been prolonged thirty years, his superb army would never have seen any harder service than a sham fight[17] in the fields near Berlin. But the great military means which he had collected were destined to be employed by a spirit far more daring[18] and inventive than his own.—MACAULAY.

1. **Main end,** Hauptziel; grösstes Streben.

In the main, im Ganzen; hauptsächlich.

2. **Military force,** militärische Macht; Kriegsmacht.

Force (*strength*), die Kraft, Stärke; *forces,* die Truppen.
By main force, gewaltsam; mit Gewalt.

3. **Epoch,** die Epoche; der Zeitabschnitt.

4. **Dominant,** herrschend.

5. Consisted in.

6. **Display,** Schaustellung; der Pomp.

7. **Pacific,** friedliebend; friedlich.

Pacific Ocean, stille Ocean.

8. **Aversion to,** Abneigung gegen.

9 **Humanity** (fig.), die Menschenliebe.

10. **Miser**, der Geizhals.

11. **I cannot find it in my heart**, ich kann es nicht über das Herz bringen.

12. **Break in upon**, an′greifen (acc.).

13. Treasure.

14. **Look forward to** (expect), erwarten; entgegen′sehen (dat.).

> *I look forward to your visit*, ich freue mich auf Ihren Besuch.

15. **Patagonian battalion**, das Riesen-Battaillon (*pl.* —e) (*pron.* Bat-tal-yōn′).

16. **Recede**, zurück′weichen.

17. **Sham fight**, das Scheingefecht.

> *Sham* (adj.), falsch, unecht; (*pretended*) angeblich, scheinbar.

18. **Daring** (brave), tapfer, mutig.

> *Daring* (*rash*), verwegen, *fr.* wagen, *to dare.*

Companionship of Books.

Books introduce[1] us into the best society; they bring us into the presence of the greatest minds that have ever lived. We hear what they said and did; we see them as if they were really alive; we are participators[2] in their thoughts; we sympathise with them, enjoy[3] with them, grieve[4] with them; their experience becomes ours, and we feel as if we were in a measure[5] actors[6] with them in the scenes[7] which they describe. The great and good do not die, even in this world. Embalmed[8] in books, their spirits walk abroad.[9] The book is a living voice. It is an intellect to which one still listens.[10] Hence we ever remain under the influence of the great men of old.[11] The imperial intellects[12] of the world are as much alive now as they were ages ago. Homer still lives; and though his personal history[13] is hidden in the mists of antiquity, his poems are as fresh to-day as if they had been newly written. Plato still teaches his transcendent[14] philosophy. Horace, Virgil, and Dante still sing as when they lived. Shakespeare is not dead: his body was buried in 1616, but his mind is as much alive in England now, and his thought as far-reaching, as in the time of the Tudors.—SMILES.

1. **Introduce**, ein′führen.

> *Introduce me to your father*, stellen Sie mich Ihrem Vater *vor.*

2. **Participator**, Teilnehmer (an).

3. **Enjoy**, *here*, sich freuen.

4. **Grieve,** sich grämen.

5. **In a measure,** gewissermassen.

6. **Actors,** as if we acted (. . . handelnd auf′treten).

7. **Scene,** die Scene; die Bühne (stage).

> *The scene is laid,* das Stück spielt . . .
> *I had a nice scene with him,* ich hatte einen hübschen Auftritt mit ihm.
> *Behind the scenes* (lit. and fig.), hinter den Koulissen.

8. **Embalmed,** *say,* living (*lit.* ein′balsamieren).

9. *Say:* ihr Geist durchdringt die Welt.

10. **Listen to,** horchen auf (acc.); folgen (dat.).

11. **Of old,** of former times.

12. **Imperial intellects,** die höchsten Intelligenzen.

13. **Personal history,** die Lebensgeschichte.

14. Transcendental.

---

geniessen: *enjoy.* der Niessbrauch: *usufruct.* der Genosse: *companion,* ("*who enjoys with*").	der Genuss: *enjoyment, pleasure.* der Nutzen: *use, advantage.*	nutz(e) *or* nütz(e): (*only predicatively*) *useful.* nützen: *be of use.*
schreiben: *write.* der Schreiber: *writer, scribe.*	unbeschreiblich: *indescribable.* die Schrift: *writing, Scripture.*	schriftlich: *in writing.* (*opp.* mündlich: *oral.*) der Schriftsteller: *author.*
(ver)bergen: *conceal, shelter.* der Berg: *mountain.* das Gebirge: *mountain range.* die Herberge: *inn* (lit. "*army-shelter*").	die Burg: *stronghold, castle* [E. **burg, borough, bury**]. der Bürger: *citizen,* **burgher**.	Bürgermeister: *mayor,* **burgomaster**. bürgen: *warrant, give bail.* borgen: **borrow**.

Mr. Gladstone on Lord Palmerston (*from a Speech in the House of Commons*[1]).

I am convinced that it was the force of will, a sense of duty,[2] and a determination not to give in, that enabled him to make himself a model[3] for all of us who yet remain and follow him, with feeble and unequal steps, in the discharge of our duties;[4] it was that force of will that in point of fact[5] did not so much struggle against the infirmities of old age, but actually repelled them and kept them at a distance.[6] And one other quality there is, at least, that may be noticed without the smallest risk of stirring in any breast a painful emotion:[7] it is (this), that Lord Palmerston had a nature incapable of (enduring) anger[8] or any sentiment[9] of wrath. This freedom from wrathful sentiment was not the result[10] of painful effort, but the spontaneous[11] fruit of the mind. It was a noble gift of his original[12] nature—a gift which beyond[13] all others it was delightful to observe, delightful[14] also to remember in connection with him[14] who has left us, and with whom we have no longer to do, except in endeavouring to profit by[15] his example wherever it can lead us in the path of duty and of right, and of bestowing on him those tributes[16] of admiration and affection which he deserves at our hands.

1. **House of Commons**, das Unterhaus.
   House of Lords, Oberhaus.
2. **Sense of duty**, das Pflichtgefühl.
3. **Model**, das Vorbild; [(pattern) das Muster].
   Model farm, die Musterwirtschaft.
4. **Discharge of duties**, die Pflichterfüllung.
5. **In point of fact**, thatsächlich.
6. **Keep at a distance**, fern halten.
7. **To stir an emotion**, ein Gefühl erwecken.
8. **Anger**, der Zorn, Grimm.
9. **Sentiment**, das Gefühl.
   A matter of sentiment, die Gefühlssache.
   Sentimental, gefühlvoll, sentimental.
10. **The result**, das Ergebnis, Resultat′.
11. **Spontaneous**, natürlich.
    He came spontaneously . . ., aus eignem Antrieb, freiwillig.
12. **Original** (adj.), ursprünglich; originell.
    The original, das Original.
13. *Turn:* which we before all others regarded (betrachten) with delight.
14. *Translate freely:* deren wir noch mit Wonne gedenken, so oft wir uns seiner erinnern, der . . .
15. **I profit by this**, ich mache mir dies zu Nutz(en).
16. **Bestow tributes on**, (einem) den Tribut erweisen.

der Zorn: *wrath, anger.*
zornig: *angry.*

zürnen (dat.): *to be angry.*
(*related with* zerren: (**tear**), *distort, vex.*)

das Zerrbild: *caricature,* "*distorted figure.*"

weichen (str.): *to give in.*
unausweichlich: *inevitable.*
weich: *soft, tender.*

weichen (wk.): *to soften.*
die Weiche: *softness.*
weichlich: *delicate, effeminate.*

der Weichling: **weakling**, *tenderling.*
verwichenes Jahr: *last year.*

The Wreck[1] (1).

"As I was once sailing," said the captain, "in a fine stout ship across the banks[2] of Newfoundland, one of those heavy fogs which prevail in these parts rendered it impossible for us to see far ahead[3] even in the daytime, but at night the weather was so thick[4] that we could not distinguish any object at twice the length of the ship.[5] I kept lights at the mast-head, and a constant watch forward to look out for fishing-smacks, which are accustomed to lie at anchor[6] on the banks. The wind was blowing a smacking breeze,[7] and we were going at a great rate[8] through the water. Suddenly the watch gave the alarm[9] (of) 'A sail ahead!'[10]—it was scarcely uttered before[11] we were upon her. She was a small schooner[12] at anchor, with her broadside towards us.[12] The crew were all asleep, and had neglected to hoist[13] a light. We struck her just amidships.[14] The force, the size, and weight of our vessel bore her down below the waves; we passed over her and were hurried on[15] our course."

1. **Wreck** (of a ship), das **Wrack**.

To go to wreck and ruin, zu Grunde gehen.
To be wrecked, stranden; scheitern.

2. **Banks**, *here*, die Bank (sgl.); *Newfoundland*, Neufundland; *farther on, banks means sandbanks:* die Sandbänke.

das Ufer des Flusses.
das Gestade des Meeres.
eine der grössten Banken; die Schulbank (*pl.* ⸚e).

3. **Ahead**, vorwärts.

4. **Thick**, *here*, trübe, finster.

Through thick and thin, durch dick und dünn.
In the thick of the fight, in dichtesten Schlachtgewühl.

5. **At twice . . . ship**, auf das Doppelte der Schiffslänge.

6. **Lie at anchor**, vor Anker liegen.

7. *Say:* es wehte eine frische Brise.

8. **At a great rate** (speed), mit grosser Schnelligkeit.

At the rate of (*comm.*), zum Preise von.
Rate of interest, der Zinsfuss.
Rates and taxes, Steuern (f.) und Abgaben.
At this rate (*manner*), auf diese Art.
A first-rate hotel, Hotel (n.) ersten Ranges.
At any rate, auf jeden Fall.

9. **Alarm**, das Alarmzeichen.

10. **A sail ahead**, ein Segel in Sicht.

11. *Say:* so fuhren wir schon darüber weg.

12. ein kleiner Schooner, der mit der Breitseite nach uns zu vor Anker trieb.

13. **To hoist**, *here*, auf'hissen.

To hoist anchors, die Anker lichten.
The hoist (*elevator*), der Aufzug.

14. **Amidships** (adv.), mittschiffs.

15. **Hurry on**, *here*, vorwärts'treiben.

THE WRECK (2).

As the crashing[1] wreck was sinking beneath us, I had a glimpse of two or three half-naked wretches rushing from her cabin;[2] they just started from their beds to be swallowed shrieking by the waves. I heard their drowning[3] cry mingling with the wind. The blast[4] that bore it to our ears swept[5] us out of all further hearing. I shall never forget that cry! It was some time before we could put the ship about,[6] she was under such headway.[7] We returned, as nearly as we could guess, to the place where the smack was anchored. We cruised about[8] for several hours in the dense fog. We fired signal-guns,[9] and listened if we might hear the halloo of any survivors; but all was silent—we never saw or heard anything of them more.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

1. **Crash**, krachen.
2. **Cabin**, die Kajüte; Koje.
3. **Drowning**, *here*, halb erstickt.
4. **Blast**, der Windstoss; (of gunpowder) die Explosion.
   Blast of trumpets, der Trompetenschall.
5. *Say:* thrust us so far away, that we could hear nothing more.
6. **To put about**, wenden.
7. Paraphrase and connect the two sentences.
   To make headway (fig.), Fortschritte machen.
8. **Cruise about**, umher′kreuzen.
9. **Fire signal-guns**, Signalschüsse ab′feuern.

Schmecken: *to taste;* das Essen schmeckt ihm nicht, *he does not like (relish) his food.*	der Geschmack: *the taste.* schmackhaft: *tasty;* ein schmackhaftes Gericht.	geschmackvoll: *tasteful.* geschmacklos: *tasteless, insipid.*
trübe: *dull, turbid.* trüben: *make turbid, afflict.*	betrüben: *afflict.* die (das) Trübsal: *sorrow.*	trübselig: *sorrowful.* die Trübseligkeit = Trübsal.
das Kreuz: cross. in die Kreuz und Quer: *in all possible directions.*	kreuzen: 1. *make sign of the cross;* 2. *to thwart;* 3. *to* **cruise**. kreuzigen: *crucify.*	Kreuzigung: *crucifixion.* kreuzbrav: *thoroughly honest.*

Coketown.

Coketown was a town of red brick,[1] or of brick that would have been red if the smoke and ashes[2] had allowed it; but as matters stood, it was a town of unnatural red and black, like the painted face of a savage. It was a town of machinery[3] and tall chimneys,[4] out of which interminable serpents of smoke trailed[5] themselves for ever and ever,[6] and never got uncoiled.[7] It had[8] a black canal (in it), and a river that[9] ran purple with ill-smelling dye,[9] and vast piles of building full of windows, where there[10] was a rattling and a trembling[10] all day long, and where the piston[11] of the steam-engine worked[12] monotonously up and down, like the head of an elephant in a state of melancholy madness. It contained several large streets all very like one another, and many small streets still more like one another, inhabited by people equally like one another, who all went in and out at the same hours, with the same sound upon the same pavements,[13] to do the same work, and to whom every day was the same[14] as yesterday and to-morrow, and every year *the counterpart* of the last and the next.”
—Charles Dickens.

1. **Brick**, der Ziegel (=**tile**).
2. **Ashes** (soot), der Russ.
3. **Machinery**, *say*, machines.
4. **Chimney**, der Schornstein; (**Kamin'**).
5. Ascended.
6. Constantly.
7. *Say:* zur Ruhe kommen.
8. Possessed.
9. der rot und übelriechend dahinfloss.
10. **It rattled** (rasseln) and . . .
11. **Piston**, der Kolben.
12. Went.
13. **Pavement**, das Pflaster.
    To pave, pflastern.
    To pave the way for (fig.), einem den Weg bahnen (zu).
14. **The same as**, gerade wie.
    It is all the same to me, es ist mir einerlei.
    One and the same, ein (invariable) und der- (die-, das-) selbe.
    The very same, eben der- (die-, das-) selbe.

---

fliessen: *flow.*
das Floss: **float**, *raft.*
flössen: *cause to flow.*
er flösste mir Mut ein: *he inspired me with courage.*
der Fluss: *river.*
flüssig: *liquid.*
der Überfluss (an): *abundance (in).*
überflüssig: *superfluous.*

OLIVER CROMWELL.

Till the commencement of this century, when that wonderful man (Napoleon) arose,[1] who, by the splendour of his victories and the extent[2] of his empire, threw all preceding adventurers into the shade,[3] the name of Cromwell stood without a parallel[4] in the history of civilised Europe. Men looked with feelings of awe on him who was able to seize the government of three powerful kingdoms and to impose the yoke of servitude on the necks[5] of the very men who had fought under his command to emancipate[6] themselves from the less arbitrary sway[7] of their hereditary sovereign. That he who accomplished this was no ordinary personage, all must admit; and yet, on[8] closer investigation, we shall discover little (that was) sublime or dazzling in his character. Cromwell was not the meteor which surprises and astounds by the brilliancy and rapidity of its course. Cool, cautious, and calculating,[9] he stole on[10] with slow and measured pace; and while with secret pleasure he toiled[11] up the ascent to greatness, he laboured to persuade the spectators that he was reluctantly[12] borne forward[13] by an interior irresistible force, by the march of events,[14] the necessities of the State, the will of the army, and even the decree[15] of the Almighty. — HALLAM.

1. **Arise**, sich erheben.

   A dispute arises, ein Wortwechsel entsteht.

2. **Extent**, Ausdehnung; der Umfang.

   To the extent of, bis zum Betrage von.
   To a certain extent, gewissermassen.

3. **Throw into the shade**, in Schatten stellen; verdunkeln.

   A shade higher, eine Kleinigkeit höher.

4. **The parallel**, die Parallele; (adj.) parallel; gleich.

   Run parallel to, gleich (parallel) laufen mit.
   Without a parallel, ohne (seines, ihres) Gleichen.

5. **Impose upon the neck**, auf den Nacken legen.

   Impose, auf'bürden (dat.); auf'erlegen (*p. p.* auferlegt): ich habe mir eine schwere Last auferlegt.
   Impose upon (*cheat*), hintergehen (insep.), täuschen.

6. **Emancipate**, befreien.

7. **Sway** (rule), die Gewalt, Herrschaft.

8. bei genauerer Prüfung.

9. **Calculating**, berechnend.

10. **Steal on**, vorwärts schleichen.

Steal a march upon one, einem zuvor'kommen; einen Vorsprung gewinnen.

11. sich empor'arbeiten (zu).

12. **Reluctantly**, wider Willen.

13. **Borne forward**, angetrieben.

14. **March of events**, der Gang der Ereignisse.

15. **Decree**, der Ratschluss; das **Dekret**.

---

heben: *lift*, **heave**.
der Hebel: *lever, pulley.*
erheblich: *considerable.*
die Hefe: *yeast.*
erhaben: *sublime* (*old p. p. of* erheben).

der Habicht: **hawk**.
die Haft: *custody, prison.*
heftig: *vehement.*
heften (*caus. of* haften): *fasten, stitch.*

das Heft: 1. *hilt, handle;* 2. *writing-book.*
behufs (gen.): *in behalf of.*
haften für: *be answerable for; to bail.*

haben: **have**.
die Habe: *property.*
fahrende Habe: *movables.*

Hab' und Gut: *goods and chattels.*
die Habgier: *avarice, greed.*

behäbig: (colloq.) *comfortable.*
der Hafen: *harbour*, **haven**.

THE PHILOSOPHER AND THE CHILD.

The labours of the man of science are at once the most humble[1] and the loftiest which man can undertake. He only does what every little child does from its first awakening into life, and must do every moment of its existence;[2] and yet he aims at[3] the gradual approximation[4] to divine truth itself. If, then, there exists no difference between the work of the man of science and that of the merest child, what constitutes[5] the distinction? Merely the conscious self-determination.[6] The child observes what accident brings before it, and unconsciously forms its notion[7] of it; the so-called practical[8] man observes what his special work forces upon[9] him, and he forms his notions upon it with reference to[10] this particular work. The man of science observes what he intends to observe, and knows why he intends it. The value which the peculiar[11] object has in his eyes is not determined by accident, nor by an external cause, such as the mere connection[12] with [the] work to be performed, but by the place which he knows this object to hold in the general universe of knowledge,[13] by the relation[14] which it bears[15] to other parts of that general knowledge.—PRINCE ALBERT.

---

1. **Humble**, bescheiden.
    Your humble servant, Ihr ergebener Diener.
2. **Existence**, das Dasein, Leben.
3. **Aim at**, streben nach; erstreben (acc.).
4. **Approximation**, Annäherung (an).
5. **Constitute**, aus'machen.
6. **Self-determination**, Selbstbestimmung.
7. **Notion**, der Begriff; die Meinung.
8. **Practical**, praktisch.
9. **Force upon**, auf'dringen (dat.).
10. **With reference to**, in Bezug auf (acc.); in betreff (gen.).
    He made no reference (allusion) to what had occurred, er machte keine Anspielung auf das Vorgefallene.
11. **Peculiar** (special), besonder.
12. **Connection**, der Zusammenhang.
    Business connections, Handelsverbindungen.
13. **Universe of knowledge**, das Gebiet der Wissenschaft.
14. **To bear relation to**, im Verhältnis stehen zu.
15. **Which it bears** = "in which it stands."

The Old Woman (1).

Old Stephen crossed the street with his eyes bent upon the ground,[1] and thus was walking sorrowfully[2] away, when he felt a touch upon his arm. It was not the touch he needed most at such a moment—the touch that could calm the wild waters of his soul,[3] as the uplifted[4] hand of the sublimest love and patience could abate[5] the raging of the sea—yet it was a woman's hand too. It was an old woman, tall and shapely[6] still, though withered by time,[7] on whom his eyes fell when he stopped and turned. She was very cleanly and plainly dressed, had[8] country mud upon her shoes, and was newly come from a journey.

---

1. **Bent upon the ground**, zu Boden gesenkt.
2. **Sorrowfully** = sadly.
3. **Waters of his soul**, die Wogen seiner Seele (die Woge, *wave*).
    With heart and soul, von ganzer Seele.

4. **Uplifted**, erhoben.

5. **Abate** (tr.), stillen, mildern.

Abate (intr.), nach'lassen, ab'nehmen.
The wind abates, der Wind legt sich.

6. **Shapely**, wohlgestaltet.

7. **Withered by time**, welk vom Alter.

8. *Turn:* her shoes were soiled (beschmutzt) from the highroad (die Landstrasse).

THE OLD WOMAN (2).

The flutter of her manner,[1] in the unwonted noise of the streets; the spare shawl,[2] carried unfolded[3] on her arm; the heavy umbrella and little basket; the loose long-fingered gloves, to which her hands were unused; all bespoke[4] an old woman from the country, in her plain holiday clothes, come[5] into Coketown on an expedition of rare occurrence. Remarking[6] this at a glance,[7] with the quick observation[8] of his class, Stephen Blackpool bent[9] his attentive face—his face, which, like the faces of many of his order,[10] by dint of[11] long working with eyes and hands in the midst of a prodigious noise, had acquired the concentrated[12] look with which we are familiar in the countenances of the deaf—the better to hear what she asked him.—CHARLES DICKENS.

1. **Flutter of her manner**, ihr aufgeregtes Wesen.

2. **Spare shawl**, das dünne Tuch.

3. **Unfolded**, *say*, loose.

4. **Bespoke** = betrayed.

5. *Turn:* who had made a rare journey to Coketown.

6. *Arr:* Stephen B., who with the quick . . . remarked this at a glance, bent, &c.

7. **At a glance**, mit einem Blicke.

8. **Observation**, *here*, die Beobachtungsgabe ("faculty of obs.").

9. **Bent**, senkte.

To bend one's way to, seinen Weg ein'schlagen nach.
To be bent on pleasure, vergnügungssüchtig sein.
He is bent on carrying his point, er ist fest entschlossen seine Sache durchzusetzen.

10. **Order** (rank), der Stand, die Klasse ["die höhern Klassen der Gesellschaft"].

Order (*decoration*), der Orden [*Order of the Garter*, Hosenband-Orden].
To give orders, Befehle erteilen.
Restore public order, die öffentliche Ordnung wiederher'stellen.
To give an order for (*Com.*), einen Auftrag geben auf (acc.).

11. **By dint of**, durch.

12. **Concentrate**, konzentrieren.

CHARLES DICKENS *to* GEORGE ELIOT (1).

"TAVISTOCK HOUSE, LONDON,
Monday, 17*th Jan.* 1858.

"MY DEAR SIR,—I have been so strongly affected[1] by the two first tales in the book you have had the kindness to send me through Messrs. Blackwood, that I hope you will excuse my writing to you to express my admiration of their extraordinary merit. The[2] exquisite truth and delicacy,[3] both of[4] the humour[5] and the pathos of these stories, I have never seen the like of; and they have impressed me in a manner that I should find it very difficult to describe to you, if I had the impertinence[6] to try.

"In addressing[7] these few words of thankfulness to the creator of the Sad Fortunes of the Rev. Amos Barton, and the sad love-story of Mr. Gilfil, I am (I presume) bound to adopt the name that it pleases that excellent writer to assume. I can suggest[8] no better one; but I should have been strongly disposed, if I had been left[9] to my own devices, to address the said[10] writer as a woman."

1. **Affected by** (touched), ergriffen von.

2. *Say:* for (*in*) exquisite truth.

3. **Delicacy** (of feeling), die Anmut, Zartheit.

Delicacy (*dainty*), die Delikatesse; der Leckerbissen.

4. *Say: what concerns*, was . . . betrifft.

5. **Humour** (wit), der Humor; *pathos*, der Pathos. *The corresp. adject. are* humoristisch, pathetisch.

In good (*bad*) *humour*, bei guter (schlechter) Laune.

In the humour for, aufgelegt zu.

Out of humour, verstimmt.

6. **Impertinence** (rudeness), die Dreistigkeit; (impudence) die Unverschämtheit.

7. **To address** (a request, &c.), richten an.

8. **Suggest** (hint at), hin′deuten auf.

9. **Left**, *here*, überlassen (insep.); *device = supposition.*

10. **Said** (before-mentioned), vorerwähnt, besagt.

CHARLES DICKENS *to* GEORGE ELIOT (2).

"I have observed what[1] seemed to me such womanly[2] touches in those moving[3] fictions,[4] that the assurance on the title-page[5] is insufficient to satisfy me even now. If they originated with no woman, I believe that no man ever before had the art of making himself mentally so like a woman since the world began.

"You will not suppose that I have any vulgar[6] wish to fathom[7] your secret. I mention the point as one of great interest to me—not of mere curiosity. If it should ever suit your convenience and inclination to show me the face of the man, or woman, who has written so charmingly, it will be a very memorable[8] occasion to me. If otherwise, I shall always hold that impalpable[9] personage in loving attachment[10] and respect, and shall yield myself up to all future utterances from the same source, with a perfect confidence in their making me wiser and better.—Your obliged and faithful servant and admirer,

"CHARLES DICKENS."

1. *Insert* manches *as antecedent to "what."*

2. **Such womanly touches,** *say*, so ausgeprägt weibliche Züge.

Touch (lit.), die Berührung; (in Berührung kommen mit).
Sense of touch, der Tastsinn.
To give the finishing touch (*to*), die letzte Hand legen (an).
He is out of touch with modern ideas, er hat die Fühlung mit den modernen Ideen verloren.

3. **Moving** (touching), rührend.

4. **Fiction** (work of fiction), der Roman (novel).

Fiction (*falsehood*), die Erdichtung, Unwahrheit.
Fictitious (*unreal*), unecht; (*feigned*) erdichtet.

5. **Title-page,** das Titelblatt.

6. **Vulgar** (common), gewöhnlich, gemein.

Vulgar (*low*), pöbelhaft, vulgär.

7. **To fathom,** ergründen.

8. **Memorable,** denkwürdig.

9. **Impalpable personage,** unergründliche Persönlichkeit.

10. **Attachment,** die Zuneigung.

SILAS MARNER (1).

Turning towards the hearth, where the two logs[1] had fallen apart,[2] and sent forth[3] only a red uncertain glimmer,[4] he seated himself on his fireside chair, and was stooping to push his logs together, when, to his blurred vision,[5] it seemed as if there were gold on the floor in front of the hearth. Gold!—his own gold—brought back to him as mysteriously as it had been taken away! He felt his heart begin to beat violently, and for a few moments he was unable to stretch out his hand and grasp the restored[6] treasure. The heap of gold seemed to glow and get larger beneath his agitated[7] gaze. He leaned forward at last, and stretched forth his hand; but instead of the hard coin[8] with the familiar[9] resisting outline,[10] his fingers encountered[11] soft warm curls. In utter amazement, Silas fell on his knees and bent his head low[12] to examine the marvel: it was a sleeping child—a round, fair thing,[13] with soft yellow rings all over its head. Could this be his little sister come back to him in a dream—his little sister whom he had carried about in his arms for a year before she died, when he was a small boy without shoes or stockings?

1. **Log**, der (Holz)block.
   Log cabin, das Blockhaus.
   Log-book, das Logbuch; Schiffsjournal.
2. **Fall apart**, auseinander fallen.
   Apart (adv.), beiseite, für sich.
   They went apart (*separately*), abgesondert; einzeln.
   Apart from, abgesehen von.
3. **Send forth** (spread), verbreiten.
4. **Glimmer**, der Schimmer; Glimmer.
5. **Blurred vision**, verschwommener Blick.
6. **Restored**, *here*, wiedergewonnen.
7. **Agitate**, auf′regen.
8. *Use the pl.; coin*, die Münze (E. **mint**).
   To pay one in one's own coin, Gleiches mit Gleichem vergelten.
9. **Familiar**, bekannt, vertraut.
   Familiar (*affable*) *manner*, die leutselige Art.
   Familiar (*conversant with*), bewandert in.
10. **Resisting outline**, fester Umriss.
11. **Encounter**, treffen auf.
    Encounter difficulties, auf Schwierigkeiten stossen.
12. **Low**, *say*, zur Erde.
13. *Say:* das Geschöpf.

der Schatz: *treasure.*
schätzen: *value, rate.*
schätzbar: *estimable, precious.*
gering schätzen: *think slightly of.*
ich schätze es für eine Ehre: *I deem it an honour.*
Schätzung: *valuation.*

biegen: *bend*, **bow.**
biegsam: *flexible.*
beugen (trans. wk.): *bend* (*causat. of* biegen), *to humble.*
bücken: *stoop.*
der Bogen: **bow.**
in Bausch und Bogen: *in the lump.*
der Bug: *bow of a ship.*
die Bucht: *bay, cove.*
der Buckel: *hump*(*back*).

SILAS MARNER (2).

That was the first thought that darted across[1] Silas' blank wonderment.[2] Was it a dream? He rose (to his feet) again, pushed his logs together, and throwing on some dried leaves and sticks,[3] raised a flame;[4] but the flame did not disperse the vision—it only lit up more distinctly the little round form of the child and its shabby[5] clothing. It was very much like his little sister. Silas sank into his chair powerless, under the double presence[6] of an inexplicable[7] surprise and a hurrying influx[8] of memories. How and when had the child come in without his knowledge?[9] He had never been beyond[10] the door. But along with[11] that question, and almost thrusting it away, there was[12] a vision of the old home and the old streets leading to Lantern Yard—and within[13] that vision another, of the thoughts which had been present with him in those far-off scenes.[14] The thoughts were strange to him now, like old friendships impossible to revive; and yet he had a dreamy feeling that this child was somehow[15] a message[16] come to him from that far-off life.

---

1. **Darted across** = forced itself upon Silas in his . . ., [sich auf'drängen (dat.)].

2. **Blank wonderment,** das starre Erstaunen.

Blank space, der leere Raum.

3. **Sticks** (for firing), Holzstücke.

4. **Raise a flame**, eine Flamme an'fachen.

5. **Shabby**, ab'getragen; **schäbig.**

6. **Double presence,** *say*, twofold (zwiefach) impression.

7. **Inexplicable** = extraordinary (*lit.* unerklärlich).

8. **Hurrying influx,** *here say*, der überwältigende Strom.

To hurry (intr.), sich beeilen.

I am in a hurry, ich habe Eile.

In the hurry of business, im Drange der Geschäfte.

9. **Without his knowledge,** ohne sein Wissen.

10. **Beyond** (prep.), über—hinaus (acc.).

Beyond all blame, über jeden Tadel erhaben.

Beyond hope, hoffnungslos.

Beyond the Alps, jenseits der Alpen.

It is beyond my power, es übersteigt meine Macht.

It is beyond measure, über alle Massen.

11. **Along with** = beside.

12. *Say:* appeared a picture.

13. *Arr.:* with that picture appeared another which recalled (ins Gedächtnis zurück'rufen) the thoughts.

14. **Far-off scenes** = distant times.

15. **Somehow**, auf irgend eine Weise.

16. **Message**, die Botschaft.

To go a message, einen Auftrag aus'richten.
Send a message to me, lassen Sie mich wissen.

---

das **Wesen**: *being, nature, disposition, fr. old infin.* wesen, *to be.*
anwesend: *present.*
die Anwesenheit: *presence.*
abwesend: *absent.*
die Abwesenheit: *absence.*
wesentlich: *essential(ly).*
verwesen: 1. (intr.) *decay*; 2. (tr.) *manage*; 1. die Blumen sind verwest; 2. er verweste (= verwaltete) das Geschäft seines Vaters.
der Verweser (= Verwalter): *administrator, manager.*

SILAS MARNER (3).

It stirred fibres[1] that had never been moved in Raveloe—old quiverings[2] of tenderness—old impressions of awe[3] at the presentiment of some Power presiding over his life; for his imagination had not yet extricated[4] itself from the sense of mystery[5] in[6] the child's sudden presence, and had formed no conjectures[7] of ordinary natural means by which the event could have been brought about.[8] But there was[9] a cry on the hearth: the child had awaked, and Marner stooped to lift it on his knee. It clung[10] round his neck, and burst[11] louder and louder into that mingling of inarticulate cries with "mammy"[11] by which little children express the bewilderment[12] of waking. Silas pressed it to him, and almost unconsciously uttered sounds of hushing tenderness,[13] while he bethought[14] himself that some of his porridge,[15] which had got cool by the dying fire, would do[16] to feed the child with if it were only warmed up a little.—GEORGE ELIOT.

1. **Stirred fibres**, *say*, awakened sentiments.

To stir (tr.), rühren, (er)regen.
To stir the fire, das Feuer schüren.
To stir to rebellion, zur Empörung auf'wiegeln (*causat. of* (be)-wegen).
Stir (intr.), sich regen, sich bewegen.
Not a breath of air is stirring, es regt sich kein Lüftchen.
Fibre, die Fiber [das Fieber, *fever*].

2. **Quivering**, Regung.

To quiver, beben, zittern.
The quiver (*sheath for arrows*), der **Köcher**.

3. **Awe**, die (Ehr)furcht, Scheu (vor).

To stand in awe of one, sich vor einem scheuen.

4. **Extricate**, *say*, to free.

5. **Mystery,** das Geheimnisvolle.

6. Of (gen.).

7. **Form conjectures,** Vermutungen an'stellen (über).

8. **Bring about,** zuwege (zustande) bringen.

9. Remember that "to be," when not merely auxiliary, must in German be translated according to the meaning it bears from the context, *e.g.*—

> *Let him be,* lass ihn in Ruhe (zufrieden).
> *What is that to you?* was geht das Sie an?
> *Have you been to town?* sind Sie in die Stadt gegangen?

10. **To cling** (intr.), sich klammern [E. "**clamp**"] an.

11. Paraphrase the whole sentence: wept louder and louder, calling (indem . . .) for mammy (Mama) in inarticulate (unverständlich) cries.

12. **Bewilderment,** Verwirrung.

13. **Sounds . . . tenderness,** *say,* tender words.

14. **To bethink** (oneself), sich besinnen.

15. **Porridge,** der Haferbrei.

16. What is the meaning of "do" here? (*cp.* Note 9).

---

scheu: **shy,** *timid.*
scheuen: *fear, shun.*
die Scheu: *timidity, respect.*

der Abscheu; *abhorrence.*
abscheulich: *detestable.*

verab'scheuen (insep.): *detest.*

das Heim *or* die Heimat: **home,** *native place.*
geheim *or* heimlich: *secret.*
heimisch: *homelike, domestic.*

das Geheimnis: *secret, mystery.*
geheimnisvoll: *mysterious.*
Heinrich: *Henry.*

heim'suchen: *haunt, punish* ("*seek in one's very home*").
heimtückisch: *malicious, treacherous.*

THE CHILD IS FATHER TO THE MAN (1).

As in the soft round lineaments[1] of childhood we trace[2] the features which after years will develop into[3] more decided forms, so in the moral[4] lineaments of the child may be traced the characteristics[5] of the man. But an apparent solution of continuity[6] takes place in the transition period; so that the youth is in many respects unlike what he has been in childhood, and what he will be in maturity.[7] In youth, when the passions begin to stir, the character is made[8] to swerve from the orbit previously traced.[9] Passion, more than character, rules the hour. Thus we often see the prudent child turn out an extravagant[10] youth; but he crystallises[11] once more into prudence as he hardens with age. This was certainly the case with Goethe, who, if he had died young, like Shelley or Keats, would have left a name among the most genial, not to say extravagant (of) poets; but who,[12] living to the age of eighty-two, had fifty years of crystallisation[13] to[14] acquire a definite figure which perplexes[15] critics. In his childhood, scanty as the details[16] are which enable us to reconstruct it, we see the main features of the man.

1. **Lineament**, der (Gesichts)zug.

2. **Trace**, aus′spüren.

3. **Develop into**, sich entwickeln zu.

4. **Moral** (in the sense of mental), geistig.

Moral effect, die moralische Wirkung.

5. **Characteristics**, das Merkmal, Kennzeichen; *here it would be better to say for ——s*, der Charakter.

6. **Solution of continuity**, Aufhebung des Zusammenhanges.

7. **In maturity**, in reifen Jahren.

8. **Is made to swerve** = deviates (ab′weichen).

9. **Orbit . . . traced**, die früher festgehaltene Bahn.

10. **Extravagant**, unbesonnen; aus′schweifend.

11. **Crystallises into**, *here say*, returns to, or assumes again.

Crystal, das Krystall.

12. *Begin a new sentence:* but as he.

13. **Crystallisation**, *here say*, Sammlung.

14. *Turn:* in which he . . . acquired.

15. **To perplex**, stutzig machen; verwirren.

16. **Detail**, Einzelheit; das Detail (pron. as in Fr.).

In detail, umständlich.

THE CHILD IS FATHER TO THE MAN (2).

And first of his many-sidedness.[1] Seldom has a boy exhibited such variety of faculty.[2] The multiplied[3] activity of his life is prefigured[4] in the varied tendencies[5] of his childhood. We see him as an orderly,[6] somewhat formal,[7] inquisitive,[8] reasoning, deliberative[9] child, a precocious learner,[10] an omnivorous[11] reader, (and one) who thinks for himself—so independent,[12] that at six years of age he doubts the beneficence of the Creator; at seven, doubts the competence[13] and justice of the world's judgment. He is inventive, poetical, proud, loving,[14] volatile, with a mind open to all influences, swayed[15] by every gust,[16] and yet,[17] while thus swayed as to the direction of his activity, he is master over that activity. The most diverse characters, the most antagonistic [18] opinions interest him. He is very studious,[19] no bookworm [20] more so; alternately busy with languages, mythology, antiquities,[21] law,[22] philosophy, poetry, and religion; yet he joins [23] in all festive scenes,[24] gets familiar with life in various forms, and stays out late o' nights. He is also troubled by melancholy,[25] dreamy moods forcing him ever and anon into solitude.—G. H. LEWES, *Life of Goethe.*

1. **Many-sidedness,** Vielseitigkeit.

2. **Variety of faculty,** mannigfältige Fähigkeiten.

3. **Multiplied,** *here*, vielfältig.

4. **Is prefigured,** *turn freely*, lässt sich erkennen (an).

5. **Tendency,** Neigung; die Tendenz'.

6. **Orderly,** ordentlich; bescheiden.

7. **Formal,** förmlich.

8. **Inquisitive,** wissbegierig; neugierig (what is the difference?).

9. **Deliberative,** bedächtig.

10. **A precocious learner,** ein frühreifer Schüler.

11. **Omnivorous,** Alles verschlingend.

12. **Independent,** selbstständig, unabhängig.

13. **Competence,** die Zulänglichkeit.

To enjoy a competence, sein gutes Auskommen haben.

14. **Loving,** liebevoll; **volatile,** flüchtig.

15. **Swayed,** hin und her getrieben.

16. **Gust,** der Windhauch.

17. *Arr.:* and yet he remains master (Herr) of . . ., although he is swayed in the direction . . .

18. **Antagonistic,** widersprechend.

19. **To be studious,** fleissig studieren.

20. **Bookworm,** der Bücherwurm.

21. **Antiquities,** die Altertumskunde.

22. **Law** (science of law), Rechtswissenschaft.

23. **Joins** = takes part in.

24. **Festive scene,** *say*, Festlichkeit.

25. **Troubled by melancholy,** von Trübsinn gequält.

der Geist: *spirit, mind,* **ghost.**
geistig: *intellectual, spiritual. N.B.*—geistige Getränke: *spirituous liquors.*

geistlich: *religious, ecclesiastic.*
Geistliche(r): *clergyman.*
geisterhaft: *supernatural, ghost-like.*

begeistern: *inspire.*
geistreich: *ingenious, witty.*
Geistesbildung: *mental culture.*

sehen: **see.**
der Seher: *seer, prophet.*
das Ansehn: *aspect: respect.*
die Vorsehung: *providence.*

(die Sicht): **sight.**
Ansicht: *view, opinion.*
Vorsicht: *foresight, caution.*
Nachsicht: *forbearance, indulgence.*

sichtbar: *visible.*
besichtigen: *view, inspect.*

I.—**schaffen**(st.): *create*, **shape.**
(schöpfen : 1. *create.*)
der Schöpfer : *Creator.*
schöpferisch : *creative.*
das Geschöpf : *creature.*
der Schöffe : *sheriff, justice.*
schöpfen : 2. *draw water*, **scoop.**
unerschöpflich : *inexhaustible.*

II.—**schaffen** (wk.): *procure, work.*
der Schaffner : (*railway*) *guard.*
das Geschäft : *business.*
beschäftigen : *occupy.*

SOME HINDOO CUSTOMS.

I.

The Hindoo, as a rule, is very mild in his manners. He rarely lifts his hand or his voice. He cannot understand such boisterous games as cricket or football. From his earliest days he was taught to cry softly, like John Wesley. His games, therefore, are all remarkably quiet, and consist, when young, of rolling about in the dust, and never saying a word. Their speakers, too, are all very quiet in their oratory, and I was informed that they looked upon using the arms in speaking as vulgar. I had therefore once or twice to apologise to the students for my British habit of waving my arms while speaking, and told them it arose from the pressure of my thoughts within me. The Hindoo is brown in colour; but please don't call him black, as that offends him.

II.

He would *like* to be white; and a young man whose skin is a little fairer than his neighbour's has an extra chance in the matrimonial market. I greatly pleased them once by quoting an old remark of Dr. Guthrie's, that in all probability Adam and Eve were brown, and that while the negroes had got their brown colour darkened by the sun, we had got ours bleached out by the rain! The Hindoo, in the country, builds his house of clay dried in the sun; in the city, it is of brick and wood. It is simply a bedroom; the kitchen, drawing-room, and dining-room being all outside. He likes to build his house opening into a courtyard, and when his sons get married, he builds their houses adjoining his, so that the poorest Hindoo's house comes to be like a baron's castle with his retainers clustered around him.—*What I saw of India and its People*, R. LAWSON.

"AS YOU LIKE IT."

I.

During the time that France was divided into provinces (or dukedoms as they were called), there reigned in one of these provinces a usurper, who had deposed and banished his elder brother, the lawful Duke.

The Duke, who was thus driven from his dominions, retired with a few faithful followers to the forest of Arden; and here the good Duke lived with his loving friends, who had put themselves into a voluntary exile for his sake, while their lands and revenues enriched the false usurper; and custom soon made the life of careless ease they led here more sweet to them than the pomp and uneasy splendour of a courtier's life. Here they lived like the old Robin Hood of England, and to this forest many noble youths daily resorted from the court, and did fleet the time carelessly, as they did who lived in the golden age.

II.

In the summer they lay along under the fine shade of the large forest trees, marking the playful sports of the wild deer; and so fond were they of these poor dappled fools, who seemed to be the native inhabitants of the forest, that it grieved them to be forced to kill them to supply themselves with venison for their food. When the cold winds of winter made the Duke feel the change of his adverse fortune, he would endure it patiently, and say, "These chilling winds which blow upon my body are true counsellors—they do not flatter, but represent truly to me my condition; and though they bite sharply, their tooth is nothing like so keen as that of unkindness and ingratitude. I find that, howsoever men speak against adversity, yet some sweet uses are to be extracted from it; like the jewel, precious for medicine, which is taken from the head of the venomous and despised toad."

III.

In this manner did the patient Duke draw a useful moral from everything that he saw; and by the help of this moralising turn in that life of his, remote from public haunts, he could find tongues in trees, books in the running brooks, sermons in stones, and good in everything.

The banished Duke had an only daughter, named Rosalind, whom the usurper, Duke Frederick, when he banished her father, still retained in his court as a companion for his own daughter Celia. A strict friendship subsisted between these ladies, which the disagreement between their fathers did not in the least interrupt, Celia striving by every kindness in her power to make amends to Rosalind for the injustice of her own father in deposing the father of Rosalind; and whenever the thoughts of her father's banishment, and her own dependence on the false usurper, made Rosalind melancholy, Celia's whole care was to comfort and console her.

IV.

One day when Celia was talking in her usual kind manner to Rosalind, saying, "I pray you, Rosalind, my sweet cousin, be merry," a messenger entered from the Duke, to tell them that if they wished to see a wrestling-match, which was just going to begin, they must come instantly to the court before the palace; and Celia, thinking it would amuse Rosalind, agreed to go and see it. In those times wrestling was a favourite sport, even in the courts of princes, and before fair ladies and princesses. To this wrestling-match therefore Celia and Rosalind went. They found that it was likely to prove a very tragical sight; for a large and powerful man who had long been practised in the art of wrestling, and had slain many men in contests of this kind, was just going to wrestle with a very young man, who, from his extreme youth and inexperience in the art, the beholders all thought would certainly be killed.

V.

When the Duke saw Celia and Rosalind, he said, "How now, daughter and niece, are you crept hither to see the wrestling? You will take little delight in it, there is such odds in the men. In pity to this young man, I would wish to dissuade him from wrestling. Speak to him, ladies, and see if you can move him." The ladies were well pleased to perform this humane office, and first Celia entreated the young stranger that he should desist from the attempt; and then Rosalind spoke so kindly to him, and with such feeling consideration for the danger he was about to undergo, that instead of being persuaded by her gentle words to forego his purpose, all his thoughts were bent to distinguish himself by his courage in this lovely lady's eyes. He refused the request of Celia and Rosalind in such graceful and modest words, that they felt still more concern for him, he concluding his refusal with saying—

VI.

"I am sorry to deny such fair and excellent ladies anything. But let your fair eyes and gentle wishes go with me to my trial, wherein, if I be conquered, there is one shamed that was never gracious; if I am killed, there is one dead that is willing to die. I shall do my friends no wrong, for I have none to lament me—the world no injury, for in it I have nothing; for I only fill up a place in the world which may be better supplied when I have made it empty."

And now the wrestling-match began. Celia wished the young stranger might not be hurt; but Rosalind felt most for him. The friendless state which he said he was in, and that he wished to die, made Rosalind think that he was, like herself, unfortunate. And she pitied him so much, and so deep an interest she took in his danger while he was wrestling, that she might almost be said at that moment to have fallen in love with him. The kindness shown this unknown youth by these fair and noble ladies gave him courage and strength, so that he performed wonders, and in the end completely conquered his antagonist, who was so much hurt that for a while he was unable to speak or move.—Charles Lamb.

The Pilgrimage to Mecca.

I.

Annually in the twelfth month of the Mahomedan Calendar may be seen the stream of the Faithful plodding their way over the deserts of Arabia to the Holy Places of Islam. Mussulmans from all parts of the world are there, obedient to the commandment of the Koran, that all who have the means should visit the holy city of Mecca once in their lifetime. Many of them, ragged and destitute, dependent for bare subsistence upon the charity of the richer pilgrims or the Sultan, fall out of the caravans and die by the way. A still larger number fall prey to the disease which rages in the crowded camps at Mecca and Medina. The greater number of the pilgrims come from Turkey, and for some months before the pilgrimage begins preparations are being made in Constantinople for the Sacred Caravan which is to bear the Sultan's gifts to the Holy Places. The gifts, after being displayed in one of the mosques for a few weeks, are loaded on camels bedecked with bright trappings, and taken across to Scutari. Here the camels and their attendants, the guardians of the caravan, and the pilgrims who wish to travel under its protection, encamp for a few days before embarking for Beyrut. From this port the journey is made across the desert to Mecca and Medina.

II.

The latter—the Prophet's City—which is about 250 miles north-west of Mecca, and stands in the most fertile part of the Hedjaz, contains Mahomet's tomb, but is not like the Kaaba, an imperative place of pilgrimage, although about a third of those who go to Mecca continue their journey to the tomb. In a huge courtyard of the Mosque of El Haran the Faithful assemble to worship before the Kaaba. The courtyard is described by the few European travellers who have had the intrepidity to make the pilgrimage, as a large quadrangular space, enclosed within four arched colonnades, some twenty feet high, surmounted with small domes. The Black Stone, which is the chief object of veneration, is set in a massive silver boss, and is about the size of a man's head. Its colour would appear to be due to the kissing of the thousands of pilgrims, as Mr. Keane, who was barbarous enough to scratch it with a ring, found the stone white beneath the surface. On this stone Isaac was bound for sacrifice, according to the most accepted legend; according to others it is all that remains of the angel who had charge of Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden, and who was petrified for so ill-fulfilling his task as to allow the serpent to beguile them.—*Black and White.*

THOMAS ERSKINE *to* HIS SISTER.

I.

"FLORENCE, *Feb.* 1824.

"MY DEAR CHRISTIAN,—My dear sister, what a strange world it is! It seems most extraordinary to myself, that I can, in the midst of such a world of death and sin and sorrow, find enjoyment in marble cut into certain forms, and colours laid on canvas; and yet I really find immense enjoyment in it—I feel almost as if I had got a new sense.

"There must have been a most surpassing genius in these old Greek sculptors. It is not merely perfect beauty and perfect grace which they have drawn out from the secret treasures of nature, but they have transmitted to us their highest thoughts and their loveliest sentiments, all fresh, and living, and breathing as when they first appeared to their own inspired souls, in a form that cannot be mistaken, and infinitely more eloquent and imposing than any language."

II.

"No words can describe the Niobe, that union of all that is desolate and all that is noble—the desperation proceeding from the knowledge that her enemies were deities, and yet that heroism which never even glances at her own personal danger. The Venus is very beautiful, though I prefer the Niobe infinitely. The perfect modesty of the Venus is at least equal to her beauty. There are many most delightful pictures too, several very fine Raphaels and Titians, which last rise daily in my judgment in spite of Sir Joshua Reynolds. I cannot sympathise with Sir Joshua either, in his admiration for Michael Angelo. . . . I have just been interrupted by a visit from a descendant of Michael Angelo, who has asked me to his house to see some of the remains of his illustrious ancestor. Cumming Bruce is here, whom I like much; and young Mure of Caldwell, a fine young man.—Yours affectionately,

"T. E."

From A SPEECH OF MR. JOHN BRIGHT,
on the 13*th October* 1843.

I.

"A long day's march is made by steps, and each step is but a small advance; but after an hour's march, or some hours' march, if we stand and turn round, and look to the point from which we started, we are able to form a correct opinion of the progress we have made. And now my mind reverts to the commencement of this great struggle with feelings of no ordinary kind. I am just now looking into the small room in Manchester where, on one memorable evening, seven men met—men not of title, not of wealth, not pretending to brilliant genius, but men of honest character, men of common-sense, men having deep sympathies with their fellow-men, and men of high resolve."

II.

"They met, and determined that that meeting should be the commencement of a struggle which should never terminate but with the termination of the existence of the accursed Corn Laws. And from that hour to this I have traced step by step the progress we have made. We have seen fallacy after fallacy scattered to the winds; we have seen foe after foe driven from every field; we have seen triumph after triumph achieved; and now, from that small room in which seven men met, we are here assembled in this gorgeous building, and with this great, this magnificent audience. And it can be but the harbinger of the triumph of this great cause."

MRS. CARLYLE *to* A FRIEND.

I.

"CRAIGENPUTTOCK, 1829 (?).

"So many talents are wasted, so many enthusiasms turned to smoke, so many lives spoilt, . . . for want of recognising that it is not the greatness or littleness of the duty nearest hand, but the spirit in which one does it, that makes one's doing noble or mean. I can't think how people who have any natural ambition, and any sense of power in them, escape going *mad* in a world like this, without the recognition of that. . . . I had gone with my husband to live on a little estate of *peat-bog*, that had descended to me all the way down from John Welsh, the Covenanter, who married a daughter of John Knox. *That* did not, I am ashamed to say, make me feel Craigenputtock a whit less of a peat-bog, and a most dreary, untoward place to live in. . . . Further, we were very poor, and, further and worst, being an only child, and brought up to 'great prospects,' I was sublimely ignorant of every branch of useful knowledge, though a capital Latin scholar and a very fair mathematician."

II.

"It behoved me, in these astonishing circumstances, to learn to sew! Husbands, I was shocked to find, wore their stockings into holes, and were always losing buttons; and I was expected to 'look to all that.' Also it behoved me to learn to cook!—no capable servant choosing to live at such an out-of-the-way place. . . . It was plainly my duty as a Christian wife to bake at home! So I sent for Cobbett's 'Cottage Economy,' and fell to work at a loaf of bread. But, knowing nothing about the process of fermentation, or the heat of ovens, it came to pass that my loaf got put into the oven at a time that myself ought to have been put into bed. And I remained the only person not asleep in a house in the middle of a desert."

III.

"One o'clock struck, and then two, and then three, and still I was sitting there, in an immense solitude, my whole body aching with weariness, my heart aching with a sense of forlornness and *degradation* that I, who had been so petted at home, whose comfort had been studied by everybody in the house, who had never been required to *do* anything but cultivate my mind, should have to pass all those hours of the night in watching a loaf of bread—which might not turn out bread after all! Such thoughts maddened me, till I laid down my head on the table and sobbed aloud. It was then that somehow the idea of Benvenuto Cellini sitting up all night watching his 'Perseus' in the furnace came into my head, and suddenly I asked myself—'After all, in the sight of the Upper Powers, what is the mighty difference between a statue of Perseus and a loaf of bread, so that each be the thing one's hand has found to do!'"—*Life of Jane Welsh Carlyle*, MRS. IRELAND.

A. W. KINGLAKE *to* HIS PUBLISHERS.

I.

"BRIGHTON, *Sept.* 10, 1862.

"In 1856 Lady Raglan placed in my hands the whole of Lord Raglan's papers, including not only all the secret despatches, but also the whole of his private correspondence with ministers, with ambassadors, with generals, with reigning sovereigns, and, in short, with all the public characters who were brought into relations with him in the course of the war. This being known, I came to be looked upon as the person to whom every information requisite for establishing the truth ought to be given, and the result has been that—without, I must own, any great energy on my part—I have become the depositary of almost all that is known on the subject. To give you an idea of the extent to which this has gone, I may mention that the French military authorities sent over an officer of rank with a 'mission,' as they called it, to impart to me what they had to say about the battle of the Alma."

II.

"Now, in the army and amongst public men there is a belief that grave injustice was done at the time to this country, and to some of our officers and other public servants, including Lord Raglan himself, and it is imagined —I don't say whether rightly or wrongly—that I am the person who, with the materials above spoken of, is to redress all the wrongs and throw a new light on the war. The result is that for a long time, I may almost say, I have been shunning society on account of the eternal 'When? When?' with which I am met wherever I go. It may be said, that is the interest of the mere upper classes and not of the great public; but still, as it is an interest based on a jealous love for our common country and respect for the character of public men, it is evidently very different from that sort of curiosity which is sometimes confined to a mere section of the community.

"My aunt, Mrs. Woodforde, with whom I am staying, is so anxious to see the relation of author and publisher established between us that she, in her extraordinary kindness, has determined to take a flight to Scotland to endeavour to arrange the matter with you. She is quite *au fait* at business — more so, indeed, than I am — and has my entire confidence."—*Annals of a Publishing House*, Mrs. Oliphant.

APPENDIX.

LEAVING CERTIFICATE, 1897.

HIGHER GRADE AND HONOURS (I.).

[Part of Section I. (translation into English) and the whole of Section IV. (Literature and Commercial Correspondence) have not been included for want of space.]

2. Translate into German ;—

A gentleman, who had a large family and only a small income, took a house in the country, where he simply kept a housemaid and a coachman. After a time he was annoyed, almost every morning, by hearing these two quarrelling in the kitchen. At last, being unable to bear the disturbance any longer, he called the man and woman before him, reproached them with their objectionable behaviour, and asked the cause of it. The woman complained that she had far too much to do, and that the coachman, who had a pretty easy place, would not relieve (*say*, assist) her by fetching the milk and cream from a farmhouse, which was a mile away. The coachman, in reply, maintained that it was not his business to fetch the milk, and that he had not been hired to do anything of the sort. "What do you consider your duty is?" asked the master. "My duty," replied the man, "is to clean the carriage, to see to the horses, and to drive." "You are quite right," said the gentleman, with a smile ; "you understand your duty perfectly well, and shall do nothing beyond it ; but I order you henceforth to get the horses and carriage out every morning at seven o'clock, and to drive the maid to the farmer's for the milk." Ever afterwards the man went for the milk on foot without murmuring.

SECTION II.—GRAMMAR.

3. Give the nominative and genitive singular, and nominative plural, with the definite article, of the German words for *any ten* of these :—judge, judgment, loss, fool, collar, colour, herald, trial, jewel, monument, nosegay, nobleman, spectre, corpse, vassal.

4. Distinguish between—*das Mal*, *das Mahl; die Schranken*, *die Schranke; das Gesinde*, *das Gesindel; die Festigkeit*, *die Festlichkeit; geistig*, *geistlich; ernstlich*, *ernsthaft; ruchlos*, *geruchlos; erfindlich*, *erfinderisch; ich freue mich darauf*, *ich freue mich darüber.*

5. Mention six nouns that are used only in the plural ; and add the definite article to, and form plurals of—*Dank*, *Lob*, *Rat*, *Tod*, *Unglück*, *Vergnügen.*

6. Show, by examples, under what conditions the pronominal adjectives *welch*, *solch*, *all*, and *manch* remain without signs of gender and case-form.

7. Give the third person singular present, imperfect, and perfect indicative of *sich besinnen*, *vollbringen*, *hochhalten*, *willfahren*, *miszbrauchen;* and the second person singular imperative and the past participle of *widersprechen*, *vergeben*, *teilnehmen*, *loslassen*, *ablesen.*

8. Express in German :—What o'clock is it ? It is a quarter-past twelve, half-past two, a quarter to three ; at ten o'clock ; London, 3rd January 1897 ; the reign of Charles the First ; in one hour and a half ; in three years and a quarter ; the armies of two nations ; the inhabitants of the two countries ; with three horses.

SECTION III.—PHILOLOGY AND WORD-FORMATION.

9. Give five nouns in *-schaft;* five in *-tum* (two of them masculine, if possible), and two in *-rich.* Add the definite article and meaning to each word.

10. What difference is there, in respect of formation, between the two abstract nouns *Ewigkeit* and *Leichtigkeit?* Mention three other examples of each kind.

11. Form adjectives (with their meanings) from *any ten* of these :—*Wasser*, *Kunst*, *Leben*, *genug*, *Blei*, *Nutzen*, *Braut*,

Kaufmann, *Mädchen*, *Vertrauen*, *Misztrauen; loben*, *raten*, *sitzen*, *arbeiten*.

12. Form abstract nouns (with the definite article and meaning) from *any ten* of these :—*heiser*, *minder*, *trocken*, *sparsam*, *fromm*, *schüchtern*, *schwer*, *stolz*, *finster*, *bereit*, *nahe*, *matt*, *warm*, *böse*, *begierig*.

13. Give the German or English *etymological* equivalents of *any ten* of *each* of the following two sets of words ; adding, in each case, the exact meaning of the German word :—

(*a*) Cross, yoke, maid, luck, murder, nail, besom, need, hearth, path, plough ; to steal, to dream, to shove, to leap.

(*b*) *Busen*, *Zwerg*, *Tau*, *Flucht*, *Zweig*, *Krebs*, *Spitze*, *Teig*, *Haufe*, *Born*, *Siegel*, *Zähre*, *Hirsch*, *schlagen*, *schinden*.

LEAVING CERTIFICATE, 1897.

HONOURS II.

2. *a.* This little excursion to Richmond was long remembered by these three. It was the last of their meetings before Sheila was ushered into the big world, to busy herself with new occupations and cares. It was a pleasant little journey throughout ; for as they got into the landau to drive back to town, the moon was shining high up in the southern heavens, and the air was mild and fresh, so that they had the carriage opened, and Sheila, well wrapped up, lay and looked around her with a strange wonder and joy as they drove underneath the shadows of the trees and out again into the clear sheen of the night. They saw the river, too, flowing smoothly down between its dark banks ; and somehow here the silence checked them, and they hummed no more those tunes they used to sing at Borva. Of what were they thinking, then, as they drove through the silver night, along the lonely road? The young husband, at least, was rejoicing at his great good fortune that he had secured for ever to himself the true-hearted girl who now sat opposite him, with the moonlight touching her face and hair ; and he was laughing to himself at the notion that he did not properly appreciate her, or understand her, or perceive her real character. If not he, who then?

—WILLIAM BLACK, *A Princess of Thule*.

b. (1) I spoke to him about it, but he would not be advised.

(2) I know him only too well, he is not to be depended upon.

(3) She excused herself for having offended my wife.

(4) My landlord has not yet succeeded in letting his house.

(5) My brother beat the fellow, although he was nearly twice his size.

(6) She was highly amused at my having taken the matter seriously.

(7) The pitcher may go to the well once too often.

(8) Don't make a mountain of a molehill.

SECTION II.—PHILOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

3. Mention five pairs of adjectives (with the meanings) showing the difference of meaning attaching to the affixes *-lich* and *-isch*.

4. Give any adjectives in *-sam* you know, for which there are parallel adjectives in English; and add six others in *-sam* which correspond to English adjectives derived from the same stem, but by other affixes.

5. Form verbs, with or without prefixes (not prepositions), from the adjectives—*heisz*, *süsz*, *stark*, *schwach*, *blind*, *mild*, *arm*, *alt*, *breit*, *nahe*, *bitter*, *gütig*. Add the meaning to each verb.

6. Give the meaning, and explain the formation, of *any ten* of the following words, noting any irregularities in this respect:—*namentlich*, *flehentlich*, *wahrheitsgetreu*, *Vöglein*, *ich stürbe*, *Groszmutter's Liebling*, *hiesig*, *Apfelsine*, *lächerlich*, *Kiefer*, *allenfalls*, *des Nachts*, *Tintenfasz*, *leibhaftig*, *zusehends*, *männiglich*.

7. Show, by examples, to what German sounds the English dentals *t*, *th*, *d* usually correspond; and state whether a similar correspondence obtains in regard to the gutturals and labials.

8. Give the German for the following sets of words (each to be formed from the same radical word):—to obey, obedient, obedience; to follow, the following (suite), consequence (sequel), consequently, compliant; to write, the writ, scribe, writer (author); to sing, a song, singer, capable of being sung; to

drink, a drink (draught), drink (beverage), drinker, drunk (intoxicated), drunkenness; true, truth, truthful, truthfulness, veracious; to envy, envy, envious.

9. Give idiomatic meanings (or, if possible, synonyms) of *any ten* of the following past participles:—*verdrossen*, *verlegen*, *ungezogen*, *besonnen*, *bescheiden*, *aufgelegt*, *beherzt*, *befangen*, *entschlossen*, *ausgelassen*, *betagt*, *entsetzt*, *unterthan;* and mention three others which (like *ungezogen*) are only used negatively (with *un-*).

10. Give two distinct German words, with the definite article, for each of *any ten* of the following English homonyms (words with more than one distinct meaning):—race, sentence, bank, capital, air, word, act, subject, row, match, party, column, step, habit, case.

11. Show, by examples, in what cases the infinitive active is used in German—(*a*) for the present participle active; (*b*) for the past participle passive; (*c*) for the present participle passive; (*d*) for the imperative.

LEAVING CERTIFICATE, 1898.

HIGHER GRADE AND HONOURS (I.).

2. Whilst travelling through the desert, a poor Arab met with a spring of clear, sweet, sparkling water. Used as he was only to brackish wells, such water as this appeared to his simple mind worthy of the ruler of a mighty empire; and filling his leather bottle from the spring, he determined to go and present it to the Caliph himself. The poor man had to journey a long way before he reached the presence of his sovereign, and laid his humble offering at his feet. The Commander of the Faithful did not despise the little gift brought to him with so much trouble. He ordered some of the water to be poured into a cup, drank it, and thanking the Arab with a smile, presented him with a suitable reward. The courtiers around pressed forward, eager to taste of the wonderful water; but, to the surprise of all, their master forbade them to touch a single drop. After the poor traveller had quitted the royal presence with a joyful heart, the Caliph turned to his attendants, and thus explained his conduct: "During the travels of the Arab,"

said he, "the water in his leather bottle has become impure and distasteful; but it was an offering of love, and as such I have received it with pleasure. But I well knew that, had I suffered another to partake of it, he would not have concealed his disgust; and therefore I forbade you to touch the draught, lest the heart of the poor man should have been wounded."

SECTION II.—GRAMMAR.

3. Give the nominative and genitive singular, and nominative plural, with the definite article, of the German words for *any ten* of these:—curse, floor, report, spark, contemporary, jaw, success, complaint, storey, partridge, campaign, barn, damage, proverb, impression.

4. Distinguish between—*der Nachen*, *der Nacken; die Verstellung*, *die Vorstellung; die Bürgschaft*, *die Bürgerschaft; der Flur*, *die Flur; mündlich*, *mündig; kostbar*, *köstlich; gräulich*, *greulich; er nährt sich*, *er nähert sich; er hat angegriffen*, *er ist angegriffen; er versteht sich nicht darauf*, *er versteht sich nicht dazu.*

5. Decline the German of—(*sing.*) one of my sons; (*plur.*) two of his friends; (*sing. and plur.*) all my paper; all this bad wine; many an honest man.

6. Enumerate five nouns that have different plurals, according to a difference of gender and meaning.

7. Give the second person singular of present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, and imperative; and the past participle and infinitive with *zu*, of—*zerbrechen*, *abnehmen*, *verderben*, *aufessen*, *erlöschen*, *vollbringen*, *miszverstehen*, *miszfallen*, *wohlthun*, *umge'hen.*

8. Illustrate, by complete sentences, the meaning and government of the following prepositions (or postpositions):—*kraft*, *halber*, *unbeschadet*, *laut*, *zufolge.*

SECTION III.—PHILOLOGY AND WORD-FORMATION.

9. Give five nouns (with the definite article and meaning) that have double forms in the nominative singular, without difference of gender and meaning; and three others that have throughout double forms of the same meaning, but of different gender.

10. State the rule as to the gender of compound nouns, and mention six exceptions (formed with *-mut*, *-teil*, &c.).

11. Form abstract nouns (with the definite article and meaning) from *any ten* of these :—*roh*, *heisz*, *dreist*, *stark*, *eitel*, *dunkel*, *edel*, *übel*, *geschwind*, *kalt*, *feucht*, *standhaft*, *genug*, *lieblos*.

12. Form adjectives (with their meanings) from *any ten* of these :—*Tier*, *Greis*, *Mühsal*, *Rätsel*, *Sommer*, *Witz*, *Dichter*, *Eifer*, *Jugend*, *Kummer*, *Stolz*, *Furcht*, *Gottesfurcht*, *Schwester*, *Frost*, *Trost*.

13. Give the German or English words corresponding *etymologically* to *any ten* of *each* of the following two sets of words, adding in each case the actual meaning of the German word:—

(*a*) axe, wave, crutch, thicket, token, crane, pilgrim, post, ferry, brook, watch, bare, to stretch, to burst.

(*b*) *auch*, *Reue*, *Ziegel*, *Bürste*, *Pfütze*, *Eid*, *schadlos*, *nach*, *bleich*, *Geisz*, *Malve*, *Harke*, *Zunder; zeigen*, *rascheln*.

LEAVING CERTIFICATE, 1898.

HONOURS II.

2. *a*. When the ordinary emigrant female bids farewell to Europe to make her home in a new land, whether she leaves a mud cabin in Ireland, a vine-grower's cottage in Germany, or a mansion in England, the moment in which she catches a last glimpse of the land of her youth is one of the most emotionally intense of her existence. The life she leaves may have been one of hardship, even of bitterness, and the life she goes to may be one of ease, but binding her to the land behind her are ties of blood and childish remembrance of home—ties which shape themselves as mightily in the mud cabin or the back slum of the city as in the palace. She is leaving the one spot on earth where she is an object of interest and importance to her fellows. When she arrives in the new world, it is to that home that she sends the record of her marriage, there that she knows the story of her sorrows and her gains will be waited for. And as her children grow up, the first stories they hear are not of Colonial things and people, but European—of fields in which little children gather butter-

cups and daisies, of ice and snow, and the roaring life of cities; and as they play in the hot sun, they think how beautiful those fields must be, and wonder how the daisy chains are made, and how primroses smell; and at night in their little hot beds they dream of ice and snow, and fancy they hear the roar of cities.—OLIVE SCHREINER, *Stray Thoughts on South Africa.*

b. (1) I know the man quite well, but I don't know where he comes from.
(2) I always thought him to be honest, but I was mistaken.
(3) My sister called the other day on your cousin, but she was not in.
(4) If you follow my advice you will not have to repent your action.
(5) Why in the world did you not answer his letter sooner?
(6) We must insist on your doing your duty.
(7) Every man is the carver of his own fortune.
(8) In doing so you will kill two birds with one stone.

SECTION II.—PHILOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

3. Form sentences to show the meaning and construction of five of the "conjunctions" *allein*, *gleichwohl*, *mithin*, *wiewohl*, *je nachdem*, *folglich*, *wofern.*

4. Exemplify the use of five of the following "adverbs":—*weitaus*, *lediglich*, *zusehends*, *ausnehmend*, *beiläufig*, *kurzum*, *einigermaszen.*

5. German adjectives of material (wooden, golden, &c.) are formed with two distinct affixes: give four such adjectives of each kind, and show in what way one of these affixes grew out of the other.

6. Form derivative verbs, by means of prefixes (not prepositions), from *any ten* of these:—*fest*, *lustig*, *Gabe*, *warm*, *kalt*, *fein*, *bleich*, *Mantel*, *Volk*, *Ursache*, *dreist*, *Blatt*, *Haupt*, *frisch.* Add the meaning of each verb.

7. Point out the anomalous features in the formation of *Redner*, *Zauberin*, *Büchelchen;* and give two other words of each kind showing a similar irregularity.

8. Give the German for *five* of the following sets of words (each set to be formed from the same radical word):—to hunt, the hunt, hunter, huntsmanship;—to laugh, a laugh, laughter, laughable, ridiculous;—to flatter, flatterer, flattery, flattering (complimentary), flattering (adulatory);—to dissemble, hypocrite, hypocritical, hypocrisy;—to deceive, deceit, deceitful, deception, deceptive;– child, childish, childishness (childish trick or matter), childlike, childhood.

9. State and exemplify, as fully as you can, the rules as to the sequence of tenses in subordinate clauses of "reported speech" (or "indirect statement").

10. Give two distinct German words, with the definite article, for *any ten* of the following English homonyms (words with more than one distinct meaning):—end, brow, countryman, charge, moor, suit, dish, bond, cause, measure, stop, judgment, custom, herd, temple.

11. Show, by examples, to what English sounds the German labials *p*, *b*, *f* (*v*, *pf*) usually correspond when occurring as initial, as medial, and as final letters.

FIRST INTRODUCTION TO

GERMAN PHILOLOGY.*

I.—THE INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

§ **1.** THE German language is one of the great Indo-European (also called Indo-Germanic or Aryan) family of languages. Under this name we comprise (*a*) the languages of the greater part of India, of Armenia, and of Persia; and (*b*) all the languages of Europe, with the exception of Finnish, Hungarian, Turkish, and the peculiar Basque language, which is spoken in a district of Northern Spain.

§ **2.** The Indo-European family is divided into the following groups of languages:—

(1) The Indian group (the classical Sanskrit language and modern Hindostanee).
(2) The Iranian or Persian group.
(3) Armenian.
(4) Greek.
(5) Albanian.
(6) Italic (the ancient languages of Italy, the chief of these being Latin, and the Romance languages, *i.e.* the languages which have sprung from Latin, viz., French, Provençal, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian).
(7) The Keltic group (Welsh, Gaelic, Irish, Manx, Armoric).
(8) The Slavonic group (Russian, Polish, Lithuanian).
(9) **The Germanic or Teutonic group.**

---

* Braune, "Gotische Grammatik," "Althochdeutsche Grammatik."—Paul, "Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik."—Behaghel, "Die deutsche Sprache."—Blatz, "Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik."—Duden, "Etymologie der neuhochdeutschen Sprache."—Kluge, "Etymologisches Wörterbuch."—Wilmanns, "Deutsche Grammatik."—Strong, "Introduction to the Study of the History of Language."—Whitney, "German Dictionary."—Brandt, "German Grammar."

§ **3**. A comparative study of these languages (Comparative Philology) leads us to the conclusion that they are all descended from one common stock, that the various nations which speak them were once, at an epoch long before the dawn of history, a single race speaking one language. Of this primitive Indo-European language no traces have been preserved, and we can only obtain an idea of its nature by comparing the oldest languages of the Indo-European family with one another, and by endeavouring to reconstruct the primitive language in accordance with the principles that govern linguistic growth.

§ **4**. The Germanic or Teutonic group of languages is divided into three main branches—the East Germanic, the North Germanic, and the West Germanic.

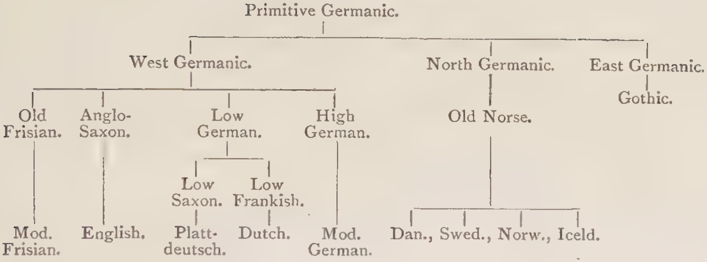
(1) The East Germanic group is represented by Gothic, the language of the Goths, a people who lived on the Lower Danube in the third and fourth centuries of our era.

(2) The North Germanic group consists of Swedish, Danish, Norwegian, and Icelandic, with the older dialects of these languages (Old Norse, Old Swedish).

(3) The West Germanic group embraces the remaining Germanic languages, which fall into the following four divisions :—

- (A) Frisian, spoken on the northern coast of Holland.
- (B) Anglo-Saxon, now represented by Modern English.
- (C) Low German, comprising two main dialects—
  - (*a*) Plattdeutsch, the language spoken by the inhabitants of the North and North-West of Germany, the modern representative of Low Saxon.
  - (*b*) Dutch, the modern language of Holland ; in its earliest form known as Low Frankish.
- (D) High German. This last branch of the West Germanic group was originally spoken only in the higher or southern parts of Germany. At an early date, however, it obtained an ascendency over the Low German dialects of the North, and is now the literary language of the educated classes throughout Germany.

§ **5**. The Germanic languages may be conveniently tabulated as follows :—


Primitive Germanic.
West Germanic.
North Germanic.
East Germanic.
Gothic.
Old Frisian.
Anglo-Saxon.
Low German.
High German.
Old Norse.
Low Saxon.
Low Frankish.
Mod. Frisian.
English.
Plattdeutsch.
Dutch.
Mod. German.
Dan., Swed., Norw., Iceld.

II.—GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GERMANIC LANGUAGES.

LAWS OF SOUND-SHIFTING.

§ **6.** The relationship in which the Germanic languages stand to the other Indo-European languages and to one another is most clearly illustrated by their **consonants.** It is found that certain consonants in passing from the Indo-European mother-speech into Germanic have undergone a more or less uniform change; that they have been "shifted," as it is technically called. And it is further found that these same consonants undergo a second shifting process in passing from the common Germanic condition into High German. This Sound-shifting, or *Lautverschiebung*, is often called "Grimm's Law," after the great German philologist Jakob Grimm, who first clearly formulated it.

§ **7.** Only a certain group of consonants are affected by this sound-shifting process, namely, the so-called "mutes," which, for purposes of illustrating the law, may be conveniently classified as follows:—

	Tenues.	Aspirates.	Mediæ.
Dentals	*t*	*th* (*z*)	*d*
Labials	*p*	*f*	*b*
Gutturals	*k* (*c*)	*ch* (*h*)	*g*

If we compare words (in which these consonants occur) in some non-Germanic language, such as Sanskrit, Greek, or Latin, with the cognate words in a Low Germanic speech like Gothic or English, we shall find that **the tenues have been shifted into aspirates, the aspirates into mediæ, and the mediæ into tenues**, thus :—

t p, and **k** (**c**)	**th**, **f**, and **ch** (**h**)	**d**, **b**, and **g**
into	into	into
th, **f**, and **ch** (**h**)	**d**, **b**, and **g**	**t**, **p**, and **k**

Again, if we follow the same words in which these consonants occur, into High German, we shall find that they have been shifted one step further, that **the aspirates of the common Germanic language have been converted into mediæ, the mediæ into tenues, and the tenues into aspirates.**

§ 8. It must be borne in mind, however, that both the first and the second sound-shifting processes are subject to many irregularities owing to the interference of other laws. The fewest exceptions are to be found in the case of the dentals *d*, *t*, and *th* (in the second sound-shifting represented by *z*). The following examples will make the two processes clear :—

I.—DENTALS.

Indo-Europ.,	*t* (Lat. *tu*)	*th* (Gr. *thugátēr*)	*d* (Lat. *decem*)
Germanic,	*th* (Engl. *thou*)	*d* (Engl. *daughter*)	*t* (Engl. *ten*)
High Ger.,	*d* (Ger. *du*)	*t* (Ger. *Tochter*)	*z* (Ger. *zehn*)

II.—LABIALS.

Indo-Europ.,	*p* (Lat. *super*, *pater*)	*f* (Lat. *folium*)	*b* (Lat. *cannabis*)
Germanic,	*f* (*v*) (Eng. *over*, *father*)	*b* (Eng. *blade*)	*p* (Eng. *hemp*)
High Ger.,	*b* (*f*) (Ger. *über*, *Vater;* O.H.G. *fatar*)	*p* (*b*) (Ger. *Blatt*)	*f* (*pf*) (Ger. *Hanf*)

III.—GUTTURALS.

Indo-Europ.,	*k* (*c*) (Lat. *cor, cordis*)	*ch* (*h*) (Gr. *chórtos;* Lat. *hortus*)	*g* (Lat. *genu*)
Germanic,	*h* (Eng. *heart*)	*g* (Eng. *garden*)	*k* (Eng. *knee*)
High Ger.,	*h* (*g*) (Ger. *Herz*)	*g* (Ger. *Garten*)	*k* (*ch*) (Ger. *Knie;* O.H.G. *chniu*)

N.B.—The initial letters of the words "tenues," "mediæ," "aspirates" may be used as a mnemonic to represent the sound-shifting process. Thus:—

Indo-Europ.		*Germanic.*		*High German.*	
Tenues	>	Aspirates	>	Mediæ	= TAM
Aspirates	>	Mediæ	>	Tenues	= AMT
Mediæ	>	Tenues	>	Aspirates	= MTA

§ **9**. The First or Germanic Sound-shifting took place at a very early date, long before the primitive Germanic language had differentiated into the various individual languages that we now know; the Second or High German Sound-shifting, on the other hand, was not completed until as late as the eighth century of our era.

§ **10**. As this Second process is of the greatest importance for the study of Modern German, we must consider it in more detail. Taking English as typical of a Germanic language unaffected by the High German Sound-shifting, the following examples will illustrate the changes which the mutes have undergone in passing into High German. We must carefully distinguish three possible positions of the mute—(1) when it occurs at the beginning of a word (initially), (2) in the middle (medially), (3) at the end (finally).

I.—DENTALS.

Germanic.		High German.
(*a*) *t* ...	>*z* (initially):	tide, ten, tame, tale, toll, *Zeit, zehn, zahm, Zahl, Zoll,*
		tongue, tear, tongs, tile, *Zunge, Zähre, Zange, Ziegel,*
		twig, twitter. *Zweig, zwitschern.*
	>*ss* (medially):	better, nettle, water, to mete. *besser, Nessel, Wasser, messen.*
	>*z*, *tz*, *s*, *sz* (finally):	heart, mint; set; lot; hot, *Herz, Münze; setzen; Los; heisz,*
		hate, goat, vat, sprout, *Hasz, Geisz, Fasz, Sprosse,*
		spit, skirt, slit. *Spiesz, Schürze, schlitzen.*
(*b*) *th* ...	>*d* (in all positions):	thick, thorn, though, through, *dick, Dorn, doch, durch,*
		thatch, thrash, throng; feather, *Dach, dreschen, dringen; Feder,*
		brother, seethe; oath, south, *Bruder, sieden; Eid, Süd(en),*
		booth, hearth, scathe. *Bude, Herd, schaden.*
(*c*) *d* ...	>*t* (in all positions):	day, deaf, dreary, doughty; *Tag, taub, traurig, tüchtig;*
		steady, (n)adder, idle, *stetig, Natter, eitel* (*vain*),
		wade; knead, wield, beard, *waten; kneten, walten, Bart,*
		instead, tide. *anstatt, Zeit.*

II.—LABIALS.

GERMANIC. HIGH GERMAN.

(*a*) *p* ... >*pf* (initially): path, pan, pepper, plant,
Pfad, *Pfanne*, *Pfeffer*, *Pflanze*,

plough, pillar, pale (pole),
Pflug, *Pfeiler*, *Pfahl*,

parson, Palatinate, paw.
Pfarrer, *die Pfalz*, *Pfote*.

>*f*, *ff*, *pf* (medially and finally): pipe, help; to hope; to hop,
Pfeife, *helfen*; *hoffen*; *hüpfen*,

to stop, carp, soap, step,
stopfen, *Karpfen*, *Seife*, *Stufe*,

to slip, leap (elope).
schlüpfen, *laufen* (to run).

(*b*) *f* (*v*) ... >*f* (*v*) (initially and medially): finger, freeze; full, folk,
Finger, *frieren*; *voll*, *Volk*,

fowl; oven,
Vogel (bird); *Ofen* (stove),

Schaufel, haven.
shovel, *Hafen*.

>*b* (medially and finally): silver, thief, dove, wife.
Silber, *Dieb*, *Taube*, *Weib*.

(*c*) *b* ... >*b* (instead of *p*): bring, bone, rub.
bringen, *Bein*, *reiben*.

III.—GUTTURALS.

GERMANIC. HIGH GERMAN.

(*a*) *k* (*c*) ... >*k* (initially): can, knot, clothe.
kann, *Knoten*, *kleiden*.

>*ch* (medially and finally): make, sake, knuckle; seek,
machen, *Sache*, *Knöchel*; *suchen*,

token, week, book, eke (also),
Zeichen, *Woche*, *Buch*, *auch*,

reek, thick, bleak,
Rauch, *dicht*, *bleich* (pale),

awake, weak.
wach, *weich* (soft).

(*b*) *h* (*ch*)... > *h*(*ch*) (instead of *g*): heart, hear, horn, beech, breach.
Herz, *hören*, *Horn*, *Buche*, *Bruch*.

(*c*) *g* ... > *g* (instead of *k*, which, however, is found in Old High German): guest, bridegroom, gift,
Gast, *Bräutigam*, *Gabe*,
(O.H.G. *Kast*).
sing; Agl.-Sax. ēage (eye),
singen; *Auge*,
Agl.-Sax. āgen (own).
eigen.
(O.H.G. *eikan*.)

§ 11. Exceptions:—

(A) *t* usually remains unchanged in the following consonantal groups:—

(*a*) *tr*: true, trust, tread, trough.
treu, *trauen*, *treten*, *Trog*.

(*b*) *ft*: often, soft.
oft, *sanft*.

(*c*) *cht*: daughter, sight, might.
Tochter, *Gesicht*, *Macht*.

(*d*) *st*: stone, stork, master.
Stein, *Storch*, *Meister*.

(B) *d* remains unchanged when preceded by *n*, and also in a few words when preceded by *l* or *r*, *e.g.*—

nd, *ld*, *rd*: wind, round, fiend, sound;
Wind, *rund*, *Feind*, *gesund*;
field, bold; murder.
Feld, *bald* (soon); *Mord*.

(C) *p* remains unchanged when preceded by *s*, and in many words of foreign origin, *e.g.*—

sp: spin, wasp.
spinnen, *Wespe*.

(D) *b*, when preceded by *m*, is assimilated, *e.g.*—

mb > *mm*: lamb, cumber, timber, climb.
Lamm, *Kummer*, *Zimmer*, *klimmen*.

The Accent.

§ **12**. One of the chief characteristics which distinguish the Germanic languages from other Indo-European languages is the law of the Accent. While in a language like Greek the accent may shift from one syllable of a word to another in the course of the grammatical flexion (the Nom., for instance, of the Greek word for "man" is *anér*, but the Voc. is *áner;* the Gen. is *andrós*, while the Acc. is *ándra*), in the Germanic languages **the accent is fixed and unalterable.** It remains upon the same syllable throughout, being quite unaffected by grammatical changes. The syllable which bears the accent is usually the root syllable or first syllable of the word. Thus, Greek *patér* is Gothic *fádar*, German *Váter*, English *fáther*. Again, the Latin *fenéstra* becomes in German *Fénster*.

Verner's Law, or Grammatischer Wechsel.

§ **13**. Verner's Law of Grammatical Change is intimately bound up with the law of Accentuation. We find in the conjugation of certain Germanic verbs a consonantal shifting which is not to be explained by the laws of *Lautverschiebung*, which we have just been considering. The past participle of the German verb *ziehen*, for instance, is *gezogen*, where *h* has been shifted to *g;* the past participle of *schneiden* is *geschnitten*, where there has been a change from *d* to *t*. To explain this change of consonant it is necessary, as the philologist Verner discovered, to go back to the original Indo-European accentuation of the word in which it occurs. Verner established the law that a process of sound-shifting, similar to that of Grimm's Law (*i.e.* from aspirates to mediæ, from mediæ to tenues, and from tenues to aspirates), took place when, in the Indo-European form of the word, the vowel preceding the mute was not accentuated. Now, in the preterite of the strong verbs in the

Germanic languages, the singular forms had originally (that is to say, at a period long before the differentiation of Primitive Germanic into separate languages) the accent on the root of the word, while in the plural forms, as well as in the past participles, the accent lay originally upon the flexional ending. Thus, in Old High German, the pret. sing. *zoh* (*h* = *ch*) of the verb *ziohan* (*ziehen*) had the accent, but the pret. plur. *zugum* was originally accented on the last syllable, with the result that the aspirate *h* (*ch*) passed into the media *g*. To state the rule more concisely, we may say: **The consonants** *d*, *f* (*v*), *h*, *s*,
change into *t*, *b*, *g*, *r*,
if (according to the original Indo-European system of accentuation) the vowel immediately preceding them had not the principal accent.

Examples:—

		Inf.	*Pret. Sing.*	*Pret. Plur.*	*Past Part.*
d >*t* ...	O.H.G.:	snîdan,	sneid,	snitum,	gisnitan.
	German:	*schneiden,*	*schnitt,*		*geschnitten.*
	Cp. the substantives: *die Schneide* (edge), *die Schnitte* (slice), *der Schnitter* (mower).				
		leiden,	*litt,*		*gelitten;*
		sieden,	*sott,*		*gesotten; cp.* Eng. seethe—sodden.
	Cp. further: *Herde—Hirte; Tod—tot.*				
f >*b* ...	O.H.G.:	heffen,	huob,	huobun,	gihaban.
	German:	*heben,*	*hob,*		*gehoben.*
	Cp. die Hefe (yeast), *der Hebel* (lever), both from *heben* (to raise).				
	bedürfen (to require)—*darben* (be in want). *Cp.* also *Hof—hübsch; auf—über.*				
h (*ch*)>*g* ...	O.H.G.:	ziohan,	zôh,	zugum,	gizogan.
	German:	*ziehen,*	*zog,*		*gezogen.* Cp. *Zug, Zügel.*
	O.H.G.:	dîhan,	dêh,	digun,	gidigan.
	German:	*gedeihen,*	*gedieh,*		*gediehen,* but *gediegen* when used as a verbal adject. (genuine, unmixed).
	Cp. also: *der Schwäher* (now *Schwiegervater*)—*Schwager.*				

s > *r* ... *erkiesen*, *erkor* (O.H.G. kôs), *erkoren* (O.H.G. gikoran).
war (O.H.G. was), *gewesen*, from an infinitive *wesen*.
Cp. further: *genesen* (to recover from illness)—*nähren* (to nourish); *Verlust*—*verlieren*; *Frost*—*frieren*; *meist*—*mehr*; *Durst*—*dürre*.

NOTE.—As will be seen from the above examples, the original changes have in many cases been obscured, and we have often to go back to the earlier forms of the Germanic languages to explain the changes as they appear in Modern German.

UMLAUT OR MUTATION.

§ 14. *Umlaut* or Mutation is the technical term for the **modification of an accentuated vowel** (*a* to *ä*, *o* to *ö*, *u* to *ü*, and *au* to *äu*) **under the influence of an** *i* **or** *j* **in the following syllable.** The *Umlaut* remains even when in the course of the development of the language the *i* or *j* has dropped out or has been weakened to *e*. To explain the *Umlaut* in Modern German, it is consequently in most cases necessary to follow the history of the word in which the *Umlaut* occurs back to its earliest forms. Thus the plural of *Gast* is *Gäste*, the *a* being modified to *ä* under the influence of an *i* that has now disappeared; but if we follow the word *Gast* back into Old High German, we shall find that there its plural is *Gasti*, this *i* having been weakened to *e* at the beginning of the Middle High German period of the language. The effect of the following *i* or *j* upon the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u* seems to be to make them approximate more to the sound of *i*. Thus the *Umlaut* of *a* is *ä* (*e*), of *o*, *ö*, of *u*, *ü*, and of *au*, *äu* (*eu*).

Examples:—

(1) *a* > *ä* (*e*) ...	German:	*Gast*, *Gäste*;	*Lamm*, *Lämmer*;
	O.H.G.:	gast, gesti;	lamb, lembir;
		zahm, *zähmen*;	*lang*, *länger*;
		zam, zemm(j)an;	lang, lengiro;
		fahren, *fährt*.	
		faran, ferit.	

German : *Adel*, *edel* (adj.) ; *Land*, *elend* (wretched).
O.H.G. : adal, edili ; land, elilenti ("other land," *i.e.* banished, exiled).

German : *Mann*, *Mensch ; Saal*, *Geselle.*
O.H.G. : man, mennisco ; sal, gisell(j)o.

(2) *o* > *ö* ... German : *hoch*, *höher*, *höchst ; mochte*, *möchte ; Loch*, *Löcher.*
O.H.G. : hôh, hôhir, hôhist ; mohta, mohtî ; loh, lohir.

(3) *u* > *ü* ... German : *gut*, *Güte*, *Wurf*, *Würfel* (dice).
O.H.G. : guot, guotî ; wurf, wurfil.

(4) *au*>*äu* (*eu*) ... German : *Haus*, *Häuser ; Traum*, *er träumt ;*
O.H.G. : hûs, hûsir ; troum, troumit.
hauen—Heu.

Examples of *Umlaut* in English are : Old, elder ; mouse, mice ; "a good instance of 'concealed mutation' is the word 'French,' short for Anglo-Saxon *Frencisc*, from an older form *Francisc*, *i.e.* Frankish" (Skeat).

NOTE 1.—The *Umlaut* of *a* is usually prevented when it is followed by *ch*, *ht*, *cht ;* also when followed by *l* and another consonant (not, however, *ll*), and in many cases when followed by *r* and another consonant. Examples : *lachen*, *wachsen* (originally *hlahjan*, *wachsjan*) ; in M.H.G. *mahtig* (for *mächtig*), *nahte* together with *nehte* as the plural of *naht* (*Nacht*, *Nächte ;* but cp. *Weihnachten*). In Modern German, however, this rule is more frequently broken than observed. Examples with *l* are : *gewaltig*, *salzig*, *schalkisch ;* but, here again, there are frequent exceptions—*einfältig*, *Kälte*, *wälzen*. In the same way *u*, followed by *lt* or *ld*, usually remains unchanged before a syllable containing *i* or *j*. Examples : *geduldig*, *schuldig*, *dulden* (from an original *duldjan*).

NOTE 2.—In the verbs *brennen*, *brannte*, *gebrannt ; kennen*, *kannte*, *gekannt*, the original stem was *bran-*, *kan-* (as we see from Gothic *brannjan*, *kannjan*). According to the rules of *Umlaut*, the infinitive, owing to the *j* in the last syllable of the original word, becomes *brennen*, *kennen ;* in the preterite and past participle, however, the force of the original *i* (Goth. *brannita*, *kannita*) has been lost, and there is consequently no *Umlaut* in these forms. This has also been the case in the verb *denken*, *dachte* (for *da*(*n*)*chte*, the *n* having dropped out, and the *k* being changed to the aspirate *ch* before *t*).

NOTE 3.—In Modern German, *Umlaut* is often used as a convenient aid to inflexion or word formation. The plurals of *Wolf* and *Baum*, for instance, are *Wölfe* and *Bäume*, to distinguish them from the dative singulars *Wolfe* and *Baume*.

BRECHUNG.

§ **15**. In every way analogous to *Umlaut* is the process of vowel change which Grimm called "*Brechung*." **The vowel *e* is changed or "broken" to *i* when followed by a nasal together with some other consonant, or when the following syllable contains (or originally contained) an *i* or *j*;** and in the same way *u* is changed to *o* before *a* or *o* (*u* remains, however, under those conditions which bring about a "*Brechung*" of *e* to *i*). Lastly, the change of ***ie*** to ***eu*** is also due to "*Brechung*."

Examples:—

(1) *e* > *i*: *Recht*, *richten* (orig. rihtjan), *Gericht* (O.H.G. girihti); *Berg*, *Gebirge*; *helfen*, *hilft* (O.H.G. hilfit); *geben*, (*Mit*)*gift* (orig. giftis); *Feder*, *Gefieder*; the *i* of *binden*, *dringen*, *sinnen* is also due to "*Brechung*."

(2) *u* > *o*: *Zug*, *gezogen* (O.H.G. gizogan); *zürnen*, *Zorn*; *Gulden*, *Gold*; *füllen*, *voll*; *Hülle*, *hohl*; *Verdruss*, *verdrossen*; *Gelübde*, *geloben*; *Küche*, *kochen*; *Schluss*, *Schloss*; *Bucht*, *Bogen*; *Huld*, *hold*.

(3) *ie*>*eu*: *siech*, *Seuche*; *biegen*, *beugen*; *Licht* (M.H.G. lieht), *leuchten*. Cp. *Was da kreucht und fleugt* (an earlier form for *kriecht und fliegt*).

ABLAUT.

§ **16**. *Ablaut* is the term applied to **the gradation or change of stem vowels in accordance with definite laws.** According to these laws certain vowels stand in close relationship to one another, and may be arranged in series. This gradation, which occurs in all Indo-European languages, is most clearly seen in the conjugation of the Strong

Verbs. Thus the principal parts of the verb "facere" in Latin are: *facio, feci, factum;* of the French verb "faire": (*je*) *fais*, (*je*) *fis*, *fait;* and of the English and German verb "sing": *sing, sang, sung;* (*ich*) *singe*, (*ich*) *sang*, *gesungen.* But the *Ablaut* series of vowels may also be traced through cognate substantives, as German (*die*) *Binde*, (*das*) *Band*, (*der*) *Bund;* and even in such words as *Zickzack* (zigzag), *Wirrwarr* (hurly-burly), *Singsang* (sing-song), the principle of gradation may be seen at work.

§ **17**. There are in the Germanic languages six classes of Strong Verbs, each characterised by a distinct series of *Ablaut* vowels. In each series there were originally four gradations, which appeared respectively in the following "principal parts": (1) Infinitive; (2) Preterite Singular; (3) Preterite Plural; (4) Past Participle. The verb "to bind" has, for example, in Gothic the following principal parts: infin. *bindan;* pret. sing. *band;* pret. plur. *bundum;* and past part. *bundans;* in Old High German the same parts are as follows: *bindan*, *bant*, *buntum*, and *gibuntan;* in Middle High German: *bindan*, *bant*, *bunden*, and *gebunden.*

NOTE 1.—In Modern German, however, the vowel of the preterite plural has become assimilated to the vowel of the preterite singular, and consequently there are only three principal parts in which a vowel gradation may be seen, namely, *binden*, *band* (*banden*), *gebunden.* Traces of the original double form of the preterite are still to be seen in the two forms *ward* and *wurde* of the preterite of *werden*, and a German proverb still has it: *Wie die Alten sungen, so zwitschern auch die Jungen.*

NOTE 2.—The preterite subjunctive of the verbs *werfen* (*würfe*), *sterben* (*stürbe*), *stehen* (*stünde*), *helfen* (*hülfe*), is not irregular, but is formed from the original **plural** of the preterite indicative.

REDUPLICATING VERBS.

§ **18.** In addition to the six classes of Strong Verbs, there is a seventh class, in which it is usual to group what is known as the Reduplicating Verbs. These verbs formed their preterite originally, not by a change of vowel, but by prefixing a syllable consisting of the initial consonant of the verbal stem and a vowel. The preterite of the verb *pauo* in Greek, for instance, is *pepauka*; the preterite of Gothic *haldan* (Germ. *halten*) is *haíhald;* of *haitan* (Germ. *heissen*), *haíhait* (the Gothic *aí* being pronounced like *e*). This reduplicating syllable, although still found in Gothic, had already disappeared in Old High German times.

For the various classes of Strong Verbs in Gothic, Old High German, Middle High German, and New High German, see under § 53.

III.—HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

A.—*Gothic.*

§ **19.** Gothic is the oldest Germanic language that has been preserved to us. It approaches most nearly to that primitive Germanic language from which all the other languages of the family have sprung, and is consequently of the greatest importance for the historical study of both English and German. It is the starting-point from which the philological study of any Germanic language must set out.

The main and almost the only source of our knowledge of the Gothic language is the translation which the Gothic bishop, Wulfila or Ulfilas (311–381), made of the Bible. Of this translation the greater part of the Gospels has come down to us.

Gothic, as we find it in the Bible of Wulfila, is a highly inflected language, possessing to a great extent that power of expressing ideas by means of inflexion which distinguishes the classical languages of Greek and Latin, and which in later Germanic languages has given place to constructions with prepositions and auxiliary verbs.

§ **20**. The Gothic substantive has three genders—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; two numbers—Singular and Plural; and five cases—Nominative, Vocative (which, however, in most cases is the same as the Nominative), Genitive, Dative, and Accusative; and there are two chief declensions, a Strong and a Weak. The radical syllable of substantives belonging to the Strong Declension always ended in a vowel—*a*, *i*, or *u*. Accordingly, we distinguish between the *A* form, the *I* form, and the *U* form of the Strong Declension. Weak Substantives form their inflexions with *n*. The following paradigms will illustrate the declension of the Gothic substantive:—

	Strong.			*Weak.*
Sing. Nom.	dags (m.) (day)	giba (f.) (gift)	balgs (m.) (a skin)	hana (m.) (cock)
Gen.	dagis	gibôs	balgis	hanins
Dat.	daga	gibai	balga	hanin
Acc.	dag	giba	balg	hanan
Voc.	dag	giba	balg	hana
Plur. Nom., Voc.	dagôs	gibôs	balgeis	hanans
Gen.	dagê	gibô	balgê	hananê
Dat.	dagam	gibôm	balgim	hanam
Acc.	dagans	gibôs	balgins	hanans

Note.—*dags* and *giba* belong to the *A* form, their roots being *daga* and *gibâ*; whilst *balgs*, the root of which is *balgi*, belongs to the *I* form.

§ **21**. The Gothic pronoun of the first and second persons still possessed, in addition to a singular and plural, a special series of forms to express the dual. While *weis* in

Gothic means "we," *wit* means "we two," *uns* or *unsis* is "us," *ugkis* (pronounced *unkis*) is "us two."

§ **22**. The adjective, like the substantive, is inflected according to a strong and a weak declension. The comparative of adjectives is formed by the addition of the suffix *-iz*(*a*) or *-ôz*(*a*) (Eng. *-er*) to the stem; the superlative by *-ist* or *-ôst*: *manags* (much, many), compar. *managiza*, superl. *managists*.

§ **23**. The Gothic verb is distinguished from the verb in later Germanic languages by the fact that it still possesses special forms for the dual (as in Greek), and expresses its passive by means of inflexions, not by the use of an auxiliary. As in all Germanic languages, we distinguish in Gothic between (*a*) Strong Verbs and (*b*) Weak Verbs. The Strong Verbs change their radical vowel in the preterite, and (often) in the past part. (*bindan*, *band*, *bundum*, *bundans*), and fall into seven classes, according to the *Ablaut* Series (§ 53) to which they belong. The Weak Verbs form their preterite by the addition of the suffix *-da* (*cp.* Eng. *-ed*); the preterite of *nasjan*, "to save," is *nasida*; of *stojan*, "to judge," *stauida*. The following paradigms of the principal tenses of the Strong Verb *niman*, "to take," will serve to illustrate the inflexion of the Gothic verb.

		Active.				*Passive.*
		Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Pret. Ind.*	*Pret. Subj.*	*Pres. Ind.*
Sing.	1.	nima	nimau	nam	nêmjau	nimada
	2.	nimis	nimais	namt	nêmeis	nimaza
	3.	nimith	nimai	nam	nêmei	nimada
Dual	1.	nimôs	nimaiwa	nêmu	nêmeiwa	...
	2.	nimats	nimaits	nêmuts	nêmeits	...
Plur.	1.	nimam	nimaima	nêmum	nêmeima	nimanda
	2.	nimith	nimaith	nêmuth	nêmeith	nimanda
	3.	nimand	nimaina	nêmun	nêmeina	nimanda

Pres. Inf. niman *Pres. Part.* nimands *Pret. Part.* numans

B.—*Old High German.*

§ **24**. In the course of its historical development the High German language has passed through three distinct periods known as—

(*a*) The Old High German Period (from the eighth to the end of the eleventh century).
(*b*) The Middle High German Period (from the twelfth to the end of the fifteenth century).
(*c*) The New High German Period (from 1500 to our own day).

§ **25**. From the beginning of the Middle High German Period onwards, that is to say, from the period of the Crusades, High German has been the dominant language of Germany, the language of German literature. Previously it was merely the dialect of South Germany, and only part of the oldest literature of Germany is written in it. The *Heliand*, for instance, the most important of all the old German poems, is written in Old Saxon, the language of the flat plains of Northern Germany, and the forerunner of the modern *Plattdeutsch* (*cp.* § 4, C).

The chief literary specimens in Old High German are the *Hildebrandslied*, Otfrid's *Gospel Harmony*, the *Muspilli*, and the *Ludwigslied*. The best examples of Old High German prose are the translations of Latin works by the St. Gall monk Notker.

§ **26**. The chief dialects of Old High German, which, although they cease at an early date to have a literary importance, may be traced down to the dialects spoken at the present day, are the following:—

(A) Upper German (spoken in German-speaking Switzerland, in the greater part of Alsace, Baden, Würtemberg, in the south-eastern part of Bavaria, and in Austria). Upper German is divided into two chief dialects:—

  (*a*) Alemannian.
  (*b*) Bavarian. The approximate boundary between these two dialects is formed by a line drawn through Augsburg and Landeck.

(B) Frankish, or Middle German (spoken in the districts lying between that in which Upper German is spoken and the Low German area of the North). The northern boundary may be obtained roughly by drawing a line through Aachen and Frankfurt on the Oder. The Frankish dialects are as follows:—

- (*a*) Rhine Frankish (in the West).
- (*b*) Middle Frankish.
- (*c*) East Frankish (in the North of Bavaria).
- (*d*) Hessian, Thuringian, Upper Saxon, and Silesian (spoken in the remaining High German area north and east of that occupied by the three Frankish dialects).

§ **27**. The main characteristic of Old High German, as compared with the later developments of the language, is the extreme richness of its vowel sounds, especially diphthongs. For example:—

O.H.G.	bluot	leoht	liup	antwurti	irkennan	farstantan	ginuag
N.H.G.	*Blut*	*Licht*	*lieb*	*Antwort*	*erkennen*	*verstehen*	*genug*

§ **28**. To the great variety of its vowels we also owe the fact that Old High German is particularly rich in inflexions. In the declension of the substantive, besides the four principal cases, there are even traces of an Instrumental case. The following paradigms show the main characteristics of the Old High German declension, and allow of a comparison with that of Gothic, Middle and New High German:—

		Strong.			*Weak.*
Sing.	*Nom.*	tag (m.) (day)	geba (f.) (gift)	balg (m.) (a skin)	hano (m.) (cock)
	Gen.	tages (-as)	geba (-u, -o)	balges	hanin, hanen
	Dat.	tage (-a)	gebu (-o)	balge	hanin, hanen
	Acc.	tag	geba	balg	hanun (-on)
	Instr.	tagu (-o)	...	balgiu (-u)	...
Plur.	*Nom.*	tagâ (-a)	gebâ	belgi	hanun (-on)
	Gen.	tago	gebôno	belgeo (-io, -o)	hanôno
	Dat.	tagum {-om -un -on}	gebôm (-on)	belgim (-in)	hanôm (-on)
	Acc.	tagâ (-a)	gebâ	belgi	hanun (-on)

§ **29**. The demonstrative pronoun *der*, *diu*, *daz*, is used as a definite article and as a relative pronoun, and is declined thus:—

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Sing.	*Nom.*	der	diu	daz
	Gen.	des	dera	des
	Dat.	demu	deru	demu
	Acc.	den	dia, die	daz
	Instr.	...	...	diu
Plur.	*Nom., Acc.*	dē, die	diu	dio
			Gen. dero	
			Dat. dêm, dên	

NOTE 1.—A comparison with the New High German form of the definite article will show that apart from the weakening of the unaccented vowel endings to *e* (which was gradually dropped altogether), only one important change has taken place, namely, that the accusative of the feminine (*die*) has been substituted for the nominative feminine.

NOTE 2.—In some phrases the genit. plur. *dero* is retained in New High German, as in *dero ergebenster Diener*, "your most humble servant," and by analogy with *dero*, *Ihro* is sometimes similarly used, but both are stilted and now obsolete.

§ **30**. Adjectives in Old High German are declined according to a strong and a weak declension. The comparative was formed by the suffix *-ir*(*o*) and *ôr*(*o*), the superlative by *-ist*(*o*) and *ôst*(*o*). For example:—

sâlîg (blessed),	sâlîgôro,	sâlîgôsto (*selig*, *seliger*, *seligst*)
lang (long),	lengiro,	lengisto (*lang*, *länger*, *längst*)

NOTE.—By the presence or absence of the *Umlaut* in the comparison of adjectives in N.H.G., we can generally see whether the suffix originally was *-iro*, *-isto*, or *-ôro*, *-ôsto*.

§ **31**. The principal tenses of the Strong Verb *neman*, "to take," are in O.H.G. as follows:—

	Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Pret. Ind.*	*Pret. Subj.*
Sing. 1.	nimu	neme	nam	nâmi
2.	nimis(t)	nemês(t)	nâmi	nâmîs(t)
3.	nimit	neme	nam	nâmi

Plur.	1. nemam(es)	nemêm (-n)	nâmum	nâmîm(ês) (-în)
	2. nimit, nemet	nemêt	nâmut	nâmît
	3. nemant (-ent)	nemên	nâmun	nâmîn

Imperat. Sing. 2. nim	*Pres. Part.* nemanti (-enti)
Plur. 2. nemet	*Past Part.* ginoman

NOTE.—For the seven classes of Strong Verbs see § 53.

The present of the Weak Verbs is conjugated similarly to the above paradigm; the preterite is formed by the addition of *-ta*, as follows (from *nerian*, "to save"):—

Sing.	nerita	neritôs	nerita
Plur.	neritôm (-um)	neritôt (-ut)	neritôn (-un)

C.—*Middle High German.*

§ **32**. Middle High German, the second stage in the development of the High German language, may be described as the language of Germany from the beginning of the Crusades to the Reformation. In this language we possess a rich poetic literature, which may be conveniently grouped in three divisions: (*a*) the National or Popular Epic; (*b*) the Court Epic; and (*c*) the Lyric or Minnesang. To the first division belong the great epics of the *Nibelungenlied* and *Gudrun;* to the second belong the verse romances of the Court singers, of whom the chief are—Heinrich von Veldeke (*Eneit*), Hartmann von Aue (*Erec, Iwein, Der arme Heinrich*), Wolfram von Eschenbach (*Parzival*), and Gottfried von Strassburg (*Tristan und Isolde*). The greatest of the lyric poets or Minnesingers was Walther von der Vogelweide. The Middle High German Period, which reached its highest point at the beginning of the thirteenth century, forms the first great classical period of German literature.

§ **33**. The chief characteristic of the Middle High German language, as compared with that of the preceding period, is a weakening of the full O.H.G. vowel sounds, especially in flexional and derivative syllables, into a colourless *e*, a process which has still further extended in Modern German. This weakening was due mainly to the fact that the stem syllables were strongly accented; and the unaccented syllables, not being pronounced precisely, gradually lost their full sound, and in many cases were dropped altogether. Examples:—

O.H.G.:	guotî,	herza,	skônî,	sêro (adv. "with pain"),	gesti,	hêrro (*for* hêriro).
M.H.G.:	güete,	herze,	schoene,	sêre,	geste,	herre.
N.H.G.:	*Güte*,	*Herz*,	*schön*,	*sehr*,	*Gäste*,	*Herr*.

A further characteristic of Middle High German is the extension of the *Umlaut* (§ 14), which in O.H.G. was confined to short *a*.

The following paradigms show the principal features of Middle High German declension:—

	Strong.			*Weak.*	
Sing. Nom.	tac (m.) (day)	gebe (f.) (gift)	balc (m.) (a skin)	han(e) (m.) (cock)	zunge (f.) (tongue)
Gen.	tages	gebe	balges	hanen	zungen
Dat.	tage	gebe	balge	hanen	zungen
Acc.	tac	gebe	balc	hanen	zungen
Plur. Nom., Acc.	tage	gebe	belge	hanen	zungen
Gen.	tage	gebe	belge	hanen	zungen
Dat.	tagen	geben	belgen	hanen	zungen

NOTE.—Weak feminine nouns, like *zunge*, had also the flexional *n* in the singular. Compare § 46.

§ **34**. The personal pronouns in M.H.G. are declined:—

Sing. Nom.	ich	dû	er	sî (sie)	ez
Gen.	mîn	dîn	es (sîn)	ir(e)	es (sîn)
Dat.	mir	dir	im(e)	ir(e)	im
Acc.	mich	dich	in	sie	ez
Plur. Nom.	wir	ir		sie	
Gen.	unser	iuwer		ir	
Dat.	uns	iu		in	
Acc.	uns(ich)	iuch		sie	

NOTE.—In such expressions as *Ich bin* **es** *zufrieden* (*satt, über-*

drüssig, *los*) or *Er weiss* es *mir Dank*, *mich nimmt* es *Wunder*, and others, *es* is the old genitive of the neuter; but as this genitive form became obsolete, *es* in these expressions came to be regarded as accusative, and *das* is often now substituted for it, as in *Ich bin das los*, "I am rid of it."

§ **35**. Adverbs were formed from adjectives (1) by the addition of *e* (when the adjective did not already end in *e*), *e.g.*—

lanc (long), adv. lange;
hôch (high), adv. hôhe.

(2) In the case of dissyllabic adjectives containing a mutated vowel in the stem, by changing the mutated vowel for the non-mutated, *e.g.*—

süeze (sweet), adv. suoze;	veste (fast, strong), adv. vaste;
schoene (beautiful), adv. schône;	spaete (late), adv. spâte.

NOTE.—This accounts for the double forms in N.H.G.: *fast—fest; schon—schön; (spat)—spät.*

§ **36**. Of the numerals, *ein* was declined like an adjective, whilst *zwei* and *drî* were declined in the following manner:—

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom. Acc.	zwêne	zwô	zwei
Gen.	zwei(g)er	zwei(g)er	zwei(g)er
Dat.	zwei(e)n	zwei(e)n	zwei(e)n
Nom. Acc.	drî	drî	driu
Gen.	drî(g)er	drî(g)er	drî(g)er
Dat.	drin (drîen)	drin (drîen)	drin (drîen)

NOTE.—The neuter form *zwei* has supplanted the masc. and fem. forms in N.H.G., though the form *zween* occasionally still occurs.

§ **37**. The principal tenses of the Strong Verb *nemen*, "to take," are in Middle High German, as follows (for comparison we add the O.H.G. and N.H.G. forms):—

		Pres. Indic.			*Pres. Subj.*		
		O.H.G.	M.H.G.	N.H.G.	O.H.G.	M.H.G.	N.H.G.
Sing.	1.	nimu	nime	*nehme*	neme	neme	*nehme*
	2.	nimis(t)	nim(e)st	*nimmst*	nemês(t)	nemest	*nehmest*
	3.	nimit	nim(e)t	*nimmt*	neme	neme	*nehme*
Plur.	1.	nemem(ês)	nemen(t)	*nehmen*	nemêm	nemen	*nehmen*
	2.	nemet	nemet	*nehmet*	nemêt	nemet	*nehmet*
	3.	nemant	nement	*nehmen*	nemên	nemen	*nehmen*

		Pret. Indic.			*Pret. Subj.*		
		O.H.G.	M.H.G.	N.H.G.	O.H.G.	M.H.G.	N.H.G.
Sing.	1.	nam	nam	*nahm*	nâmi	naeme	*nähme*
	2.	nâmi	naeme	*nahmst*	nâmîs(t)	naemest	*nähmest*
	3.	nam	nam	*nahm*	nâmi	naeme	*nähme*
Plur.	1.	nâmum	nâmen	*nahmen*	nâmîm	naemen	*nähmen*
	2.	nâmut	nâmet	*nahmet*	nâmît	naemet	*nähmet*
	3.	namun	nâmen	*nahmen*	nâmîn	naemen	*nähmen*

	O. and M.H.G.	N.H.G.
Imperat. 2. *Sing.*	nim	nimm.
2. *Plur.*	nemet	nehmet.

Infin.		*Part. Pres.*	
O.H.G.:	neman.	O.H.G.:	nemanti.
M.H.G.:	nemen.	M.H.G.:	nemende.
N.H.G.:	nehmen.	N.H.G.:	nehmend.

Note.—The seven classes of Strong Verbs in M.H.G. will be found in § 53.

The Middle High German Weak Verbs form their preterite with the flexional syllables -(*e*)*te*, their past part. with -(*e*)*t*. For example: *leben*, *lebete*, *gelebet*; *kêren*, *kêrte*, *gekêr*(*e*)*t*. The terminations of the Weak Verb in the present are similar to those of the Strong. The pret. ind. (from *nern*, "to save") is: sing. *nerte*, *nertest*, *nerte*; plur. *nerten*, *nertet*, *nerten*. Weak Verbs which have a mutated vowel in the present tense take the corresponding unmutated vowel in the preterite. Thus:—

hoeren (to hear);	*pres.*	ih hoere;	*pret.*	ih hôrte.
setzen (to set);	,,	ih setze;	,,	ih sazte.
füllen (to file);	,,	ih fülle;	,,	ih fullte.

§ **38.** Anomalous Verbs are—

(1) tuon (to do); (2) gân, gên—O.H.G. gangan—(to go); (3) stân, stên—O.H.G. stantan—(to stand); (4) wesen—O.H.G. wesan—*or* sîn (to be); (5) hân *or* haben (to have).

D.—*New High German.*

§ **39.** New High German, the language of modern Germany, which since the time of Luther has undergone but little change, differs from the languages which we have just been considering, in so far as it was originally not a dialect, but an artificially formed literary language. New High German, which Luther adopted for his Bible translation, was the official language of the Saxon Chancery, and had come to be used as the official language of the various German states. Consequently many of the changes which Middle High German underwent in passing into New High German are not to be accounted for by philological laws; they are often due merely to the caprice of individual writers.

§ **40.** The principal changes which came over Middle High German in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries may be grouped as follows:—

(*a*) All short root syllables which were followed by a single consonant became long in N.H.G. For example: *sagen*, *legen*, *Weg*, *Grab* were pronounced săgen, lĕgen, Wĕg, Grăb in M.H.G.

(*b*) The long vowels *î*, *û*, *iu* (pron. *ü*) in M.H.G. have become *ei*, *au*, *eu* (*äu*) in N.H.G. Examples:—

(1) *î* > *ei*	...	M.H.G.:	mîn,	dîn,	sîn,	zît,	grîfen.
		N.H.G.:	*mein*,	*dein*,	*sein*,	*Zeit*,	*greifen.*
(2) *û* >*au*	...	M.H.G.:	hûs,	mûs,	ûf,	rûch,	brûn.
		N.H.G.:	*Haus*,	*Maus*,	*auf*,	*rauh*,	*braun.*
(3) *iu*>*eu* (*äu*)	...	M.H.G.:	hiute,	liute,	vriunt,	tiure,	hiuser.
		N.H.G.:	*heute*,	*Leute*,	*Freund*,	*teuer*,	*Häuser.*

(*c*) The New High German equivalents for the M.H.G. vowel sounds *ou* and *öu* are *au* and *äu* (*eu*). Examples:—

M.H.G.:	boum,	ouge,	loufen,	böume,	vröude.
N.H.G.:	*Baum*,	*Auge*,	*laufen*,	*Bäume*,	*Freude.*

(*d*) The Middle High German diphthongs *uo*, *üe*, and *ie* (pronounced *i* + *e*) have been reduced in N.H.G. to the single vowel sounds *u*, *ü*, and *ie* (pronounced *ī*). For example:—

(1) *uo*	> *u*	...	M.H.G.:	bluot,	guot,	muot,	suochen.
			N.H.G.:	*Blut*,	*gut*,	*Mut*,	*suchen.*
(2) *üe*	> *ü*	...	M.H.G.:	büecher,	güete,	vüeren.	
			N.H.G.:	*Bücher*,	*Güte*,	*führen.*	
(3) *ie* (*i* + *e*)	> *i* (written *ie*)	...	M.H.G.:	diep,	liep,	ziehen.	
			N.H.G.:	*Dieb*,	*lieb*,	*ziehen.*	

(*e*) The Middle High German *Umlaut* of *a* was *e*. For example: *gast*, *geste*; *kraft*, *krefte*; *ich grabe*, *du grebest.* In New High German the *Umlaut* of *a* is written *ä* as long as the word in which it occurs is felt to be merely a flexional form of that in which the original *a* occurs. If, however, this connection is no longer felt, the Middle High German *Umlaut e* is retained. Thus: *Vater*, *Väter*; *fahren*, *fährst*; but *fahren*, *fertig* and *Ferge*, because here the words *fertig* and *Ferge* are practically no longer associated with the idea of *fahren*. Similar examples are found with the mutated form of *au*, which is either *äu* or *eu*: *Baum*, *Bäume*; *Traum*, *Träume*; but *Heu* (hay), because the etymological connection with *hauen* is no longer felt.

(*f*) In many respects Middle High German orthography was more accurate than that of New High German. Thus, although the spelling of the following words has been altered in N.H.G. in the interests of uniformity, they are still pronounced (as regards the consonants) as in M.H.G.:—

M.H.G.:	tac, tages;	leit, leides;	zeigen, zeicte;	gap, gaben.
N.H.G.:	*Tag*, *Tages*;	*Leid*, *Leides*;	*zeigen*, *zeigte*;	*gab*, *gaben.*

(*g*) *sch* before *l*, *m*, *n*, and *w* in New High German has arisen from Middle High German *s*. For example :—

M.H.G. :	slange,	smal,	snell,	swert,	wirs (E. worse),	slahen.
N.H.G. :	*Schlange,*	*schmal,*	*schnell,*	*Schwert,*	(*un*)*wirsch,*	*schlagen.*

Cp. Eng. :	slack,	to slit,	to slaughter,	slatternly,	slippery ;
Germ. :	*schlaff,*	*schleiszen,*	*schlachten,*	*schlotterig,*	*schlüpfrig;*
	to smoke,	to smack (taste) ;	snout,	snipe,	
	schmauchen,	*schmecken ;*	*Schnauze,*	*Schnepfe,*	
	to sweat,	swart,	sweep (of the tail).		
	schwitzen,	*schwarz,*	*Schweif.*		

s, however, has not been changed before *t* and *p*, although it is usual in N.H.G. to pronounce *s* in this position as *sch*. Thus *Stein*, *sprechen* are pronounced as if written *Schtein*, *schprechen*.

(*h*) Whenever in N.H.G. *au* or *eu* (*äu*) appears before *e*, an original *w* has, with few exceptions, been dropped. This will be seen in the following comparisons with M.H.G. forms :—

N.H.G. :	*Frau*(*e*),	*hauen,*	*schauen,*	*neu*(*e*),	*Reue,*
M.H.G. :	frouwe,	houwen,	schouwen,	niuwe,	riuwe,
	streuen,	*euer.*			
	ströuwen,	iuwer.			

Note.—The *w* of the last word appears still in the abbreviation of titles : *Ew. Majestät* for *Euer Majestät*.

(*i*) *w* after *l* and *r* has been changed to *b* in N.H.G. For example :—

M.H.G. :	gel, gelwes,	swalwe,	val, valwes,	garwe.
N.H.G. :	*gelb,*	*Schwalbe,*	*fahl, falb,*	*Garbe.*

(*j*) Final *w* in M.H.G., which was often vocalised to *o*, is dropped in N.H.G. or appears as *b*. Examples :—

M.H.G. :	sew (seo), sewes,	sne, snewes,	kalo, kalwes,	houwen—hiew.
N.H.G. :	*See,*	*Schnee,*	*kahl,*	*hauen — hieb.*

Cp. Eng. :	fallow,	yellow,	screw,	swallow.
Germ. :	*falb,*	*gelb,*	*Schraube,*	*Schwalbe.*

(*k*) Middle High German *h* had the sound of Modern German *ch*, medially and finally; only at the beginning of words, where it was, as in N.H.G., followed by a vowel, had it the aspirated sound of Modern German *h*. Final *h* was often in M.H.G. written as it was pronounced, namely, *ch*. Thus the preterite of *sehen* in M.H.G. is *sach*, the *ch* here explaining the now mute *h* of N.H.G. *sah*. In N.H.G. the original guttural and aspirated sounds are represented by two distinct characters, the guttural sound by *ch*, and the aspirated sound by *h*.

The distinction, which did not exist in M.H.G., will be seen in the following examples: *Hoch*, *höher*, *höchst*, *Höhe*; *nach*, *nahe*, *näher*, *nächst*, *Nachbar*; *schmähen*, *Schmach*; *es geschieht*, *die Geschichte*; *jäh*(*e*), *jach*. The former guttural sound of M.H.G. is still noticeable in words like *Fuchs*, *Wachs* (M.H.G. *vuhs*, *wahs*).

NOTE.—In Modern German an *h* often represents an older *w*, as in *Stroh* (M.H.G. strô, strôwes), *Ehe* (M.H.G. ê, êwe), *Wehe* (M.H.G. wê, wêwes).

Cp. Eng.:	to mow,	row (line),	crow,	to tow,	to blow.
Germ.:	*mähen*,	*Reihe*,	*Krähe*,	*ziehen*,	*blähen*.

§ **41.** Middle High German *z* is represented in N.H.G. either (*a*) by *z* (with the sound of the affricata *t* + *s*), or (*b*) by *sz*, *ss*, *s* (with sharp hissing sound). Examples:—

(*a*)	M.H.G.:	zam,	zemen.			
	N.H.G.:	*zahm*,	*zähmen*.			
(*b*)	M.H.G.:	haz,	hazzes;	straze;	ez,	daz.
	N.H.G.:	*Hasz*,	*Hasses*;	*Strasze*;	*es*,	*das*.

§ **42**. New High German Changes of Consonants.

(Assimilation—Insertion and Addition—Interchange of Consonants).

(1) **Assimilation** of two different consonants: *nennen* (for *nemnen*); *die Hoffart* (M.H.G. *hochvart*).

Cp. Germ.:	*dumm* (stupid),	*Kamm*,	*Zimmer* (room).
Eng.:	dumb,	comb,	timber.

(2) **Insertion** and **addition** of consonants: *t, d, n, f, s, l* are frequently added to facilitate pronunciation :—

*t, d: eigen**t**lich; namen**t**lich; wöchen**t**lich; öffen**t**lich; ander**t**halb; meine**t**wegen; dessen**t**halben; Habich**t**; mittels**t**; Gemein**d**e; Fähn**d**rich; eilen**d**s; jeman**d**, nieman**d*** (M.H.G. ieman, nieman).

Cp. Eng.: once; moon; self, selves; axe; sap; whilome;
Germ.: *einst*; *Mond*; *selbst*; *Axt*; *Saft*; *weiland*;
pawn (pledge); friendship.
Pfand; *Freundschaft*.

*n: nu**n*** (M.H.G. nû, now); *sonder**n*** (sunder); *Schlitte**n*** (sledge); *Tropfe**n*** (drop); *Schaff**n**er; Bild**n**er.*

*f: Vernun**f**t* (fr. *vernehmen*); *(An)kun**f**t* (fr. *kommen*); *Zun**f**t* (fr. *ziemen*).

*s: Kun**s**t* (fr. *kennen*); *Brun**s**t* (fr. *brennen*); *Gun**s**t* (fr. *gönnen*).

*l: Tisch**l**er; Künst**l**er.*

(3) Liquids interchange with other liquids (*cp.* § 13) :—

l—r: stammeln—stammern; wandeln—wandern; schütteln—(er)-schüttern; Marmel—Marmor.

r—s (*cp.* § 13): *war—gewesen; kiesen (küren)—kor, gekoren; nähren—genesen; frieren—Frost; verlieren—Verlust.*

NOTE.—*Cp.* Eng.: iron; hare; hoarse.
Germ.: *Eisen; Hase; heiser.*

(4) Labials interchange with other labials :—

Haber—Hafer; schnauben—schnaufen; Knappe—Knabe; Rappe—Rabe; Witwe—Wittib.

NOTE.—*f* and *v*, *pf* and *f* frequently alternate in the same stem: *Fülle—voll; Fürst—vorderst; Schöpfer—schaffen; tropfen—triefen.*

Cp. Eng.: vat (cask); haven; haver (oats); de-liver; to damp;
Germ.: *Fass; Hafen; Hafer; liefern; dämpfen;*
to hop; to slip; cramp; Palatinate; swamp;
hüpfen; schlüpfen; Krampf; die Pfalz; Sumpf;
stump.
Stumpf.

(5) Dentals interchange with other dentals (*cp.* § 13) :—

Geld—gelten; hindern—hinten.

NOTE.—*ss* (*sz*) frequently alternates with *z* or *tz* in the same stem :—
schieszen—Schütze; wissen—Witz; beiszen—beizen; sasz—sitzen; nasz—netzen; Hasz—hetzen; heisz—Hitze.

(6) Gutturals interchange with gutturals (*cp.* § 13):—

g—ch (*h*): *Schwager—Schwäher*; *Reigen—Reihen*; *gediegen—gediehen.*
ch—ck: *wachen* -*wecken*, *wacker*; *Dach—decken*; *Loch—Lücke*; *brechen —Brocken.*

NOTE 1.—*ck* frequently arises from *g*, especially in factitive and frequentative verbs:—

nicken fr. *neigen*; *zücken* fr. *ziehen*; *Hecke* fr. *Hag.*

NOTE 2.—German *g* is frequently represented by *y* or *w* in English, *e.g.*—

würgen (strangle),	to worry,
bergen (hide),	bury,
gähnen,	yawn,
gellen,	yell,
Lager,	layer, lair,
schlagen,	slay,
begehren,	yearn (desire),
einige;	any;
Säge,	saw,
schwelgen (to revel),	swallow,
Vogel (bird),	fowl,
Talg.	tallow.

§ **43**. Changes before *t*.

Before *t* every *p* sound appears as *f*, every *k* sound as *h*, *ch*, every *t* sound as *s*:—

b > *f*: *haben—Haft*, *haft*; *geben—Gift*; *schreiben—Schrift*; *treiben—Trift*; *halb—Hälfte.*

g > *h*: *mögen—mochte*, *Macht*; *tragen—Tracht*; *schlagen—Schlacht*; *biegen—Bucht*; *denken—dachte*, *dünken—deuchte* (with *n* dropped).

NOTE.—*h* before suffix *t* appears as *ch*: *sehen—Sicht*, *fliehen—Flucht*; *ziehen—Zucht.*

d > *s*: *laden—Last.*

NOTE.—The change before *t* does not take place if *b* or *g* or *d* come to stand before *t* owing to a vowel having been dropped. Examples: *ihr tragt* (for *traget*); *ihr gebt* (for *gebet*); *er lädt.*

NOTES ON THE N.H.G. DECLENSION.

§ **44**. The comparatively simple system of Declension which we have observed in the earlier stages of the German language has become greatly diversified in New High German, partly owing to the mutilation caused by the shortening and dropping of final vowels, and partly because many classes of substantives have in the course of their development been transferred from one type of Declension to another. To the two chief divisions of the system of Declension, the Strong and the Weak, we must therefore add a third division in N.H.G., namely, the Mixed Declension.

§ **45**. (A). The characteristic inflexions of the Strong Declension in N.H.G. are *s* in the genit. sing., *e* or *er* in the plural.

To the Strong Declension belong—

(1) Masc. substantives with or without *Umlaut: Ast, Äste; Tag, Tage.*

(2) Fem. substantives with or without *Umlaut: Maus, Mäuse; Besorgnis, Besorgnisse.*

(3) Neut. substantives with or without *Umlaut: Kalb, Kälber; Jahr, Jahre.*

(B). The characteristic sign of the Weak Declension is -*n* in the plural, for which reason it is also called the Consonant or N-Declension. Only masculine and feminine nouns now belong to the Weak Declension: *der Bote, Boten; die Schlange, Schlangen.*

(C). The Mixed Declension contains substantives which are inflected according to the Strong Declension in the singular, and according to the Weak in the plural.

To the Mixed Declension belong masculine and neuter nouns: *der Staat, Staates, Staaten; das Bett, Bettes, Betten.*

§ **46**. We have seen that in Middle High German feminine weak substantives had the termination (*e*)*n* in the singular as well as in the plural (*cp.* § 33, *zunge*). This old form is retained in Modern German in some expressions, particularly in poetry, proverbs, and compound nouns. Examples: *Röslein auf der Heiden.* Proverb: *Es ist nichts so fein gesponnen, es kommt endlich an die Sonnen. Auf Erden; zu Ehren; zu Gunsten. Lindenbaum: Harfenton; Sonnenschein; Lampenschirm.*

§ **47**. Many nouns which now follow the Strong Declension were formerly weak, as we see from the following examples: *Schelmenstück* (*der Schelm*); *Schwanenlied* (*der Schwan*); *Hahnenschrei* (*der Hahn*); *Mondenschein* (*der Mond*); *greisenhaft* (*der Greis*), and others.

§ **48**. The plural termination *-er*, at first confined to neuter nouns, was originally *-ir*, and therefore always causes *Umlaut;* for instance: O.H.G. *lamp*, *lembir* (*Lämmer*); *kalp*, *kelbir* (*Kälber*).

NOTE.—The plural without *-er* occurs in the following expressions:—

Kinder und Kindes Kind *preisen deinen Namen* (M.H.G. diu kint, *die Kinder*).
Eine Abteilung von fünfhundert Mann.
Zu den Häupten (dat. plur. of *Haupt*).

NOTES ON THE PRONOUN.

§ **49**. The original forms of address were *du* for the singular and *ihr* for the plural. The "plural of majesty" of the first person employed by early kings and emperors was gradually transferred to the second person, and to address a person with *ihr* (*ihrzen*) became a matter of etiquette. This form as polite address is still retained in titles, *Ew. Majestät*, &c. (*cp.* § 40, *h*, note), and in the classic drama, with the exception of the comedy. In the seventeenth century the third person singular *er* and *sie* came into use for the polite form, representing the titles *Herr* and *Frau*. Since about the middle of the eighteenth century the third person plural has been customary as the polite form of address.

CONJUGATION.

§ **50**. As in the older stages of the language, we distinguish in New High German between the Strong and the Weak Conjugation. The characteristics of the Strong Conjugation are: (1) the three vowel changes, namely, *Umlaut*, *Brechung*, and *Ablaut;* (2) the absence of a termination in the first and third person singular preterite; (3) the termination *-en* in the past participle.

The Weak Verbs (which are mostly derivatives of the Strong) are characterised—(1) by the termination -(*e*)*te* in the preterite and -(*e*)*t* in the past participle; (2) by the absence of *Umlaut*, *Brechung*, and *Ablaut*.

§ **51**. Taking the Strong Verb *nehmen* (O.H.G. nëman) as an example, we see—

(*a*) The *Umlaut* in the preterite subj.: *ich nahm—nähme.* The *Umlaut* is caused by the original termination *î* (*cp.* § 31).

For the forms *hülfe*, *stürbe*, *verdürbe*, &c., see § 17, Note 2.

(*b*) *Brechung* in the second and third person sing.: *ich nehme—nimmst—nimmt*, likewise caused by the original terminations *-is*, *-it* (see § 31).

Note the absence of *Brechung* in *schaffen*, *rufen*, *hauen*, *kommen*, and some others.

(*c*) *Ablaut* in the vowel change of the three principal parts: *nehmen*, *nahm*, *genommen.*

NOTE.—The *o* of the past participle of many Strong Verbs is due to *Brechung* of *u*, which vowel we frequently find in corresponding substantives. For example :—

Past Part.:	*genommen*,	*gesprochen*,	*gezogen*,	*gebrochen.*
Subst.:	*die Vern*u*nft*,	*der Spr*u*ch*,	*der Z*u*g*,	*der Br*u*ch.*

§ **52**. The future tense of all verbs was originally, as in English, formed by *sculan* and *wellen.* It is not before late M.H.G. that *werden* with an infinitive is used for denoting the beginning of an action, which meaning is in N.H.G. transformed into that of the future.

§ **53**. For purposes of comparison, and to show the relationship of vowels in the different stages of the development of the German language, the seven *Ablaut* Series are given in Gothic, Old High German, Middle High German, and New High German :—

	GOTHIC.		O.H.G.		M.H.G.		N.H.G.	
				I				
Pres. Inf.	greipan		grîfan,	zîhan	grîfen,	zîhen	*greifen,*	*schreiben*
Pret. Sing.	graip		greif,	zêh	greif,	zêch	*griff,*	*schrieb*
Pret. Plur.	gripum		griffum,	zigum	griffen,	zigen		
Pret. Part.	gripans		gigriffan,	gizigan	gegriffen,	gezigen	*gegriffen,*	*geschrieben*
				II.				
Pres. Inf.	giutan		biugan,	giozan	biegen,	giezen	*biegen,*	*gieszen*
			(*Pres.* biugu,	giuzu)	(*Pres.* biuge)	(*Pres.* giuze)		
Pret. Sing.	gaut		bouc,	gôz	bouc,	gôz	*bog,*	*gosz*
Pret. Plur.	gutum		bugum,	guzzum	bugen,	guzzen		
Pret. Part.	gutans		gibogan,	gigozzan	gebogen,	gegozzen	*gebogen,*	*gegossen*
				III.				
Pres. Inf.	bindan,	waírpan	bindan,	wërfan	binden,	wërfen	*binden,*	*werfen*
Pret. Sing.	band,	warp	bant,	warf	bant,	warf	*band,*	*warf*
Pret. Plur.	bundum,	waúrpum	buntum,	wurfum	bunden,	wurfen		
Pret. Part.	bundans,	waúrpans	gibuntan,	giworfan	gebunden,	geworfen	*gebunden,*	*geworfen*
				IV.				
Pres. Inf.	niman,	baíran	neman (*Pres.* nimu)		nëmen (*Pres.* nime)		*nehmen,*	*fechten*
Pret. Sing.	nam,	bar	nam		nam		*nahm,*	*focht*
Pret. Plur.	nêmum,	bêrum	nâmum		nâmen			
Pret. Part.	numans,	baúrans	ginoman		genomen		*genommen,*	*gefochten*

V

	GOTHIC.	O.H.G.	M.H.G.	N.H.G.	
Pres. Inf.	giban	geban (*Pres.* gibu)	geben (*Pres.* gibe)	*geben,*	*bitten*
Pret. Sing.	gaf	gab	gap	*gab,*	*bat*
Pret. Plur.	gêbum	gâbum	gâben		
Pret. Part.	gibans	gigeban	gegeben	*gegeben,*	*gebeten*

VI.

Pres. Inf.	faran	faran	varn (2. *Sing.* verst)	*fahren,*	*heben*
Pret. Sing.	fôr	fuor	vuor	*fuhr,*	*hub* or *hob*
Pret. Plur.	fôrum	fuorum	vuoren		
Pret. Part.	farans	gifaran	gevaren	*gefahren,*	*gehoben* (*cp.* the adj. *erhaben*)

VII. (Reduplicating Verbs).

Pres. Inf.	lêtan	stân (stantan)	stân	*fallen,* *rufen,* *heiszen,* *laufen, stoszen*
Pret. Sing.	laílôt	stuont	stuont	*fiel,* *rief,* *hiesz,* *lief, stiesz*
Pret. Plur.	laílôtum	stuontum	stuonden	
Pret. Part.	lêtans	gistantan	gestanden	*gefallen, gerufen, geheiszen* *geaufen, gelstoszen*

NOTE.—All verbs which in N.H.G. have the same root vowel in the present tense and in the preterite participle, and at the same time have *ie* in the preterite (*fallen, fiel, gefallen*), were formerly reduplicating verbs.

Preterite Present Verbs.

§ **54**. *Können*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, *sollen*, *mögen*, *wissen*, and *wollen* are called Preterite Present Verbs, because their presents consist of old preterites of Strong Verbs, which, after having lost the meaning of the preterite, assumed the force of the present tense (*cp.* Lat. perf. *memini*, I remember; *novi*, I know). Afterwards these verbs formed new weak preterites, infinitives, and past participles, but the old strong form of the past participle has been retained for use when the past participle comes to stand after an infinitive; for instance: *ich habe gekonnt*, but *ich habe gehen können.*

The conjugation of *können* and *wissen* was—

Pres. Indic. Sing. kan—kanst—kan. *Pres. Subj.* kunni (M.H.G. künne).
Plur. kunnum (M.H.G. künnen).
Pret. Indic. konda. *Pret. Subj.* kundi, künde.
Pres. Indic. Sing. weiz—weist—weiz. *Pret. Indic.* wissa, *later* wuste.
Plur. { O.H.G. wizzum.
M.H.G. wizzen.

Note.—The *Umlaut* in the plural of the present and in the infinitive in *können*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, and *mögen*, has come in by analogy to the present subjunctive, and *ö* in *können* stands for older *ü* (as in *König* for older *künic*, *Sohn* for *sun*).

§ **55**. Weak Verbs retain the stem vowel through all forms, except in *brennen*, *kennen*, *rennen*, *nennen*, *senden*, and *wenden*, which have *a* (instead of *e*) in the pret. and past part., a change of vowel which is not due to *Ablaut* as in Strong Verbs. The *a* is the original vowel of these verbs, which had *bran-*, *kan-*, &c., for their stems; whilst the *e* of the infinitive is due to *Umlaut* caused by an original *j* of the termination (*cp.* § 14). The pret. subj. of these verbs has the original mutated form of *a*, which is *e* (instead of *ä*): *brennte*, *kennte*, *sendete*, &c.

Note.—Formerly the vowel change in these verbs was explained by what was termed "*Rückumlaut*" or "reversed *Umlaut*," but no such process of reversion of *Umlaut* exists.

DERIVATION AND WORD-BUILDING

(ETYMOLOGY).

THE study of Etymology—in so far as it shows us the processes by which, from given roots or primitives, new and distinct words are formed—is not only an excellent mental discipline, but is also of great practical utility in the learning of a language, for it helps us to acquire a thorough grasp of the exact meaning of words, and so to use them with intelligence and accuracy. More especially is this the case with a language like German, which, by its remarkable facility for deriving and composing words, has a greater plastic power than any other modern language.

§ **56**. There are three main principles by which German words are derived from other words indigenous to the language :—

(1) By the *external addition* of derivative particles, chiefly suffixes and prefixes, as—

Schlach-*t* (fr. **schlag**-*en*),	**ein**-*sam*,	*ge*-**müt**-*lich* (fr. *Mut*),
	lonely,	pleasant,
Un-*ver*-**änder**-*lich*-*keit* (fr. *ander*, other).		
immutability.		

This is the most frequent process of derivation.

(2) By *internal change* of the radical vowel (*Ablaut*) with or without the addition of external modification. For example :—

geben,	*die Gabe,*	adj. *gäbe*	(in the phrase *gäng und gäbe*).
to give,	the gift,		current, in vogue.
brechen,	*der Bruch,*	adj. *brach,*	("*brach liegen*").
to break,	breach, fraction,	fallow, unploughed,	(to lie fallow, to be unoccupied).

(ver)hehlen (M.H.G. hëln),	*der Helm*,	*die Hölle* (M.H.G. helle),
to conceal,	the helmet,	hell,

die Höhle,	(*ver*)*hüllen*,	*der Halm*,	*die Hülse.*
cave,	to veil,	the blade, stalk,	the shell, husk.

bewegen,	*die Wiege ;*	*der Wagen*,	*die Woge.*
to move,	the cradle ;	the carriage,	the wave.

gebären,	*die Bahre*,	*die Geberde* (*sich geberden*),
to bear, give birth to,	the barrow, bier,	the gesture (to deport oneself),

die Geburt,	*die Bürde*,	*empor*,	*sich empören.*
the birth,	the burden,	upward,	to revolt.

stehen (O.H.G. stân *or* standan),	*die Statt* (*von statten gehen*),
to stand,	stead (make progress, succeed),

(*an*) *statt*,	*die Stätte*,	*die Stadt*	(*der Städter*, *städtisch*),
instead,	stead, place,	the town	(townsman, municipal),

das Gestade,	*stets*,	*un-stät*(*-ig*),	*der Stand*,
the shore,	steadily,	restless,	standing, position,

der Ständer,	*der Verstand*,	*die Stunde.*
desk for standing at,	understanding,	the hour.

(3) By *composition* of independent words (*i.e.* by forming one word out of two or more):—

der Haus-schlüssel,	*das Abend-rot*,	*hell-grün ;*	*Frau-en-arbeit*,
(street)-door key,	sunset,	light green ;	woman's work,
Leben-s-versicherung-s-Gesellschaft.			
life insurance company.			

A.—Derivation of Verbs.

§ **57.** (1) Verbs are derived from other verbs ("deverbatives") by vowel change (with or without change of consonant):—

fahren, (*fuhr*) — *führen ;*	*fliessen*, (*floss*)—*flössen ;*	*winden*—
to fare, proceed— to lead ;	to flow — to float ;	to wind—
wenden ;	*wachen* — *wecken ;*	*hangen*—
to turn, wend ;	to be awake—to waken up ;	to be suspended, hang—
henken ;	*biegen* — *beugen* — *bücken ;*	
to execute by hanging ;	to bow, bend—cause to bend — stoop ;	

essen — ätzen;	*lauten — läuten;*	*neigen — nicken;*
to eat—corrode;	to sound—to ring;	to incline — nod;
reissen—ritzen;	*raufen — rupfen;*	*ziehen (zog)—zücken.*
to tear—scratch;	to pull out—pluck (feathers);	to draw — to dart.

(2) Verbs are derived from nouns and adjectives ("denominatives") with or without vowel change :—

Gras—grasen;	*Pflug—pflügen;*	*stark — stärken;*	*zahm—zähmen.*
grass—graze;	plough—plough;	strong—strengthen;	tame—to tame.

(3) Verbs are derived from particles :—

ach—ächzen;	*du—duzen.*
groan;	address with *du*, Fr. *tutoyer.*

§ **58**. Verbs are formed by means of derivative terminations.

(1) By the terminations **-eln** and **-ern** :—

Klingen — klingeln;	*sausen—säuseln;*	*tropfen—tröpfeln;*
sound, clink—ring the bell;	whiz — rustle;	drip — trickle;
schütten—schütteln;	*bitten — betteln;*	*streichen—streicheln,*
shed — shake;	request, beg—ask alms;	stroke — caress,

kränkeln,	*witzeln,*	*frösteln,*	*frömmeln,*	*funkeln,*	*spötteln.*
be sickly,	affect wit,	feel chilly,	affect piety,	sparkle,	jeer, sneer.

The force of the suffix *-eln,* as we see from the above examples, is frequentative, diminutive, and derogatory.

The suffix *-ern* has causative and frequentative force :—

steigen—steigern;	*rauchen—räuchern;*	*stossen—stottern;*
rise — raise;	smoke — fumigate;	push — stutter;

ziehen (zog)—zögern;	*schütten—(er)schüttern;*	*äussern,*	*folgern,*
draw — hesitate;	shed — shake;	utter,	infer.

(2) By the terminations **-sen**, **-schen**, **-zen** :—

greinen — grinsen;	*Herr—herrschen;*	*feil — feilschen;*
whine, grin — grin;	master — to rule;	on sale—higgle, bargain;
schlucken—schluchzen;	*jauchzen,*	*krächzen.*
swallow, gulp — sob;	shout with joy,	croak, groan.

(3) By **-ieren** (verbs with this termination are of foreign, mostly of French origin) and **-igen** :—

halbieren,	*frisieren,*	*profitieren,*	*buchstabieren.*
halve,	frizzle, dress the hair,	profit,	spell.
endigen,	*befehligen,*	*reinigen,*	*kreuzigen.*
end,	command,	cleanse,	crucify.

§ **59**. Verbs are formed by means of prefixes. These originally had an independent function as particles with a distinct meaning, which is now often much obscured.

The prefixes which require explanation are the inseparable *be-*, *ent-*, *emp-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, *ge-*, *miss-*, *wider ;* the separable prefixes *voll*, *auf*, *an*, &c., are self-explanatory.

(1) **be-** (= *bei*, E. be- ; *cp.* be-moan, be-smear) denotes action with reference to an object, hence it forms—

(*a*) Transitive verbs from intransitive :—

beweinen (*weinen über*),	*besteigen* (*steigen auf*),
whine about, deplore,	ascend,

befahren, *befolgen*, *belächeln*, *bestreiten*, *betreten.*

(*b*) Denominative verbs (*see* § 57, 2), mostly with the meaning "to provide with, furnish with" :—

die Saite — besaiten ;	*der Fleck — beflecken ;*
string (of instrument)—to string ;	spot, stain — to stain ;

Volk (*Völker*) — *bevölkern ;*	*taub — betäuben ;*	*frei — befreien,*
people — populate ;	deaf — to stun ;	free — liberate,

bewaffnen, *besiegeln*, *bemitleiden*, *beschützen.*

(*c*) **be-** also means "around, from all sides," with intensive force :—

besehen,	*begiessen,*	*behauen,*	*begreifen.*
inspect, examine,	to sprinkle,	hew (from all sides),	comprehend.

NOTE.—*be-* occurs frequently in partic. adj. without a corresponding verb :—

betagt,	*bejahrt,*	*bemittelt,*	*beleibt,*	*belesen.*
aged,	aged,	well off,	corpulent,	well read, versed.

2) **ent-** (**emp-** before *f*, as in *empfinden*, feel; *empfehlen*, recommend) denotes (*a*) removal, away from :—

entgehen, *entlaufen*,	*enthaupten*,	*entwaffnen*,	*entdecken*,
escape,	decapitate,	disarm,	discover,
entthronen,	*entgleisen*,	*entwurzeln*,	*entvölkern*,
dethrone,	run off the track,	to uproot,	depopulate,
entblättern,	*entkräften.*		
strip off leaves,	debilitate.		

(*b*) Entering into a state (verbs so formed being called "inchoative" verbs) :—

entstehen,	*entbrennen*,	*entschlafen.*
originate,	take fire,	die ("fall asleep").

Both meanings are seen in the verb *entspringen* : (*a*) to escape, "spring away from"; (*b*) of a river, to take its rise.

(3) **er-** (older form *ur-*, as still in nouns, § 63, 2) denotes—
(*a*) Entering into a state (cp. *ent-*, *b*) :—

erkranken,	*erröten*,	*erbleichen*, *erblassen*,	*ermatten.*
turn ill,	blush,	turn pale,	become faint.

NOTE.—Distinguish between—

erwarmen	and	*erwärmen ;*	*erkalten*	and	*erkälten.*
grow warm,		warm up ;	cool (intr.),		cool (tr.).

(*b*) Completion or success of an action :—

erbetteln,	*erschiessen*,	*erschlagen*,
obtain by begging,	shoot dead,	beat to death, kill,

erfahren, *erfinden*, *ersteigen*, *erreichen*, *erwarten.*

(*c*) Factitive force :—

erfrischen,	*erleichtern*,	*erschweren*,	*ermuntern.*
refresh,	facilitate,	render difficult,	cheer up, encourage.

(4) **ver-** (= *vor*, E. for-) signifies—

(*a*) Completion to the point of exhaustion :—

verblühen,	*verbluten,*	*verhungern,*	*verdursten,*
fade, wither,	bleed to death,	die of hunger,	die of thirst,
fressen (= *ver-essen*).			
devour.			

(*b*) "Change into, covering over," often with intensive force :—

versteinern ;	*vergolden,*	*versilbern,*	*verzuckern ;*
turn into stone ;	to gild,	to plate with silver,	cover with sugar ;
verfluchen,	*verspotten,*	*vergällen* (*die Galle*).	
curse,	deride,	to gall, embitter.	

(*c*) Astray, wrong, mistake :—

sich verlaufen,		*sich verrechnen,*	*verkennen,*
run in the wrong direction, stray,		miscalculate,	misjudge,
verraten,	*verachten,*	*versalzen,*	*verbauen.*
betray,	despise,	to over-salt,	build too much, obstruct by building.

Compare the force of *er-* and *ver-* in the following verbs :—

erziehen,	*verziehen ;*	*erbauen,*	*verbauen ;*
educate,	educate badly, spoil ;	to build,	obstruct by building ;
erblühen,	*verblühen ;*	*erbleichen,*	*verbleichen.*
bloom forth,	fade, wither ;	turn pale,	fade.

In many cases it is difficult to determine the force of *ver-*.

(5) **zer-** (= Lat. *dis*) denotes "asunder, to pieces" :—

zerbrechen,	*zergliedern,*	*zerspringen,*	*zerfliessen.*
break, smash,	dissect,	crack, burst,	flow apart, melt.

(6) **ge-** (originally = Lat. *con*, together) has now scarcely any special force in verbs, except intensive force in some, and frequentative in others. For example :—

bieten—gebieten ;	*frieren—gefrieren ;*	*denken — gedenken.*
bid —command ;	freeze — congeal ;	think — remember.

Note that *g* is the shortened form of *ge* in—

gönnen,	*glücken,*	*gleichen,*	*(be)gleiten.*
not grudge, grant,	prosper, succeed,	resemble,	accompany.

(7) **miss** (= E. mis-, dis-) signifies "amiss, wrong":—

missbrauchen,	*missdeuten,*	*missglücken,*	*misstrauen,*	*missgönnen.*
abuse,	misinterpret,	succeed ill, fail,	mistrust,	grudge.

) **wider-** (= E. with-) signifies "against," as in—

widerstehen,	*widersprechen,*	*widerrufen.*
withstand,	contradict,	recall.

VERBS ARE FORMED BY MEANS OF COMPOSITION.

§ **60.** (1) Noun or adjective + verb:—

not'leiden,	*acht'geben* (*auf*, acc.),	*teil'nehmen* (*an*, dat.),
suffer need,	take care (of),	take part (in),

preis'geben (dat.),	*haus'halten,*	*gering'schätzen,*	*hoch'achten,*
abandon, expose to,	keep house,	to disregard,	respect highly,

wahr'sagen,	*gleich'kommen* (dat.),	*tot'schlagen.*
to prophesy, soothsay,	to equal,	kill, murder.

Observe the following, which are derived from nouns or adjectives already compounded; (*they are all weak and inseparable*):—

veranlassen	to cause, induce	(*der Anlass*),	(cause, inducement),
bemitleiden	to pity	(*das Mitleid*),	(compassion),
beantragen	to propose	(*der Antrag*),	(proposal),
beauftragen	to commission	(*der Auftrag*),	(order, commission),
bewillkommen	to welcome	(*der Willkomm*),	(welcome, reception),
beherbergen	to harbour, give shelter	(*die Herberge*),	(shelter, inn),
willfahren (dat.),	comply with, gratify,		
handhaben;	to handle, manage;		
frühstücken,	to breakfast,		
langweilen,	to weary, bore,		
rechtfertigen.	to justify.		

(2) Adverb or preposition + verb :—

weg'laufen,	*vor'dringen,*	*mit'nehmen.*
to run away,	press forward,	to take (with one).

Observe in this connection the force of *hin* and *her* in compounds. *Hin* means: motion from, away from the speaker, "that way"; *her* means: motion towards the speaker, "this way."

B.—Derivation of Nouns.

§ **61**. Nouns are derived either by internal vowel change or by means of prefixes and suffixes. Nouns which show no trace of either form of derivation are regarded as primitive nouns—for example: *Fuss, Baum, Vater.*

§ **62**. By internal vowel change nouns are derived from Strong Verbs (*cp.* § 56, 2):—

fliegen,	*der Flug,*	*der Flügel.*	
	flight,	wing.	
schneiden,	*der Schnitt,*	*der Schnitter* (*der Schneider*),	*das* (*der*) *Schnitzel.*
	cut,	mower, (tailor, "cutter"),	chip, cutlet.
reiten,	*der Ritt,*	*der Ritter* (*der Reiter*).	
	ride,	knight (rider).	
sitzen,	*der Sessel,*	*der Satz,*	*das Gesetz.*
	settle, stool,	sentence, set,	law.

A large number of nouns are formed without change of vowel from the stems of Weak Verbs :—

brauchen—der Brauch;	*kaufen—der Kauf;*	*laufen—der Lauf;*
usage;	purchase;	course;
handeln—der Handel.		
trade.		

DERIVATION OF NOUNS BY MEANS OF PREFIXES.

§ **63**. The same prefixes which are used to form verbs (§ 59) are—without change in their force and meaning—also employed in the formation of the cognate nouns; for example: *widerstehen—der Widerstand; entdecken—die Entdeckung; verraten—der Verrat.*

The following are prefixes by means of which new nouns (not derived from verbs) are formed: *erz-*, *ur-*, *aber-*, *after-*, *un-*, *ant-*.

(1) **erz-** (= E. arch-) has the force of "great, chief, out and out":—

Erzbischof,	*Erznarr,*	*Erzgauner.*
archbishop,	arrant fool,	out and out knave.

(*Cp.* Gr. *arch-*, first, chief.)

(2) **ur-** (= E. or- in ordeal) is related to the preposition *aus* and the prefix *er-* (§ 59, 3). It denotes origin or primitiveness:—

der Urwald,	*die Urwelt,*	*der Ursprung,*	*die Urkunde,*
primeval forest,	primitive world,	origin,	document,
die Ursache,	*der Urheber,*		*die Urkraft,*
(prime) cause,	originator,		primitive force,
der Urzustand,	*die Urgrossmutter,*	*der Urenkel.*	
original condition,	great-grandmother,	great-grandchild.	

3) **aber-** and **after-** (= E. after), mean "false, perverted, pseudo":—

der Aberwitz,	*der Aberglaube,*	*der Abersinn;*
"false wit," absurdity,	superstition,	stubbornness;

die Afterkritik,	*die Aftermiete,*	*der Afterkönig,*	*die Afterweisheit.*
would-be criticism,	subletting,	rival (pseudo) king,	pretended wisdom.

(4) **un-** (= E. un-) has a negative force:—

das Unglück,	*der Unsinn,*	*der Undank.*
ill-luck,	nonsense,	ingratitude.

Sometimes *un-* gives the idea of something unnatural, monstrous :—

der Unmensch,	*das Untier,*	*das Unwetter,*
barbarian, monster,	wild beast,	stormy weather,

die Unthat,	*das Unkraut,*	*der Unwille.*
misdeed, crime,	weed,	indignation.

(5) **ant-** corresponds to the verb prefix *ent-*, and occurs only in *die Antwort* (answer) and *das Antlitz* (face).

§ **64**. The prefix **ge-**. The function of this prefix is a little more apparent in composition with nouns than it is with verbs (§ 59, 6).

ge- (1) Prefixed to nouns *ge-* has collective force :—

Feld—das Gefilde,	*der Strauch—das Gesträuch,*	*die Wolke—das Gewölk,*	*das Holz—das Gehölz.*
field—fields, plains,	shrub — shrubbery,	cloud—clouds,	wood — thicket.

(2) Sometimes *ge-* denotes "with, together," like Lat. *con*, and forms nouns expressive of companionship :—

der Geselle (fr. *Saal*, hall, "sharing a room with"),	*der Gefährte* ("travelling with"),	*der Gespiele,*	*der Genosse.*
companion,	companion,	playmate,	comrade.

(3) From verbal roots *ge-* forms abstract and concrete nouns :—

das Gefühl,	*das Gesicht,*	*das Geräusch,*	*das Gewächs;*	*der Gedanke,*
feeling,	sight, face,	rustling, noise,	growth, plant;	thought,
der Geruch,	*der Geschmack,*	*der Gebrauch,*	*der Genuss;*	*die Gefahr,*
smell,	taste,	usage, custom,	enjoyment;	danger,
die Geberde,	*die Gestalt,*	*die Geduld,*	*die Gewalt.*	
gesture,	shape, form,	patience,	power.	

NOTE.—*ge-* is weakened to *g-* in *der Glaube, das Glück, das Glied, die Gnade.*

DERIVATION OF NOUNS BY SUFFIXES.

§ 65. **Concrete** nouns are formed chiefly by the following suffixes:—

1) **-el,** which forms masculine nouns, mostly indicating an instrument or appliance:—

heben—Hebel,	*decken—Deckel,*	*henken—Henkel.*
raise—lever,	cover—cover,	suspend—handle.

(2) **-er** (= E. -er, -ster), which forms masculine nouns.

(*a*) Indicates an instrument or appliance (cp. *-el*):—

bohren—Bohrer,	*leuchten—Leuchter,*	*zünden—Zunder.*
bore, drill—gimlet,	give light—candlestick,	kindle—tinder.

(*b*) **-er** when added to **verbs** denotes the agent, "the one who does":

Bäcker,	*Henker,*	*Erzieher.*
baker,	hangman,	tutor.

(*c*) **-er** (**-ner, -ler**) when added to **nouns** denotes "one employed with":—

Schäfer,	*Harfner,*	*Pförtner,*	*Tischler,*	*Künstler.*
shepherd,	harper,	door-keeper,	joiner,	artist.

(*d*) **-er** when added to names of places denotes origin: *Engländer, Münchener, Schweizer.*

NOTE.— *-ier* occurs in foreign words:—

das Papier,	*das Quartier;*	*der Barbier,*	*der Juwelier.*
paper,	quarters;	barber,	jeweller.

-chen (= E. -kin) and **-lein,** which form neuter diminutives and also express fondness: *Lämmchen, Söhnchen, Vöglein.*

Sometimes *-el-* is inserted, as in

Wägelchen,	*Büchelchen.*
little carriage,	booklet.

-ling (= E. -ling) forms masculine nouns:—

Findling,	*Fremdling,*	*Lehrling.*
foundling,	stranger,	apprentice.

Sometimes it is used with derogatory force, as in—

Höfling,	*Weichling,*	*Witzling,*	*Dichterling.*
courtling,	weakling,	witling,	poetaster.

(5) **-in**, which forms fem. nouns from masc. :

Fürstin,	*Löwin.*
princess,	lioness.

§ **66.** The nouns formed by the following suffixes are *chiefly* **abstract** *or* **semi-abstract** :—

(1) **-e** (O.H.G. *î*, hence frequently causing *Umlaut*), which forms fem. nouns from adjectives :—

Güte (O.H.G. guotî), *Fülle, Höhe, Grösse, Länge.*

(2) **ie-** and **-ei** (= Lat. *ia*, Fr. *ie*), mostly in words of foreign origin :—

die Philosophie,	*Phantasie,*	*die Partie — die Partei*
philosophy,	fancy, imagination,	game, match — party
("*eine Partie Schach,*"	"*eine gute Partie machen*")	("*liberale Partei*").
(a game of chess,	make a good match)	(Liberal party).

NOTE.—**ei** is mostly added to verbs in *-eln* and *-ern*, and expresses repeated action, as in *Heuchelei, Schmeichelei, Bettelei;* or it indicates place of business, as in

Bäckerei,	*Brauerei,*	*Druckerei.*
bakehouse,	brewery,	printing-house.

Sometimes it is with derogatory force :

Rederei,	*Spielerei.*
empty talk,	trifling.

The latter words are formed by the suffix *-erei.*

(3) **-nis** (= E. -ness), which signifies "state, condition," and forms neuter and fem. nouns from adjectives and verbs :—

die Wildnis,	*die Finsternis,*	*die Erlaubnis,*	*das Gleichnis,*
wilderness,	darkness,	permission,	simile,
das Hindernis,	*das Geheimnis,*	*das Begräbnis.*	
hindrance,	secret,	funeral.	

(4) **-sal, -sel**, which form chiefly neuter nouns from verbal roots :—

das Schicksal,	*das Scheusal;*	*das Rätsel,*	*Überbleibsel.*
fate,	monster ;	riddle,	remnant.

5) **-ung** (= E. -ing), which forms fem. nouns from transit. verbs, especially those with a prefix :—

Erfindung,	*Unterredung,*	*Überlegung,*	*Erinnerung,*
invention,	interview,	reflection,	recollection,
Verwirrung,	*Vorsehung.*		
confusion,	providence.		

(6) -t (= E. -th, -t, -d : grow-th, fros-t, dee-d) :—

die Glu-t (*glüh-en*),	*die Gebur-t* (*ge-bär-en*),	*die Fahr-t.*
glow,	birth,	journey, passage.

With preceding change of consonant (*cp.* § 43) :—

haben—die Haft; graben—die Gruft; schreiben—die Schrift; treiben—die Trift; geben—das Gift, die Mitgift.

biegen—die Bucht; pflegen—die Pflicht; ziehen—die Zucht; wiegen—das Gewicht.

laden—die Last; frieren—der Frost; verlieren—der Verlust.

(7) **-de, -at, -ut** (**-od, -öde**), which derive (mostly) fem. nouns :—

die Zier(*de*),	*die Begierde,*	*die Heimat,*	*der Zierat,*
ornament,	strong desire,	native land,	ornament,
die Armut,	*das Kleinod,*	*die Einöde.*	
poverty,	jewel, gem,	lonely desert.	

(8) **-nd,** which occurs in nouns that were originally present participles of verbs :—

Feind (Goth. *fijan,* to hate),	*Freund* (Goth. *frijôn,* to love),
enemy, "the hating one,"	friend, "the loving one,"
die Tugend (O.H.G. tugan = *taugen,* be of worth),	
virtue, excellence,	
der Heiland (*heilen,* to heal; *cp.* O.E. haelend);	*die Jugend.*
Saviour;	youth.

§ **67**. The suffixes *-heit* (*-keit*), *-schaft,* and *-tum* were originally nouns ("nominal suffixes"), and produce *chiefly abstract nouns.*

(1) **-heit** (= E. -head, -hood). The O.H.G. fem. noun *-heit* meant "state, character," a meaning which derivatives with *-heit* still bear:—

Menschheit,	*Gottheit;*	*Klugheit,*	*Thorheit;*	*Entschlossenheit;*
mankind,	Deity;	sagacity,	folly;	determination;
Einheit,	*Vielheit.*			
unity,	plurality.			

-keit is another form of *-heit*, and arose through the termination *-heit* being added to adjectives ending in *g* or *k*(*c*). For example:—

O.H.G.: uppig-heit.
M.H.G.: { üppec-heit.
{ üppekeit.
N.H.G.: *Üppigkeit* (luxuriance).

-keit is added to adjectives ending in *-ig*, *-lich*, *-bar*, *-sam*, *-er*:—

Traurigkeit,	*Höflichkeit,*	*Fruchtbarkeit,*	*Einsamkeit,*	*Heiterkeit.*
sadness,	politeness,	fertility,	loneliness,	cheerfulness.

-igkeit is added to adjectives in *-los* and *-haft*:—

Hilflosigkeit,	*Ehrenhaftigkeit.*
helplessness,	honesty, integrity.

But note also

Leichtigkeit,	*Schnelligkeit,*	*Schlechtigkeit;*
ease, facility,	speed,	badness, baseness;

and distinguish between—

Neuheit and	*Neuigkeit;*	*Einheit* and	*Einigkeit;*	*Kleinheit* and	*Kleinigkeit.*
novelty,	a piece of news;	unity,	unanimity;	smallness,	trifle, bagatelle.

) **-schaft** (= E. -ship), from *schaffen*, to create, shape, forms fem. nouns, and implies "quality, office":—

Herrschaft,	*Knechtschaft,*	*Eigenschaft,*	*Gemeinschaft,*
authority, government,	servitude,	quality,	community,
Bekanntschaft,	*Gesandtschaft.*		
acquaintance,	embassy.		

) **-tum** (= E. -dom: O.H.G. *tuom* meant "dignity, position, power") added to nouns forms neuter nouns :—

Herzogtum,	*Christentum,*	*Judentum.*
dukedom,	Christendom,	Judaism.

From adjectives or verbal stems it forms masc. and neuter nouns :

der Reichtum,	*der Irrtum;*	*das Eigentum,*	*das Heiligtum.*
riches,	mistake;	property,	sanctuary.

§ 68. Another suffix which originally was a noun is **-rich** (O.H.G. *rîch*, ruler, prince; related to Latin *rex*, *regis*. It is chiefly used to form proper nouns: *Friedrich* ("prince of peace"), *Heinrich* ("prince at home"), *Dietrich* ("ruler of the people": *cp.* the derivation of *deutsch*); but it appears also in

Enterich,	*Gänserich;*	*Wüterich.*
drake,	gander;	cruel tyrant.

FORMATION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 69. (1) Noun + noun with or without flexional ending in the first part :—

*der Mondschein, die Hausthüre;—der Gott*es*dienst, das Glück*s*kind, die Rind*er*herde, das Tag*e*werk.*

In compound nouns **s** is used as a sign of the genitive even in fem. nouns :—

*die Freiheit*s*liebe, der Geburt*s*tag, der Universität*s*freund.*

Compounds with originally weak fem. nouns (*cp.* § 46) retain the *n* of the genitive singular :—

*das Ehre*n*amt, die Rose*n*zeit, der Woche*n*tag, der Tasche*n*dieb* (pickpocket).

NOTE 1.—A compound noun takes the gender of the last part. Exceptions: *der Abscheu*, horror (*die Scheu*, fear); *der Mittwoch* (*die Woche*); *der Lorbeer*, laurel (*die Beere*, berry); *die Antwort* (*das Wort*).

NOTE 2.—The modern German noun *der Mut* represents two different words, O.H.G. *muot*, masc., and *muotî*, fem.; hence we have *der Edelmut*, *der Hochmut*, *der Freimut*, *der Kleinmut;* but also *die Anmut*, *die Demut*, *die Sanftmut*, *die Wehmut.*

NOTE 3.—Contractions are *der Schuster*, cobbler (*Schuh* + Lat. *sutor*, stitcher); *der Herzog*, duke (O.H.G. *heri-zogo*, "army-leader").

(2) Adjective + noun:—

der Halbmond; der Grossherzog; der Junker (squire), from *jung*(*er*) *Herr; die Jungfer* (maiden), from *jung*(*e*) *Frau.*

(3) Adverb or preposition or numeral + noun:—

die Aussenseite—Innenseite; die Vorwelt—Nachwelt; das Oberhaus —Unterhaus; der Eingang—Ausgang—Durchgang; das Zwielicht, *der Zwieback* (*zwie* for *zwei*); *das Dreieck—Viereck.*

(4) Verb + noun:—

das Schlaf-, *Wohn-*, *Ess-*, *Rauchzimmer;* with *e* as connecting vowel: *das Lesebuch*, *der Wartesaal*, *das Säugetier* (mammal).

(5) Compounds of whole phrases:—

das Vergissmeinnicht, *das Stelldichein* (rendezvous), *der Nimmersatt* (ravenous fellow).

C.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **70**. Most derivative adjectives are formed by means of suffixes, the principal of which are the following: (1) nominal suffixes which formerly were independent adjectives, namely, *-bar*, *-haft*, *-lich*, *-sam*; *-lei.* (2) *-ig*, *-isch*, *-en.*

§ **71**. Adjectives formed by means of nominal suffixes.

(1) **-bar** (*fr.* M.H.G. *bern*, to bear, Lat. *ferre*) forms adjectives from nouns and verbs, and denotes the same meaning as—

(*a*) "Bearing, full of":—

furchtbar,	*fruchtbar*,	*dienstbar*,	*ehrbar.*
fearful,	fertile,	subservient,	honourable.

(*b*) It corresponds to the force of the English termination *-able*, *-ible* :—

essbar, *trinkbar*, *teilbar*, *heilbar*, *haltbar.*

NOTE.—From the suffix *-bar* must be distinguished the adject. *bar*,

bare :	*bares Geld*,	*barer Unsinn*,	*barfuss.*
	ready money, cash,	sheer nonsense,	barefoot.

(2) **-haft** (fr. root of *haben*) is added to nouns, verbs, and adjectives. It denotes—

(*a*) "Possessing, having" :—

dauerhaft,	*fehlerhaft*,	*lasterhaft*,	*tugendhaft*,
durable, lasting,	faulty,	sinful, vicious,	virtuous,
schmackhaft,	*schmerzhaft*,	*rätselhaft*,	*boshaft.*
tasty,	painful,	enigmatical,	ill-natured.

(*b*) "Similar to, like" :—

riesenhaft,	*schülerhaft*,	*schalkhaft*,	*meisterhaft*,	*musterhaft.*
gigantic,	school-boyish,	roguish, waggish,	masterly,	exemplary.

NOTE.—Sometimes it is *-haftig*, as in—

wahrhaft(ig),	*teilhaft(ig)*,	*leibhaft(ig).*
true, genuine,	participant,	real, incarnate.

(3) **-lich** (= E. -ly, -like; O.H.G. lîh = body; M.H.G. (gi)lîch = *gleich*) almost always causes *Umlaut.* It denotes—

(*a*) "Like," when added to nouns :—

männlich,	*weiblich*,	*sächlich* (*sachlich*),	*menschlich.*
masculine,	feminine,	neuter (real, essential),	human.

(*b*) The same meaning as E. -able, -ible (cp. *-bar*), when added to verbal stems :—

glaublich,	*schädlich*,	*vergänglich*,	*unwiderstehlich.*
credible,	injurious,	perishable,	irresistible.

(*c*) Diminutive force when added to adjectives :—

säuerlich,	*süsslich*,	*kleinlich*,	*rötlich*,	*bläulich.*
sourish,	sweetish,	mean, paltry,	reddish,	bluish.

Observe the intrusive *t* in—

*eigen*t*lich*,	*gelegen*t*lich*,	*öffen*t*lich*,	*orden*t*lich*;
proper, true,	occasional,	public,	orderly;

and the insertion of *er* in—

fürchterlich,	*leserlich*,	*weinerlich*.
frightful,	legible,	whining, tearful.

(4) **-sam** (= E. -some) denotes "inclined to, able":—

arbeitsam,	*furchtsam*,	*sittsam*,	*mühsam*,	*heilsam*,
industrious,	timid,	chaste, modest,	toilsome,	wholesome,
sparsam;	*seltsam*,	*einsam*,	*gemeinsam*.	
economical;	strange, odd,	lonesome,	joint, combined.	

(5) **-lei** (originally a fem. noun; M.H.G. leie (fem.) = manner, sort) forms invariable adjectives:—

einerlei,	*zweierlei*,	*mancherlei*,	*allerlei*.
of one sort,	of two sorts,	of many sorts,	of all sorts.

§ **72**. Adjectives formed by means of the terminations *-ig*, *-isch*, *-en*.

(1) **-ig** (**-icht**) (= E. -y).

(*a*) From nouns:—

ästig,	*farbig*,	*schattig*,	*bärtig*,	*blutig*.
full of boughs,	coloured,	shady,	bearded,	bloody.

(*b*) From adjectives and adverbs:—

gütig,	*völlig*;	*heutig*,	*gestrig*,	*morgig*,
kind,	complete;	of to-day, modern,	of yesterday,	of to-morrow,

jetzig (*jetz*t),	*hie*s*ig* (*hie*r),	*dortig*,	*obig* (*oben*),
present, actual,	of this place,	of that place,	above mentioned,
vorig (*vor*),	*etwaig* from	*etwa*.	
preceding,	eventual,	perhaps, about.	

(*c*) From verbs: *gefällig*, obliging, *gläubig*, believing, credulous, *nachgiebig*, yielding.

NOTE 1.— *-ig* has almost supplanted *-icht*, which denotes exterior resemblance:—

steinicht (*steinig*), like stone, stony (full of stone),
holzicht (*holzig*), like wood, wooden (woody),
ölicht (*ölig*). somewhat oily (oily).

But in most cases there is no difference in meaning between the older forms in *-icht* and the more modern in *-ig;* note, however, that the adjective of *der Thor* (fool) is *thöricht.*

NOTE 2.— *-ig* added to nouns in *-sal* forms adjectives in *-selig*, as—

die Mühsal — *mühselig*, *die Trübsal—trübselig.*
trouble, affliction—distressing, sorrow — sad.

-selig, however, occurs also in adjectives which have no corresponding nouns in *-sal;* for example in—

glückselig, *leutselig*, *redselig*, *feindselig.*
blissful, affable, talkative, hostile.

NOTE 3.—The O.H.G. form of *-ig* was *ac* or *ic*, and by the presence or absence of the *Umlaut* in adjectives in *-ig* we can generally see whether the original suffix was *ic* or *ac*. In new formations with *-ig*, which are very numerous, we often find *Umlaut* present or absent in the same word:—

mutig, but *grossmütig*, *hochmütig;* *blutig*— *vollblütig;*
courageous, generous, haughty; bloody—full-blooded;

lustig—wollüstig (fr. *die Wollust*).
merry— sensual (voluptuousness).

(2) **-isch** (**-sch**) (= E. -ish) denotes "origin, belonging to."

(*a*) It forms adjectives (1) from proper names of countries, towns, and persons, *e.g. preussisch*, *schottisch*, *chinesisch*, *berlinisch*, *lutherisch;* (2) from common nouns denoting persons (especially nouns in *-er* denoting the agent), animals, and places, *e.g. malerisch*, *dichterisch*, *hündisch*, *himmlisch*, *irdisch*, *städtisch.*

(*b*) It corresponds to English adjectives in -ic, -ical

(Lat. *-icus*), in words of foreign origin: *philosophisch*, *historisch*, *komisch*, *chemisch*, *physisch*.

(*c*) It has depreciatory force in contradistinction to *-lich*:—

kindisch—kindlich,	*weibisch — weiblich*,	*höfisch — höflich*;
childish—childlike,	womanish — womanly,	fawning — polite;
herrisch — herrlich,	*bäurisch—bäuerlich.*	
domineering—lordly, grand,	boorish—countrified.	

NOTE.—*deutsch* is derived from O.H.G. *diot*, people, *diut-isk* (= *deut-sch*), "belonging to the people," popular, and, as a noun, meant originally the popular language as opposed to Latin, which was the language of the scholars. Similarly *Mensch* is derived from the O.H.G. adjective *mennisc(o)*, "belonging to man," human.

(3) **-en** (**-ern**), "made of," forms adjectives chiefly from nouns denoting material: *golden*, *irden*, *wollen*, *eichen*;—*kupfern*, *silbern*; *gläsern*, *brettern*, *stählern*, *steinern*.

NOTE.—There is a considerable number of "isolated" participial adjectives, *i.e.* past participles used as adjectives. These are either formed from verbs which have become obsolete or are used with a meaning different from that of the verbs to which they belong. Examples:—

eigen,	*erhaben* (fr. *erheben*),	*gediegen* (fr. *gedeihen*),
own,	lofty (to elevate),	pure, genuine (to thrive),
bescheiden (fr. *bescheiden*),	*belesen.*	
modest (to inform),	well-read.	

ADJECTIVES FORMED BY MEANS OF PREFIXES.

§ **73.** The prefixes which are used to form nouns (*cp.* § 63) are also, with the same force, employed for the derivation of adjectives.

NOTE 1.—*ur-* and *erz-* intensify the meaning of an adjective, thus:—

uralt,	*urkräftig*,	*urplötzlich*;	*erzschlau*,
very old,	exceedingly strong,	very sudden;	very cunning,
erzdumm,	*erzböse.*		
extremely stupid,	very wicked, angry.		

NOTE 2.—*un-* forms negative adjectives, as *unschön*, *unklug*.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **74**. An adjective or participle as the second component part may be compounded with any part of speech as the first part, thus:—

(1) *hellrot*, *dunkelrot*, *taubstumm* (deaf and dumb);—*wohlmeinend*, *hochgeachtet*, *sogenannt*.

(2) *feuerrot*, *pechschwarz*, *schneeweiss*, *pfeilschnell*, *gesetzmässig*, *bleischwer*, *harmlos*; *seel***en***froh* (heartily glad), *ries***en***gross*, *sorgenfrei*, *lieb***es***krank*.

(3) *schreibfaul*, *sterbenskrank*, *sehenswürdig*.

(4) *einhändig*, *zweihändig*, *dreieckig*, *viereckig*.

ADVERBS.

§ **75**. Comparatively few adverbs are primitive like *ab*, *an*, *aussen*, *innen*, *ja*. For the most part they are case forms of nouns and adjectives. As adverbs are formed most frequently from the genitive case, **s** (as the sign of the genitive) **has become an adverbial ending**. This explains such forms as *nacht***s** (*die Nacht*), *meinerseit***s** (*die Seite*), *allerding***s** (for gen. plur. *aller Dinge*).

§ **76**. Adverbs which are case forms of nouns:—

(1) **Genitive**: *abends*, *mitternachts*, *anfangs*, *teils*, *flugs*, (quickly, from *der Flug*), *spornstreichs* (instantly, "with stroke of spur").

Frequently case forms of nouns form adverbs when they are qualified by another word, but not when they stand alone; for example:—

Ding:	*allerdings*,	*neuerdings*,	*schlechterdings*.
	to be sure, indeed,	lately,	absolutely, utterly.
Fall:	*gleichfalls* or *ebenfalls*,	*jedenfalls*,	*keinesfalls*.
	likewise,	at any rate,	by no means.

Mal: *damals*, *jemals*, *niemals*.

Mass (M.H.G. *diu Mâze*, measure):	*einigermassen*,	*gewissermassen*,
	somewhat,	in some sort,
	bekanntermassen,	*dermassen*.
	as is well known,	to such a degree.

Seite: *einerseits, andrerseits, diesseits, jenseits, unsrerseits.*

Teil:	*meinesteils,*	*grösstenteils,*	*meistenteils.*	
	on my part,	largely,	mostly.	
Weg:	*keineswegs,*	*halbwegs.*		
	by no means,	tolerably.		
Weile:	*einstweilen, mittlerweile.*			
	meanwhile.			
Weise:	*stufenweise,*	*ausnahmsweise,*	*stückweise,*	*pfundweise,*
	step by step,	exceptionally,	piecemeal,	by the pound,
	versuchsweise ; —	*glücklicherweise,*	*unvorsichtigerweise.*	
	by way of experiment.	luckily,	incautiously.	

(2) **Dative** (plur.):

*allen*t*halben* (*Halbe-Seite*),	
everywhere,	
*weilan*d (*die Weile*),	*traun* (*die Treue*).
whiles, formerly,	truly, forsooth.

(3) **Accusatives**: *weg* (*der Weg*), *heim* (*das Heim*), *Knall und Fall*, on a sudden.

(4) **Old instrumental cases**: *heute* (from *hiu-tagu*); *heuer*, in this year (from *hiu-jâru*).

(5) **Cases of nouns with prepositions**: *zwar*, indeed (for *ze wâre*, in truth); *unterwegs; heutzutage; vorhanden*, at hand, present; *abhanden*, not at hand, lost; *zuguterletzt*, in conclusion, to finish well. The last word is an example of *Volks-Etymologie*, which has connected it with *der letzte*, whilst according to Weigand it comes from M.H.G. *diu letze*, parting cup, treat.

§ **77**. Adverbs derived from adjectives.

In Modern German there is no formal difference between the predicate adjective and the adverb. In O.H.G. the adjective in the function of the adverb took the ending *o*, weakened in M.H.G. to *e* (*cp.* § 35), and dropped altogether in N.H.G. (*cp.* rehto—rehte—*recht*), except in *lange*, and in the poetical forms *balde*, *schöne*, &c., which frequently occur in verse.

§ 78. Adverbs which are case forms of adjectives (or participles).

(1) **Genitives**: *eins*t (O.H.G. eines = *einmal*), *links*, *rechts*; *zusehends*, visibly; *vollends*, completely; *höchstens*, at most; *nächstens*, in a few days, soon; *stets*, always; *bereits*, already; *übrigens*, for the rest, moreover.

(2) **Cases of adjectives with prepositions**: *fürwahr*, *in kurzem*, *aufs neue*, *über kurz oder lang*, *entzwei* (for *in zwei*); *vollauf* (abundantly); *kurzum* (in short).

§ 79. **Adverbs derived from verbs**: *geschweige*, to say nothing of (for *ich geschweige*); *gelt!* is it not so? surely! (for *es gelte*); *nur* (O.H.G. *ni wâri*, were it not).

§ 80. Adverbs derived by suffixes (from adjectives, nouns, and prepositions):—

(1) -lich:	*schwerlich*,	*kürzlich*,	*freilich*,	*hoffentlich*.
	scarcely,	recently,	to be sure,	it is to be hoped.
(2) -lings:	*blindlings*,	*meuchlings*,	*rücklings*,	*jählings* (fr. *jäh*).
	blindly,	assassin-like,	backward,	abruptly.
(3) -wärts:	*aufwärts*,	*abwärts*,	*vorwärts*,	*rückwärts*,
	upward,	downward, aside,	forward,	backward,
	südwärts,	*himmelwärts*.		
	southward,	heavenward.		

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 81. Many prepositions, like the adverbs, are cases of nouns and adjectives, thus:—

der Trotz (*Trutz*),	*trotz*,	*trotzdem*, in spite of that.
der Wille,	(*um*)—*willen*,	*meine*t*willen* (for the acc. *um meinen Willen*).
der Weg,	*wegen*,	*meine*t*wegen* (for dat. plur., *von meinen Wegen*, cp. *von Rechts wegen*).
die Halbe (= *Seite*),	*halben* (*halber*),	*meine*t*halben* (for dat. plur., *meinen Halben*).

(*der Betreff*),	*betreffs*, *in betreff*,	*in betreff* (*betreffs*) *Ihres Vorschlages*, with reference to your proposal.
die Kraft,	*kraft*,	*kraft seines Amtes*, by virtue of his office.
(*der Behuf*),	*behufs* (*zum Behuf*),	*behufs* (*zum Behuf*) *der Waisen*, in behalf of the orphans.
die Statt,	(*an*)*statt*,	*anstatt seiner*, instead of him; *an seiner Statt*, in his place.

Similarly: *zwecks*, *unweit*, *längs*, *laut*, *ausserhalb*, *innerhalb*.

§ **82**. Many *conjunctions* are, like the adverbs, case forms of nouns and adjectives, *e.g.* *weil* (acc. of *die Weile*), *falls* (genit. of *der Fall*), *während* (partic. adj. of *währen*), *ob* (dat. of O.H.G. *iba*, "doubt," hence literally meaning "in doubt of").

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY.

Only those words are given which require special explanation. cp. = compare. fr. = from. E. = English. O.E. = Old English (Anglo-Saxon). Fr. = French. Gr. = Greek. L.Lat. = Late Latin. Ohg. = Old High German. Mhg. = Middle High German. p.p. = past participle. ∾ means: from the same root as; or allied to. Cognate equivalent words are indicated by small capitals. Derivatives and compound words are contained in square brackets [ ] *at the end.*

ab, OFF; *ab und zu*, off and on. Observe the force of *ab* in the following: *Abgott, m.* false god, idol; *Abgrund, m.* huge expanse, abyss; *Abgunst, f.* disfavour, ill-will.

Abenteuer, *n.* ADVENTURE; fr. Fr.; Mhg. *aventiure.*

[*Abenteurer—abenteuerlich.*]

aber (orig. adv.), primarily "again," which meaning is still preserved in *abermals*, once more; *aber und aber*, again and again. From the orig. meaning "again" *aber* gradually developed the force of "too much," "pseudo," "false": *Aberglaube, m.* superstition; *Abersinn, m.* stubbornness; *Aberwille, m.* reluctance; *Aberwitz, m.* false wit, madness.

abspenstig, disloyal, rebellious; fr. *abspannen*, to unyoke.

abtrünnig, faithless, apostate; fr. *trennen*, to separate.

[*von der Religion — werden*, to forsake one's religion.]

abwesend, absent; fr. Mhg. *wesen*, to be; cp. *anwesend.*

[*Abwesenheit*, absence.]

Achse, *f.* AXLE; fr. Lat. *axis.*

[*Achsel, f.* shoulder.]

ächzen, to groan; "to cry *ach.*"

Adel, *m.* nobility; (ETHEL-); fr. Ohg. *uodil*, hereditary estate.

[*edel*, noble; *adelig*, of noble birth.]

Adler, *m.* eagle; for *edel Aar*, noble bird of prey; Mhg. *adelar.*

Alarm, *m.* ALARM. See *Lärm.*

albern, silly, simple; orig. "candid," "truthful"; Ohg. *alawâr*, "all true." For similar change of meaning cp. *schlecht* and E. silly.

allein, ALONE; *all + ein.*

allenthalben, everywhere. See § 81.

allerdings, to be sure, indeed. See § 75.

allmählich, gradual; fr. *gemach*, comfortable; slow.

Almosen, *n.* ALMS; fr. Gr.

Alp, *f.*, or *Alpdrücken*, *n.* nightmare (∾ E. ELF).

Amboss, *m.* ANvil; fr. *an* and Mhg. *bôzan*, to strike, ∾ E. *to beat.*

Ameise, *f.* ANT (EMMET).

[*emsig*, industrious.]

Ampel, *f.* hanging lamp; fr. Lat. *ampulla*, flask.

anberaumen, to appoint (a time); not connected with *Raum;* fr. Mhg. *berâmen.*

Angebinde, *n.* gift, birthday present; fr. *anbinden.* The gift used to be bound on the neck or arm of the recipient.

Angst, *f.* ANXIETY; ∾ *eng*, narrow, close.

[*ängstlich*, anxious; *ängstigen*, to alarm.
mir ist angst (pred. adj.), I am uneasy.]

anheischig; *sich — machen*, to bind (oblige) oneself. *an* for *ant=ent* and *heissen.*

Antlitz, *n.* face; *ant* and lost root ∾*wlitan*, to see; O.E. *andwlita.*

anwesend, present. See *abwesend.*

[*Anwesenheit.*]

Apfelsine, *f.* orange; lit. "apple from China"; *Sina* is Dutch for China.

Argwohn, *m.* suspicion; fr. *arg*, base, and *Wahn*, illusion.

[*argwöhnisch*, suspicious; *argwöhnen*, to suspect.]

Armbrust, *f.* cross-bow. This word is a good example of popular etymology. It has nothing to do with either *Arm* or *Brust*, but is an adaptation of the L. Lat. *arcubalista.* For similar examples of pop. etym. cp. *Eiland*, *Sündflut.*

Arzt, *m.* physician; fr. Gr. *archiatros.*

[*ärztlich*, medical; *Arznei*, *f.* medicine.]

ätzen, to corrode, ETCH; factitive of *essen.*

auch, also, EKE.

Au(e), *f.* (poet.) plain, meadow; fr. Gothic *ahva*, Lat. *aqua*, thus lit. meaning "the land surrounded by water."

Aufruhr, *m.* riot, UPROAR; fr. *rühren*, to touch, "to stir up."

[*Aufrührer*, rebel; *aufrührerisch*, mutinous.]

Augenbraue, *f.* EYEBROW.

Augenlid, *n.* (not *—lied*), EYELID.

Ax*t*, *f.* AXE; Mhg. *ackes+t.*

Bach, *m.* brook, BECK.

Bahre, *f.* BARROW, BIER; ∾ Mhg. *bern*, to bear.

bald, soon; orig. "keen, quick," =E. BOLD. See *-bold.*

bange, anxious; fr. *be* and *eng*(*e*). See *Angst.*

[*Bangigkeit*, anxiety; *sich bangen nach*, to long for.]

Bankerott, *m.* BANKRUPTCY; fr. Ital. *banco rotto*, broken bank.

Bärme, *f.* yeast, BARM; ∾ Mhg. *bern;* cp. *Bahre.*

barmherzig, merciful; *be-armherz*, like Lat. *misericors.*

(*a*) **Bauer**, *m.* peasant, BOOR; fr. *bauen*, to build, till.

[*bäu*(*e*)*risch*, boorish; *bäuerlich*, like a farmer.]

(*b*) **Bauer**, *m.* or *n.* bird-cage; fr. the orig. meaning of *bauen*, "to dwell."

Baum, *m.* tree, BEAM; ∾ *bauen.*

Beamte(r), *m.* official; for *beamtete*(*r*), "one provided with an office" (*Amt*, *n.*); Ohg. *ambaht.*

Becher, *m.* cup, BEAKER; fr. Ital. *bicchiere.*

Becken, *n.* BASIN.

Beere, *f.* BERRY.

befehlen, to command; orig. "to entrust," as still in *Gott befohlen!* adieu!

begehren, to desire, YEARN; ∾ *gern.*

[*Begier*(*de*), *f.* strong desire, passion.

behagen, to please, suit; ⁓ *Hag*, HEDGE, enclosure (hence the idea of security and comfort).

[*behaglich*, cosy. See *hegen*.]

behelligen, to annoy; fr. Mhg. *hellec*, weary.

behende, nimble, HANDY; fr. *Hand;* Mhg. *bî hende* (dat. sing. of hand).

[*Behendigkeit*, nimbleness.]

beherbergen (wk.), to shelter, HARBOUR. See *Herberge*.

Behuf, *m.* BEHOOF, behalf; ⁓ *heben*.

[*behufs* or *zum Behuf der Witwen*, for the benefit of the widows.]

Beichte, *f.* confession; fr. Ohg. *bi-jehan*, to confess = modern *bejahen*, to affirm, "to say yes."

Beispiel, *n.* example; lit. "additional statement"; not connected with *Spiel*, but ⁓ Ohg. *spel* (= E. spel in Gospel), statement.

beizen, to corrode (BAIT); factitive of *beissen*.

bekommen, (*a*) to get, "to COME BY a thing"; (*b*) to suit. See *bequem*.

Bengel, *m.* unmannered fellow; lit. "cudgel"; ⁓ to bang = to beat.

bequem, comfortable, convenient; ⁓ Ohg. *queman* = *kommen*.

[*Bequemlichkeit*, convenience, comfort.]

bergen, to hide (BURY), save.

[*Berg* — *Burg*, *Bürger* — *Bürge* (surety, bail)—*borgen*.]

Bernstein, *m.* amber, "BURNING STONE."

Bescheid, *m.* (final) answer, information. See *bescheiden*.

[*Bescheid sagen lassen*, to send one (dat.) word.]

bescheiden, modest; lit. "(well) instructed"; old p.p. of the str. verb *bescheiden*, to instruct, to allot.

[*es ist mir nicht beschieden*, it is not granted to me.]

bescheren, to give a present ("as one's SHARE"); ⁓ *Schar*, troop.

beschwichtigen, to appease; fr. *schweigen*, to be silent.

Besen, *m.* broom, BESOM; Mhg. *besem*.

[*Neue Besen kehren gut.*]

besser, BETTER; fr. obsolete adv. comparat. *bass*, better; cp. *Busse* and *fürbass*.

[*zum besten halten* (*haben*), make a fool of.]

beugen, to bend, BOW; factitive of *biegen*; cp. *bücken*.

bewegen (wk.), to move; ⁓ *Weg* and *Wagen*.

bezichtigen, accuse of; fr. *zeihen;* cp. *verzeihen*.

bieder, honest, upright; ⁓ *darben*, to be in want, and *bedürfen*, to need.

[*Biederkeit*, *f.* integrity; *Biedermann*, upright man.]

biegsam, flexible; (BUXOM; observe the peculiar deviation in the meaning).

bin, am; ⁓ Lat. *fio* and *fui*.

binnen, within; *be* and *innen*.

Birne, *f.* PEAR; fr. Mhg. *birn*, plur. of *bir*, pear.

Bisschen, *n.* a little BIT; fr. *beissen*.

[*ein Bisschen Brot* (*Wasser*, &c.), a little bread (water, &c.).]

bitter, BITTER; ⁓ *beissen*.

[*Bitterkeit; verbittern*.]

Bivouak, *n.* Fr.; fr. German *Beiwacht;* cp. *Marschall*.

blank, bright, BLANK; fr. *blinken*, to BLINK.

blasen, to blow (BLAST).

Blatt, *n.* leaf, BLADE; ⁓ *blühen*, *Blume* and *Blüte*.

[*blättern*, turn over the leaves (in a book); *blätterig*, leafy.]

Blech, *n.* tinplate; ⁓ *bleich*.

bleiben, to remain; fr. *be* and *leiben;* which see.

bleich, pale (BLEAK); ∾ *blicken*, to look.

[*bleichen* (wk. tr.), to bleach; *Bleiche*, *f.* bleach-field.
erbleichen (st. intr.), to turn pale; *Bleiche*, *f.* paleness.]

blenden, to BLIND, dazzle; factitive fr. *blind*.

Blitz, *m.* lightning; ∾ *blinken*, to glitter.

blühen, to bloom, BLOW; ∾ *Blume*, *Blüte*.

(*a*) **blutarm′**, extremely poor; lit. "merely poor"; *blut*, L.G. for *bloss*, mere, bare.

(*b*) **blut′arm**, poor in BLOOD, anæmic.

Boden, *m.* ground, BOTTOM; Mhg. *bodem*.

[*Grund und Boden*, property.]

-bold, adj. noun used in compounds only; ∾ E. BOLD, BALD. See *bald*.

[*Trunkenbold*, *m.* drunkard; *Raufbold*, bully, fighter; *Witzbold*, joker.]

Born, *m.* fount, well = *Brunnen*; ∾ BOURN. Scotch, BURN.

Bösewicht, *m.* rascal; "wicked WIGHT."

brach, fallow, untilled; fr. *brechen*.

brauchen, make use of; ∾ to BROOK = bear. O.E. *brakan*, to enjoy.

[*Brauch*, *m.* custom; *bräuchlich*, customary; *brauchbar*, serviceable.

Bräutigam, *m.* BRIDEGROOM, "man of the bride"; fr. *Braut*, and Ohg. *gomo* = Lat. *homo*, man.

Brett, *n.* plank, BOARD.

Brief, *m.* letter; (BRIEF, fr. Lat. *brevis*).

Brille, *f.* pair of spectacles; ∾ Lat. *beryllus*.

Brocken, *m.* crumb; "BROKEN-off piece"; fr. *brechen*. See *Brosam*.

Brombeere, *f.* BRAMBLE-(BERRY).

Brosam, *m.*, *Brosame*, *f.* crumb; ∾ O.E. *breotan* = *brechen*.

Brühe, *f.* BROTH; ∾ *brauen*, to BREW.

Brunnen, *m.* well, BOURN. See *Born*.

Brunst, *f.* BURNING, passion; fr. *brennen*.

[*Feuersbrunst*, conflagration.]

Büchse, *f.* (1) BOX; (2) rifle.

Buchstabe, *m.* letter of the alphabet; lit. "a STAVE of the BEECH tree" on which runes were cut.

[*buchstäblich*, literal; *buchstabieren*, to spell.]

Bucht, *f.* bay (BIGHT); fr. *biegen*.

Bügel, *m.* (or *Steigbügel*), stirrup; fr. *biegen*.

bunt, many-coloured, gay; ∾ Lat. *punctus*, dotted with points; *cp.* E. *bunting* (a ship's flag).

Burg, *f.* stronghold (BOROUGH, -BURY); fr. *bergen*.

Bürge, *m.* bail; fr. *borgen*.

Bursche, *m.* young fellow, student, companion; Mhg. *burse*, bag; fellowship, guild; ∾ *Börse*, PURSE; stock exchange.

Bürste, *f.* BRUSH; fr. *Borste*, *f.* BRISTLE.

Busen, *m.* BOSOM; Ohg. *buosem*.

Busse, *f.* atonement; ∾ *besser*.

[*büssen*, to atone for.]

Büttel (obs.), *m.* BEADLE; fr. *bieten*, to summon, through Lat. *bedellus*.

da, abbreviation of *dar*, THERE; the older form *dar* is retained in *darin*, *daraus*, &c.

Dach, *n.* roof (THATCH); — *und Fach*, house and home.

[*decken*, to cover; ∾ Lat. *tegere*.]

Dampf, *m.* steam; ∾ DAMP.

[*Dampfer*, *m.* steamer; *dämpfen*, to stew, muffle; *dumpf*, musty.]

(*a*) **dauern**, to last, ENDURE; ∾ Lat. *durare*.

[*Dauer*, *f.* duration, permanence; *dauerhaft*, durable, permanent.]

(*b*) **dauern**, to grieve; *er dauert mich*, I am sorry for him. ∾ *teuer*.

[*bedauern*, *tr.* to regret: *bedauerlich*, *bedauernswert*, regrettable.]

Daumen, *m.* THUMB; *Däumling*, *m.* (fig.) Tom Thumb.

(*a*) **Degen**, *m.* warrior (THANE; O.E. THEGN); ∾ *dienen* and *Demut*.

(*b*) **Degen**, *m.* sword (DAGGER); fr. Fr. *dague*.

Demut, *f.* humility; lit. "disposition of a servant"; Mhg. *dê*, servant, and *Mut*. For the gender see § 69, Note 2.

[*demütig*, humble; *demütigen*, to humble; *Demütigung*, humiliation.]

desto, so much THE, with comparat.; fr. *des* and Ohg. *diû*, the instrumental case of the article; *je mehr*, *desto besser*, the more the better; *cp.* Lat. *quo plus*, *eo melius*.

deuten, to interpret; point at; lit. "to make plain or popular"; fr. Ohg. *diot*, people. ∾ *deutsch*.

deutsch, German (DUTCH). See § 72 (2).

dicht, *dick*, THICK, TIGHT.

dichten, to compose as) poet); fr. Lat. *dictare*, to dictate.

[*Dichter*, poet; *dichterisch*, poetical; *Gedicht*, poem; *Dichtung*, poetry.]

Dienstag, *m.* TUESDAY, day of Tiu, Germanic war-god (= Zeus).

Ding, *n.* THING; orig. public transaction, law-court; cp. *verteidigen* (in which *-dig*= *ding-*).

doch, yet, THOUGH.

Donnerstag, *m.* THURSDAY, day of Donar, god of THUNDER.

Dorf, *n.* village (THORP). See *Tölpel*.

[*dörflich*, pertaining to a village; *Dörfler*, *m.* villager.]

drechseln, to turn (on a lathe); fr. *drehen*, to turn, twist.

dreschen, to THRESH, THRASH.

ducken, to dive (DUCK), fig. to humble; frequent. of *tauchen*.

[*Duckmäuser*, *m.* hypocritical person, "sneak"; (*mausen*, to pilfer).]

dulden, to tolerate, suffer (THOLE).

[*Dulder*, sufferer; *duldsam*, tolerant; *Geduld*, *f.* patience; *geduldig*.]

dumm, stupid, (DUMB).

Düne, *f.* hill of sand, DUNE; ∾ DOWN.

dünken, *deuchte*, *gedeucht*, or *dünkte*, *gedünkt*; *mich dünkt*. METHINKS.

Durchlaucht, *f.* (Se., Ew. —), "serene highness"; old p.p. of *durchleuchten*, shine THROUGH.

dürr, DRY; (O.E. THYRRE).

[(*ver*)*dorren* (intr.), dry up; *dörren* (tr.), to dry; *Durst*, *m.* THIRST.]

eben, smooth, EVEN; *Ebene*, *f.* plain.

echt, genuine; fr. Ohg. *êhaft* (*ê*= *Ehe*, *f.* marriage), "referring to law (of marriage), legitimate." L.G. has frequently *cht* where H.G. has *ft.*; cp. *Schlucht*.

Eck, *n.* Ecke, *f.* corner, EDGE.

[*Dreieck*, triangle; *dreieckig*, triangular; *Viereck*, *viereckig*.]

Ehe, *f.* matrimony; Mhg. *ê*(*we*); ∾ Lat. *aevum*, long time, eternity. See *echt*.

[*ewig*, eternal.]

eher, sooner, ERE, comparat. of adv. *ehe*.

Eid, *m.* OATH. See *Meineid*.

[*vereiden*, to swear in.]

eigen, OWN.

[*Eigentum*, *n.* property; *Eigentümer*, *m.* proprietor; *eigentümlich*, peculiar.]

Eiland, *n.* island; lit. "lonely land," fr. *ein* = one = alone = lonely, and *Land*; Mhg. *ei*(*n*) *lant*; cp. *elf*. E. *island* ∾ *Aue*, *f.*, which see.

Eimer, *m.* pail, "vessel with one handle"; fr. *ein* and *bern*, to bear; Mhg. *eimber* or *einber*. See *Zuber*.

einäschern, to destroy, reduce to ASHES; fr. *Asche*, *f.*

einfach, simple, plain, "of one compartment"; fr. *ein* and *Fach*.

[*zweifach*, double.]

einfältig, simple, silly, "one folded"; fr. *ein* and *Falte*.

einhellig, unanimous; ∾ *hallen*, to sound.

Einöde, *f.* desert; not a compound of *öde*; fr. *ein*, solitary, and Ohg. termination *-ôti*; same suffix as in *Klein-od*, *n.* jewel.

Einsiedler, *m.* hermit; ∾ *sitzen*.

einst, ONCE. See § 78 (1).

Eintracht, *f.* harmony; fr. *treffen*, not *tragen*. L.G. *cht* for H.G. *ft*; cp. *echt*.

[*Zwietracht*, discord; *zwie* = *zwei*.]

eitel, vain (IDLE).

Elend, *n.* misery; lit. "banishment." Ohg. *eli-lente*, "other land"; ∾ Lat. *alius*. See *Elsass*.

[*elend* (adj.), wretched.]

elf, ELEVEN; Ohg. *einlif*, "one over ten"; cp. *Eiland* and *zwölf*.

Elfenbein, *n.* ivory (= *Elephantenbein*).

Elsass, *n.* ALSACE; Ohg. *Elisazzo*, "dweller (*sazzo* = *Sass*) in another (*eli*) land," *i.e.* beyond the Rhine; cp. *Elend*.

empor, upward. Mhg. *enbor*; fr. *bern*, to bear, "borne on high."

[*sich empören*, to revolt; *Empörung*, mutiny; *empörerisch*, mutinous.]

emsig, diligent; ∾ *Ameise*, ANT.

eng, narrow; ∾ *Angst*. See *bange*.

entgegen, **entlang**, **entzwei**; not from prefix *ent*, but fr. *en* = *in* + excrescent *t*.

entweder . . . (*oder*), EITHER . . . (OR), "one of two." *ent* = *ein* + *deweder*. Etymology of the latter part doubtful.

erbarmen (refl.), to have mercy. See *barmherzig*.

[*erbärmlich*, pitiable.]

erdrosseln, to THROTTLE. Mhg *drozze*, throat (modern *Kehle*, *f.*).

ereignen (refl.), to occur, for older *eräug(n)en*, "to bring before one's eye."

[*Ereignis*, *n.* event.]

ergötzen, to delight; lit. "to make forget." Mhg. *ergetzen*.

erhaben, lofty, majestic; old p.p. of *erheben*, to raise.

Erker, *m.* balcony, "bow window"; ∾ Lat. *arcus*, arch.

erlauben, to allow (LEAVE); ∾ *lieben*, and *Urlaub*, furLOUGH.

erlaucht, illustrious; fr. *erleuchten*; cp. *Durchlaucht*.

Erl(en)könig, L.G. for *Elfenkönig*, ELF-KING.

erquicken, to refresh (QUICKEN); Ohg. *quec* (∾ Lat. *vivus*), living, fresh; cp. *keck* and *Quecksilber*.

Erz-, *chief-*, ARCH-; fr. Gr. *archi-*, prominent.

[*Erzherzog*, archduke; *Erzbischof*.]

Esel, *m.* ASS; ∾ Lat. *asellus*, dimin. of *asinus*.

Essig, *m.* vinegar (ACID); fr. Lat. *acetum*.

Estrich, *m.* and *n.* lime-stone floor; fr. Lat. *astricus*; "pavement in the form of stars."

ewig, eternal. See *Ehe*.

-fach. See *einfach*.

Faden, *m.* thread, FATHOM; Mhg. *vadem*.

[(*ein*)*fädeln*, to thread (in).]

fähig, able; fr. *fahen*, older form of *fangen*, "able to catch."

[*Fähigkeit*, ability; *befähigen*, to enable.]

fahl, falb, fallow. See § 40 (*j*).

Fähn(d)rich, *m.* ensign, "standard-bearer"; fr. *Fahne, f.* flag, and *rich*, as in *Fried-rich*, *Hein-rich*.

Fähre, *f.* FERRY ; fr. *fahren*.

-falt, *-fältig ;* fr. *Falte, f.* FOLD. See *einfältig*.

fangen, to catch (FANG).

Fasan, *m.* PHEASANT.

Fass, *n.* cask, VAT ; ~ *fassen*, to contain ; hence *gefasst*, composed ; *Fassung*, composure.

fast, almost, "close by"; orig. adv. of *fest*, close, FAST. See § 35.

Fastnacht (in South Ger. *Fasching*), *m.* Shrove Tuesday. Popular etymology connects it with *fasten*, to FAST, "the night before the fasting period (of Lent)." It is probably derived from *faseln*, to behave (or talk) foolishly.

Fehde, *f.* FEUD, strife ; ~ *Feind*.

fehlen, to be wanting, FAIL, through Fr. *faillir*.

[*Fehler, m.* fault, mistake ; *fehlerhaft*, faulty ; *(un)fehlbar*, (in)-fallible.]

Feier, *f.* celebration, holiday ; ~ *Ferien ;* Lat. *feriæ*.

[*feierlich*, solemn ; *feiern*, to celebrate ; be idle ; hence *Feierabend machen*, to leave off working.]

Feim, *m.* FOAM, scum (=*Schaum, m.*).

[*abgefeimt*, arrant, crafty ; *cp.* E. "scum of society."]

Feind, *m.* enemy, FOE (FIEND); pres. partic. of old *fiên*, to hate.

[*feind* (pred. adj.) = *feindlich* or *feindselig*, hostile.]

Felleisen, *n.* knapsack ; fr. Fr. *valise*. Popular etymology connects it with *Fell* and *Eisen*.

Ferge, *m.* FERRY-man ; fr. *fahren*.

fertig, ready ; lit. "ready for a journey"; fr. *Fahrt*.

[*(an)fertigen*, to manufacture ; *Fertigkeit, f.* skill.]

Fessel, *f.* FETTER ; ~ *Fuss*.

Fittich, *m.* pinion, wing ; ~ *Feder*, FEATHER.

flechten, to PLAIT, braid.

Fledermaus, *f.* = *Flattermaus*, bat, "FLITTER-MOUSE."

Flinte, *f.* gun, musket (FLINT-lock).

Flitterwochen, *f. pl.* "tinsel-weeks," honeymoon ; fr. *flittern*, to glitter.

flott, AFLOAT ; merry ; ⎫ from
Flotte, *f.* FLEET, navy ; ⎭ *fliessen*.

Flug, *m.* FLIGHT ; fr. *fliegen*.

[*Flügel, m.* wing ; *flügge*, FLEDGED.]

Fohlen, *n.*, or *Füllen, n.* FOAL, FILLY ; fr. Lat. *pullus*, the young of an animal.

Folter, *f.* torture ; fr. L.Lat. *poledrus*, a young horse. The instrument of torture had originally the shape of a horse.

fordern, to demand, call FORTH.

fördern, to FURTHER ; comparat. of adv. *vor*.

Forst, *m.* FOREST.

[*Förster, m.* FORESTER ; *Försterei, f.* forester's house.]

Frankreich, *n.* FRANCE, "realm (empire) of the FRANKS."

Frau, *f.* woman, wife, mistress ; fem. of Ohg. *frô*, master, lord. See *Fron-*.

[*frauenhaft*, woman-like.]

freien, to court, woo ; orig. "to love"; ~ *Freund*.

[*Freier*, suitor ; *auf Freiers Füssen gehen*, to go a-courting.]

Freitag, *m.* FRIDAY ; ~ *Freia*, the goddess of love.

fressen, to devour (FRET, contraction fr. *for-etan*) ; fr. *veressen*.

Freund, *m.* FRIEND ; lit. "loving"; fr. Goth. *frijôn*, to love. See *freien* and *Friede*.

Friede(n), *m.* peace ; ~ *freien* and *Freund*.

[*friedlich—befriedigen—zufrieden*.]

Friedhof, *m.* churchyard; fr. Mhg. *vride*, fence, enclosure; cp. *einfriedigen*, to hedge in.

fröhlich, glad, FROLICsome.

frommen, to avail; fr. orig. meaning of *fromm*, good, useful.

[*wozu frommt das?* what is the good of it?]

Fron-, in cmpds., lordly, holy; fr. Ohg. *frôno*, gen. plur. of *frô*, master, lord.

[*Fronamt*, *n.* high mass; *Fronleichnam*, *m.* the Lord's body; *frönen*, (*a*) to slave, (*b*) to be addicted to.]

Frost, *m.* FROST; fr. *frieren*.

[*frostig—frösteln* (impers.), to feel chilly.]

führen, to lead, factit. of *fahren*.

für, FOR; ∾ *vor*; *Fürwitz* = *Vorwitz*, *m.* FORwardness, rashness.

fürbass (poet.), FORwards; lit. "better forth (further)"; *bass* = *besser*.

Fürst, *m.* prince (FIRST); Ohg. *furisto*, superl. of *vor*, "foremost."

Furt, *f.* FORD; fr. *fahren*.

[*Frankfurt*, *Erfurt*; cp. *Oxford*.]

Futter, *n.* (*a*) FODDER, (*b*) lining.

[*füttern*, to FEED.]

Gans, *f.* GOOSE; ∾ Lat. *anser*.

gar (adv.), quite, very (YARE); (adj.) "cooked," "ready"; ∾ *gerben*, to dress hides (=make ready).

[*ganz und gar nicht*, not at all.]

Gardine, *f.* CURTAIN; fr. Ital.

Gasse, *f.* lane (GATE); cp. "Cowgate," "Gallowgate."

Gast, *m.* GUEST; lit. "stranger"; ∾ Lat. *hostis*.

[*gastlich*, hospitable.]

Gatte, *m.* husband; ∾ *gut* and E. *gather* = to bring together.

[*gatten*, to join, couple; *Gattung*, species, race.]

Gauch, *m.* simpleton, GAWKY.

Gaudieb, *m.* (= *Gauner*, *m.*) swindler, sharper; lit. "smart thief"; fr. *gau* (obsol.), quick.

gaukeln, to JUGGLE; fr. Lat. *joculari*.

[*Gaukler*, *m.* conjurer; *Gaukelei*, *f.* jugglery; *gaukelhaft*, juggling, illusory.]

gebären, to give BIRTH to, to BEAR; Mhg. *bern*; Lat. *fero*.

[*Geberde*, *f.* gesture; *geberden* (refl.), to behave; *gebühren*, to be due: *Ehre dem Ehre gebührt.*]

gediegen, unmixed, pure; old p.p. of *gedeihen*.

Gedränge, *n.* crowd, THRONG; fr. *dringen*.

gedunsen, bloated, puffed up; fr. *dinsen* (obsol.), a frequent. of *dehnen*, to stretch.

Gefahr, *f.* danger, PERIL (FEAR).

[*gefährlich*, dangerous; *gefährden*, to endanger.]

Gefährte, *m.* companion; lit. "fellow-traveller"; fr. *fahren*.

geflissen*t*lich, intentional; fr. *Fleiss*.

Gegend, *f.* district, region; fr. *gegen*, "what is opposite one"; cp. Fr. *contrée*.

geheim, secret; lit. "pertaining to one's HOME."

[*Geheimnis*, *n.* secret; *geheimnisvoll*, mysterious.]

gehen, to GO. The p.p. *gegangen* is derived from the Ohg. infin. *gangen* (= *gân* = *gên* = *gehen*); cp. *stehen*.

Geier, *m.* vulture; ∾ *gern* and *Gier*, "the greedy bird."

Geiss, *f.* (*Ziege*, *f.*) GOAT.

Geissel, *f.* scourge, GOAD; ∾ *Ger*, *m.* spear = O.E. *gâr*.

[*geisseln*, to lash; to criticise severely.]

Geist, *m.* mind, spirit, GHOST.

[*geistig — geistlich — geisterhaft*, mental—spiritual — ghostly. NOTE.—*geistige Getränke*, spirituous liquors; *Geistliche*(*r*), ecclesiastic, clergyman.]

gelahrt=*gelehrt*, LEARNED; cp. *gesandt=gesendet.*

Geld, *n.* money; fr. *gelten*, to be worth.

gelegen*t*lich, occasionally, for *gelegenheitlich.*

Gelenk, *n.* joint, LINK; fr. *lenken*, to direct, bend.

gelinde, soft, gentle (LITHE).

gellen, to sound shrilly, YELL.

geloben, to vow, promise; hence "*das gelobte Land.*"

[*Gelöbnis*, *n.* (or *Gelübde*, *n.*), solemn promise, vow.]

gemach (adv.), gently, softly. See *allmählich.*

[*gemächlich*, slow, comfortable.]

Gemach, *n.* apartment; orig. "comfort," from *gemach.*

gemein, MEAN; joint, common; cp. *Meineid.*

[*Gemein(d)e*, *f.* congregation.]

Gemüt, *n.* disposition, MOOD; fr. *Mut.*

genesen, to recover (from illness); ∾ *nähren*, to NOURISH.

geniessen, to enjoy; ∾ *Nutzen*, *m.* advantage.

[*Genuss*, *m.* enjoyment; *Genosse*, *m.* companion.]

gerben, to tan, "make ready." See *gar.*

gern, willingly (YEARN); ∾ *begehren*, *Gier*, *Geier.*

Gerücht, *n.* rumour; fr. Ohg. *ruchôn=rufen.*

geschäftig, busy; **geschäftlich**, commercial; fr. *schaffen.*

geschehen, to happen; ∾ *schicken.*

[*Geschichte*, *f.* history; "occurrence." *Geschick*, *n.* (1) destiny; (2) skill.]

gescheit (*gescheut*), sensible; lit. "able to distinguish"; fr. *scheiden.*

Geschlecht, *n.* species, sex; fr. Mhg. *slahte*, manner, kind; ∾ *Schlag: Menschenschlag*, *m.* race of men.

Geschmack, *m.* taste; fr. *schmecken*, to taste, SMACK.

Geschmeide, *n.* jewellery; fr. *schmieden*, to forge.

[*geschmeidig*, flexible, pliant.]

geschweige, to omit; to say nothing of; for *ich geschweige.*

Geselle, *m.* journeyman; companion; fr. *Saal*, hall; cp. *Gefährte.*

Gesinde, *n.* domestics, farm-servants; fr. Ohg. *sind*, journey; thus lit. "attendants on a journey."

Gesindel, *n.* rabble; same as *Gesinde* with derogatory force.

Gestade, *n.* shore; fr. *stehen.*

Gestalt, *f.* shape; fr. *stellen*, to place.

[*gestalten*, to form; *gestaltig*, shaped.]

gestehen, to confess ("STAND to").

[*Geständnis*, confession; *geständig*, confessing.]

Getreide, *n.* corn; fr. *tragen*, and so lit. "what the earth bears"; Mhg. *getregede.*

gewahr werden, to become AWARE.

Gewand, *n.* garment; fr. *winden*, to WIND.

gewandt, skilled; fr. *wenden*, to turn; cp. *versed*, fr. Lat. *vertere*, to turn.

Gewehr, *n.* musket; fr. *wehren*, to defend.

Geweih, *n.* antlers; lit. "weapon"; fr. Ohg. *wîc*, fight.

Gier(de), *f.* strong desire, GREED; ∾ *gern*, *begehren.*

giessen, to pour, GUSH; O.E. *geótan.*

[*Giesserei*, *f.* foundry.]

(*a*) **Gift**, *f.* GIFT; fr. *geben.*

[*Mitgift*, dowry.]

(*b*) **Gift**, *n.* poison; also fr. *geben*; "something given with ill intention."

Gilde, *f.* corporation, GUILD; ∾ *gelten*, *Geld.*

Gischt, *f.* spray, froth (YEAST); fr. *gischen*, to foam.

glatt, smooth (GLAD); ∾ *gleiten.*

[*glätten*; *Glätte*, *f.*]

glauben, to beLIEVE; Mhg. *gelauben*, O.E. *ge-lȳfan.*

[*gläubig*, believing; *glaublich*, credible; *glaubhaft*, authentic.]

gleich, similar, LIKE; lit. "having the body or form of"; fr. *ge* and Ohg. *lîh* (=mod. *Leiche*), body.

[*gleichen*, to be like; *Gleichnis*, *n.* simile.]

Gleisner, *m.* hypocrite; fr. Mhg. *glîhsen*="to affect likeness."

[*gleisnerisch*, hypocritical; *Gleisnerei*, hypocrisy.]

gleiten, to slip, GLIDE; ∾ *glatt.*

Gletscher, *m.* GLACIER; fr. Fr.

Glied, *n.* limb, member; (LITHE).

[*Mitglied einer Gesellschaft*, member of a society; *Gliedmassen* (pl.), members of the body; fr. *Glied*, and *Mass*, *n.* measure, proportion.]

Glocke, *f.* bell (CLOCK).

[*Glöckner*, bell-ringer.]

gönnen, not grudge, grant; fr. Mhg. *ge-unnan*, pret. pres. verb.

[*Gönner*, *m.* patron; *Gönnerschaft*, patronage; *Gunst*, *f.* favour.]

Götze, *m.* idol, false god; lit. "cast image"; fr. *giessen*, to cast.

grässlich, horrible (GRISLY).

grau, GRAY; **grauen**, to dawn.

grauen: *es graut mir vor* . . ., I am in horror of . . .; ∾ GRUEsome.

[*grauenhaft*, *greulich*, horrible; *gräulich*, grayish; *grausam*, cruel; *grausen*, to shudder (mostly impers.).]

greis, aged, GRIZZLED.

Griffel, *m.* slate-pencil; fr. *greifen.*

Grille, *f.* cricket (insect); whim; fr. *grell*, shrill; (Lat. *grillus*, a cricket).

[*Grillenfänger*, *m.* whimsical person.]

Grube, *f.* pit (GROOVE); } fr. *graben.*
grübeln, rack one's brain; }
Gruft, *f.* sepulchre; }

Grummet, *n.* second crop, afterMATH, for "*grün gemäht.*"

Gruss, *m.* GREETing; *grüssen*, to GREET.

Grütze, *f.* GROATS.

Gunst, *f.* favour; fr. *gönnen.*

Habicht, *m.* HAWK.

Hafen, *m.* harbour, HAVEN; } fr. *haben.*
Haft, *f.* custody; }

Hag, *m.* (*Hecke*, *f.*) HEDGE.

hager, HAGGARD.

Hagestolz, *m.* old bachelor, "owner of an enclosure (*i.e.* small croft)," hence too poor to marry.

[According to the Germanic law of primogeniture the oldest son inherited the father's estate; the younger sons received only a small croft.]

Hain, *m.* grove; lit. "hedged in"; contracted from *Hag*(*en*).

halben, **halber**. See § 81.

Halm, *m.* stalk (HALM); ∾ *hehlen*, to conceal.

handeln, to deal, act (HANDLE).

[*Handel*, *m.* trade; *Handlung*, action, trade; *handlich*, wieldy, handy; *einhändigen*, deliver, hand in.]

Hanf, *m.* HEMP.

[*Hänfling*, *m.* linnet.]

Hansnarr, dunce; *Hanswurst*, buffoon; *Hans*=abbreviation of Johannes; cp. E. *Jack-pudding.*

Harke, *f.* rake, HARROW; L.G. for *Rechen*, which see.

Harnisch, *m.* armour, HARNESS.

[*in — geraten*, get angry ("put on armour"); *in — bringen*, provoke to anger.]

hastig, HASTY.

hauen, to HEW; for past tense *hieb*, see § 39 (*j*).

Haufe, *f.* HEAP.

Haupt, *n.* HEAD; O.E. *heafod.*

Haut, *f.* skin, HIDE.

[*mit — und Haaren*, "neck and crop."]

heben, to lift, HEAVE; ∾ Lat. *capio.*

[*Hebel*, *m.* lever; *Hefe*, *f.* yeast; *erheblich*, considerable.]

hecken, to HATCH.

hegen, to fence in; fig. "to harbour, shelter"; ∾ *Hag.*

[*Verdacht hegen*, to harbour suspicion.]

hehlen. See § 56 (2).

(*a*) **Heide**, *f.* HEATH.

(*b*) **Heide**, *m.* HEATHEN, "living on the heath," *i.e.* in the wild country; cp. Lat. *paganus*, pagan; fr. *pagus*, village.

[*heidnisch; Heidentum; Heidekorn*, *n.* buckwheat, "corn of the heathens," *i.e.*, of the Saracens, who first introduced it.]

heil, HALE (WHOLE); *Heil*, *n.* welfare, HAIL!

Heiland, Saviour; pres. partic. of *heilen*, to HEAL.

heischen, to demand, ASK; Ohg. *eiskôn.*

heiser, HOARSE.

hell, light, clear; fr. *hallen*, to sound.

Henkel, *m.* hook, handle; fr. *henken*, causat. of *hangen.*

Herberge, *f.* inn, "army-shelter"; fr. *Heer* and *bergen*; cp. *Herzog.*

[*Herberger*, HARBINGER, *beherbergen* (wk.), to lodge, harbour.]

Herbst, *m.* autumn (HARVEST).

Herold, *m.* HERALD, "army wielder"; Ohg. *hariwalto.*

Herr, *m.* lord; orig. comparat. of Ohg. *hêr*=*hehr*, noble.

[*herrisch*, domineering—*herrlich*, glorious—*herrschen*, to rule.]

Herzog, *m.* duke, "army leader"; fr. *Heer* and *ziehen*; Ohg. *herizogo.*

hetzen, to bait, infuriate; ∾ *hassen*, HATE.

Heu, *n.* HAY; fr. *hauen.* See § 14 (4).

heuer, in this year; Ohg. *hiû jâru.* See § 76 (4).

heuern (nautic.), to charter, HIRE.

Heuschrecke, *f.* grasshopper; fr. *Heu* and (*er*)*schrecken*, in its orig. sense "to start up."

Himbeere, *f.* raspBERRY; lit. "HIND-BERRY"; Mhg. *hint*, deer.

Hochzeit, *f.* marriage, "high (=festive) time."

Hoffart, *f.* arrogance; fr. *hoch* and *fahren.*

holen, to fetch (HAUL).

Holz, *n.* wood (HOLT).

[*hölzern*, wooden—*holzig*, woody.]

hübsch, pretty; fr. *höfisch*, court-like—*Hof*, court.

Huld, *f.* grace; fr. *hold*, gracious.

[*Hulda*, *Hilda* — *huldigen*, pay homage to.]

Hülle und Fülle, abundance, "clothing and food," "that which covers and fills"; fr. *hehlen* and *füllen.*

Hüne, *m.* giant=*Hunne*, HUN.

Hut, *m.* HAT, HOOD; **Hut**, *f.* HEED; ∾ *hüten*, to guard (HIDE).

Imbiss, *m.* slight meal, "snack," for *Inbiss* (*einbeissen*).

immer, always, EVER; fr. Ohg. *io mêr*=*je mehr.*

Ingwer, *m.* GINGER.

Insel, *f.* ISLE.

jauchzen, to exult, triumph, "to shout *juch*" (huzza); cp. *ächzen.*

je, AYE, EVER.

[*je mehr desto besser.*]

jedweder, every, EITHER; Ohg. *io-deweder*, any one of two.

jeman*d*, somebody; Ohg. *êoman*; *=je-Mann+d.*

jetzt, now (YET).

Joch, *n.* YOKE; ∾ Lat. *jugum.*

Jungfer, maid, for *Jungfrau;* but *junge Frau* means young married woman.

[*jüngferlich—jungfräulich.*]

Junker, *m.* squire, "young noble"; fr. *jung* and *Herr*, a title which originally applied to nobles only.

[*junkerhaft* or *junkerlich*, cavalier-like, arrogant.]

Kaiser, *m.* emperor; CÆSAR.

Kalk, *m.* lime, CHALK.

Kamerad, *m.* companion, COMRADE; fr. Lat. *camera;* "sharing a room with."

[*kameradlich* or *kameradschaftlich.*]

Kämpe, *m.* L.G. for *Kämpfer*, CHAMPION, fighter.

Kampf, *m.* fight (CAMP).

Karfreitag, *m.* Good-FRIDAY; *Kar* (also *Char*), fr. L.Lat. *cara*, mourning, E. CARE.

[*Karwoche*, *f.* Passion-week.]

Karfunkel, *m.* (*Karbunkel*), gem, CARBUNCLE; fr. Lat. *carbo*, a coal, and *funkeln*, to glitter.

karg, sparing, CHARY.

[*kargen*, to be niggardly—*Kargheit*, niggardliness—*kärglich*, scanty.]

Kartoffel, *f.* potato; (TRUFFLE); by dissimilation fr. older form *Tartuffel*, fr. Ital. *tartuffol.*

[The potato was introduced into Germany from Italy.]

kasteien, to CHASTISE; fr. Lat. *castigare.*

kauderwelsch, gibberish; fr. old *kaudern*, to babble, and *welsch*, "un-German." See *welsch.*

kaufen, to buy; ∾ CHEAP; O.E. *ceápian.*

[*Käufer — käuflich — Kaufmann*, merchant (CHAPMAN).]

keck, pert (QUICK); cp. *Quecksilber* and *erquicken.*

Kelch, *m.* cup, CHALICE; Lat. *calix.*

Kerker, *m.* prison; fr. Lat. CARCER (in-CARCER-ate).

Kerl, *m.* fellow, CHURL; ∾ *Karl.*

Kern, *m.* KERNEL; ∾ *Korn*, CORN.

Kette, *f.* CHAIN; fr. Lat. *catena.*

Ketzer, *m.* heretic; fr. *Cathari* (Ital. *Gazari*), a religious sect of the eleventh century.

[*ketzerisch*, heretical; *Ketzerei*, *f.* heresy.]

kichern, to GIGGLE.

kiesen (*küren*), to CHOOSE; ∾ Lat. *gustare.*

Kirchspiel, *n.* parish; lit. "the area or sphere within which the church plays its part"; *spiel* is probably related with O.E. *spelian*, to manage, take a turn; cp. the phrase, "to do a spell of work."

Kirmes, *f.* = *Kirchmesse*, *f.* annual church festival, fair; "CHURCH-MASS."

Kissen, *n.* pillow, CUSHION.

Kiste, *f.* box, CHEST.

Klammer, *f.* clasp, CLAMP; ∾ *klemmen*, to pinch, clasp.

Klavier, *n.* piano; fr. Fr. *clavier.*

Klee, *m.* CLOVER.

klein, little; the original meaning was "bright," CLEAN.

[*Kleinheit*, smallness; *Kleinigkeit*, trifle.]

Kleinod, *n.* jewel; from above word and termin. *-od.*

klemmen, to pinch; causat. of *klimmen*, to CLIMB.

klieben (*kleben*, *kleiben*), to CLEAVE.

[*Kloben*, *m.* log of wood—*Kluft*, *f.* CLEFT.]

klimmen, to CLIMB.

Klinge, *f.* blade (of a knife);
Klinke, *f.* latch;
} fr. *klingen*, to sound, CLINK.

Kloster, *n.* convent ; fr. Lat. *claustrum.*

Klotz, *m.* log (of wood) ; ∾ CLOD.

knacken, to crack (KNOCK).

knallen, to smack, crack (KNELL).

Knappe, *m.* attendant, boy ; doublet of *Knabe ;* cp. *Rabe—Rappe.*

Knauf, *m.* KNOB ; *Knopf, m.* button ; ∾ *knüpfen*, fasten, and *Knospe*, *f.* bud.

Knecht, *m.* servant (KNIGHT).

[*knechten*, enslave — *knechtisch*, slavish — *knechtlich*, menial—*Knechtschaft*, servitude.]

kneten, to KNEAD.

Knöchel, *m.* (dim. of *Knochen*, *m.* bone), KNUCKLE.

Knoten, *m.* KNOT, knob.

[*Knüttel*, *m.* cudgel ; *Knüttelvers*, *m.* (more frequently *Knittelvers*), doggerel.]

Kohl, *m.* cabbage (KALE).

Kohle, *f.* COAL.

Köhler, *m.* charcoal - burner, COLLIER ; fr. *Kohle.*

König, *m.* KING, "of noble race" ; Ohg. *chuning* (fr. *chuni* = Lat. *genus*, race, and *-ing*, "belonging to," "son of").

Kopf, *m.* head ; orig. "hollow vessel," CUP ; ∾ Lat. *cupa ;* cp. *Pfeifenkopf*, bowl of a PIPE.

Korinthe, *f.* dried CURRANT ; "fruit from the town of Corinth."

Körper, *m.* body (CORPSE) ; fr. Lat. *corpor-is.*

kosen, caress, prattle ; fr. Lat. *causari*, to speak before the court of justice ; Fr. *causer* is derived from *kosen ;* cp. E. *cosen* (*cozen*), to flatter.

(*a*) **kosten**, to COST ; fr. Lat. *constare.*

[*Kosten* (pl.), expenses — *kostbar*, costly—*köstlich*, (*a*) costly ; (*b*) delicious—*kostspielig*, expensive.]

(*b*) **kosten**, to taste ; fr. *kiesen*, to CHOOSE ; ∾ Lat. *gustare*, Fr. *goûter.*

[*Kost*, *f.* food, board.]

kostspielig, expensive; fr. *Kosten*, and Ohg. *spildan*, to waste, SPILL.

krächzen, to CROAK ; cp. *ächzen* and *jauchzen.*

krank, ill (CRANK, orig. feeble).

Krebs, *m.* CRAB ; cancer ; fr. Fr. *écrevisse.*

Kreide, *f.* chalk (=G. **Kalk**) ; fr. Lat. *creta.*

Kreuz, *n.* CROSS ; fr. Lat. *cruc-is*,

[*kreuzen*, to CRUISE—*kreuzigen*, to CRUCIFY—*Kreuzer*, *m.* CRUISER.]

Krume, *f.* CRUMB.

[*krümeln*, to CRUMBLE.]

krumm, crooked, CRUMP.

kühn, bold (KEEN) ; ∾ *kennen.*

Kummer, *f.* grief (CUMBER).

[*kümmern*, to concern ; *kümmerlich*, miserable.]

Kunde, *m.* customer ("person known," in which sense it is obsolete) ; *Kunde*, *f.* information ; both fr. *kennen.*

kün*f*tig, future ; fr. *kommen.*

Kunst, *f.* art ; fr. *kennen.*

(*a*) (**Kur**, *f.* CHOICE) ; fr. *kiesen* (*küren*).

[*Kurfürst*, *m.* Prince Elector.]

(*b*) **Kur**, *f.* CURE ; fr. Lat. *cura.*

[*Kurort*, *m.* watering-place—*Kursaal*, *m.* pump-room (at a watering-place).]

küren (*kiesen*), CHOOSE.

kurz, short, CURT.

[*Kürze*, *f.* shortness — *kürzen*, to shorten—*kürzlich*, lately.]

Küste, *f.* COAST ; Lat. *costa*, "rib, side."

Küster, *m.* sexton ; fr. Lat. *custos*, custodian.

(*a*) **laden**, orig. wk., "to call, summon" ; hence, to invite.

[*Ladung vor Gericht*, summons, citation.]

(*b*) **laden**, to LOAD ; confounded with (*a*), but of different origin.

[*Laden*, *m.* shop ; *Ladung*, cargo ; *Last*, *f.* burden ; *lästig*, troublesome ; *belästigen*, to trouble.]

Laffe, *m.* (*Lappe*), fop, dandy; fr. a root meaning "to sip, lick"; hence, childish, unmannerly person; ∾ *Löffel*, spoon.

[*läppisch*, foolish.]

Lager, *n.* camp, couch, store, LAIR; fr. *liegen*.

[*Lagerbier*, *n.* BEER stored up.]

Laib, *m.* LOAF of bread, orig. the same as *Leib*, *m.* body (LIFE).

langwierig, wearisome; fr. *lang*, and *währen*, to last; cp. *während*, during.

Lappalie, *f.* (coll.), trifle, bauble; fr. *Lappen*, *m.* patch, rag, with Lat. termin.

Lärm, *m.* noise, ALARM; Lat. *ad arma*, to arms! Ital. *all*(*e*) *arme;* Fr. *alarme*. For similar case of contraction cp. E. "ma'am."

[*lärmen*, to make a noise; *lärmend*, noisy.]

lass, tired, idle (LATE); fr. the stem of *lassen*, to LET. See *letzen* and *letzt*.

[*lässig*, idle, LAZY.]

lau, tepid, LUKEwarm.

Laub, *n.* foliage; } ∾ LEAVES.
Laube, *f.* arbour; }

lauern, to LURK.

laufen, to run (LEAP, [inter]LOPE).

Laune, *f.* whim, humour; ∾ Lat. *luna*, moon. The humour of a person was supposed to be affected by the changes of the moon; cp. *mondsüchtig*, "moonstruck," lunatic.

[*launenhaft*, *launisch*, whimsical, capricious; *launig*, humorous.]

Lawine, *f.* avalanche; fr. Lat. *labi*, to glide, fall.

leben, to LIVE; ∾ *Leib* and *bleiben*.

[Observe the change of accent in *leben'dig*, living, alive.]

lech, **leck**, LEAKY, through being too dry, hence *lechzen*, to pant with thirst; cp. *ächzen*.

Lehen, *n.* fief (LOAN); fr. *leihen*.

Lehm, *m.* clay, LOAM.

Lehre, *f.* doctrine (LORE).

-lei (*einer- zweierlei*), fr. Mhg. *lei*(*e*), manner; ∾ Lat. *leg-is*.

Leib, *n.* body, orig. "LIFE," as still in *Leibrente*, *f.* "LIFE-RENT," annuity, and in *bei Leibe nicht*, on no account, "as you value your life."

[*leiben: sie ist ihre Mutter, wie sie leibt und lebt*, "she is her mother as she lives and breathes'; the very image of her mother.
leibhaft(*ig*), real, incarnate; *der leibhaftige Gottseibeiuns* (j. c. for *Teufel*)—*leiblich*, corporal, natural; *mein leiblicher Bruder*, my own brother.]

Leiche, *f.* corpse; orig. "body" or "flesh," as still in *Leichdorn*, *m.* "THORN in the flesh," *i.e.* corn on the toe.

Leichnam, *m.* corpse; lit. "covering of the body"; fr. *Leich*(*e*), body, and a root *hamo* (still found in *Hemd*, shirt) meaning veil, covering; cp. O.E. *lích-ama*.

leid (pred. adj.), painful (LOATH); fr. *leiden*.

[*leider*, unfortunately; comparat. of *leid*.]

Leinwand, *f.* canvas, "LINEN cloth"; fr. *Lein*, *n.* LINEN, and *Wand*, for Mhg. *wât*. Pop. etym. has connected it with *Gewand*, *n.* garment (fr. *winden*).

leisten, to carry out, render; (to LAST); cp. O.E. *læstan*, to perform, endure.

[*Hilfe leisten*, to render assistance. *Bürgschaft leisten*, to give bail.]

Leiter, *m.* LEADER; **Leiter**, *f.* LADDER.

lenken, to direct (LINK = "bend").

Lenz, *m.* spring (LENT).

lesen, to gather, read (LEASE).

[*leserlich*, legible.]

(*a*) **letzen**, in *verletzen*, to injure, orig. "to hinder"; cp. "without LET or hindrance"; ∾ *lass*.

(*b*) **letzen** (refl.), to refresh oneself; fr. Mhg. *letze*, (1) stopping, (2) parting-cup. See the next word.

letzt, LAST, superl. of *lass*.

[*zuguterletzt*, to finish well; in conclusion; cp § 76 (5).]

Leu, *m.* (poet.) = *Löwe*, LION.

leugnen, to deny, disavow; fr. *lügen*.

Leumund, *m.* repute, report; fr. *leu* ∾ *laut*, and rare termination *mund*.

[*verleumden*, to slander; *Verleumder*, slanderer; *verleumderisch*, slandering.]

Leute (pl.), people, men; fr. old sgl. *liut*, people.

-lich (adj. suff.), -LY, LIKE, "having the body of"; ∾ *Leiche*.

lichterloh, blazing; adv. gen. for "*lichter Lohe*," (with) a bright flame.

lieb, dear (LIEF).

liederlich = **lotterig**, dissolute, SLATTERNLY.

Lindwurm, *m.* dragon. A redundant compound of Ohg. *lint*, dragon, and *Wurm*, WORM, serpent. The first word, *lint*, had become unfamiliar to the people, and *Wurm* was added to make the word intelligible; cp. *Maulesel*.

List, *f.* cunning; ∾ *lernen* and *lehren*.

Loch, *n.* hole (LOCK).

[*löcherig*, perforated; (*durch*)-*löchern* (insep.), to perforate.]

locker, loose, slack; "having holes"; fr. *Loch*.

[*lockern*, to make loose; *Lockerheit*, looseness, dissoluteness.]

Löffel, *m.* spoon. See *Laffe*.

Lohe, *f.* blaze; ∾ *Licht*. See *lichterloh*.

Lorbeere, *f.* LAUREL (BERRY).

Loreley, LURLEY; fr. old *lei*, rock.

Los, *n.* LOT; **losen**, to draw lots.

lose, LOOSE; **—los**, —LESS; ∾ *verlieren*, to LOSE.

[*lösen*, to LOOSEN, solve; *löschen*, (1) to quench, (2) to unload (a cargo).]

Lot, *n.* half an ounce; "weight of LEAD."

Lücke, *f.* gap. See *Loch* and *locker*.

[*lückenhaft*, defective, incomplete.]

Luft, *f.* air (LOFT).

[*luftig*, airy; *lüften*, to air.]

lugen, to LOOK out.

Lümmel, *m.* scoundrel; fr. *Lump*.

[*lümmelhaft*, clownish, boorish.]

Lump, *m.* scamp, ragamuffin; a collateral form of *Lumpen*, *m.* rag, tatter.

[*lumpig*, shabby.]

lüstern, lascivious, greedy; fr. *Lust*, *f.* desire, LUST.

Macht, *f.* power, MIGHT; fr. orig. sense of *mögen*, "to be able."

Magd (*Maid*), *f.* MAID-(servant).

Magen, *m.* stomach; MAW.

Mahl, *n.*, *Mahlzeit*, *f.* MEAL, repast. See *Mal*.

Mähre, *f.* MARE; fem. of Ohg. *marh*, horse. See *Marschall*.

Mailand, *n.* MILAN; popular adaptation of Lat. *Mediolanum*.

makellos, spotless, IMMACULATE; fr. *Makel*, *m.* blot; Lat. *macula*.

Mal, *n.* (1) mark ("MOLE"), (2) time; fr. Mhg. *mâl* (1) spot, (2) point of time; hence *-mal* in compounds with numerals: *einmal*, *zweimal*, &c., lit. "in one point of time" = once.

[*Merkmal*, characteristic; *Denkmal*, monument; *Grabmal*, gravestone.]

man, one, people, MAN; same word as *Mann*, which in Mhg. was spelt *man*.

manch-, MANY a.

Mangel, *m.* want, defect; fr. Lat. through Fr. *manquer.*

[*mangelhaft*, deficient; *mangeln*, to lack.]

Mann, *m.* MAN, husband; "thinking being"; root, *man* (cp. Lat. *memini*), to think.

[*männlich*, male—*mannhaft*, manly, brave—*kaufmännisch*, mercantile; *Mannheit*, manhood—*Mannschaft*, forces, crew.]

Märchen, *n.* (*Mährchen*), fairy tale, "short story"; dim. of *Märe*, *f.* news, tidings.

[*märchenhaft*, *märchenartig*, like a fairy tale, fictitious.]

(*a*) **Mark**, *n.* MARROW, pith; ∾ Lat. *mergere*, to immerse.

[*markig*, pithy; *ausgemergelt*, emaciated.]

(*b*) **Mark**, *f.* boundary, MARCH; ∾ Lat. *margo*, MARGIN.

[*die Mark Brandenburg*, march (province) of B.
Markgraf, *m.* MARGRAVE.]

(*c*) **Mark**, *f.* (Scotch MERK) = shilling.

Marke, *f.* MARK; (*Briefmarke*, stamp; *Spielmarke*, counter; ∾ Fr. *marque*, which, however, is derived fr. German).

Marschall, *m.* MARSHAL; lit. "horse-attendant, hostler"; Ohg. *marh*, horse, MARE, and *scalk*, servant (see *Schalk*). From these two words the French formed the word *maréchal*, which returned to Germany as *Marschall*; cp. *Bivouak*.

Marstall, *m.* royal stable, stud; fr. Ohg. *marh*, horse, and *Stall*, stable.

Marter, *f.* torture, MARTYRdom.

[*martern*, to torment; *Märtyrer*, *m.* MARTYR.]

(*a*) **Mast**, *m.* MAST of a ship.

(*b*) **Mast**, *f.* fattening food for cattle, MAST; (MEAT). See *Messer*.

matt, languid, dim; MATE at chess; Arabian, *schâh mât*, "the king is dead" = checkmate.

[*Mattheit* or *Mattigkeit*, languor. *ermatten*, to weaken.]

(*a*) **Matte**, *f.* MEADOW.

(*b*) **Matte**, *f.* MAT.

(*a*) **Maul**, *n.* MOUTH of animals.

(*b*) **Maul**, *n.* MULE, for which *Maulesel* is now substituted.

Maulbeere, *f.* MULBERRY.

Maulesel, *m.*, **Maultier**, *n.* MULE; redundant compd. of *Maul* (*b*) and *-esel*, *-tier*; cp. *Lindwurm*.

Maulwurf, *m.* MOLE; lit. "earth-thrower." Mhg. *moltwurf*; O.E. *mold-warp*; *molt-* (earth) had become unintelligible to the people, and was adapted to the familiar *Maul*; cp. *Sündflut*.

Meer, *n.* sea (= E. MERE, a lake, and MER in mermaid); ∾ Lat. *mare*.

[*Meerschaum*, *m.* "sea-foam," MEERSCHAUM.]

Mehltau, *m.* (for *Meltau*), MILDEW. Popularly connected with *Mehl*, MEAL; probably fr. *Milbe*, mite, moth, which is from the same root as *Mehl*.

Meier, *m.* bailiff; farmer; fr. Lat. *major* (*domus*) = *Hausmeier*.

[*Meierei*, *f.*, *Meierhof*, *m.* farm, dairy.]

Meineid, *m.* perjury, "MEAN OATH"; fr. *gemein*, common, MEAN.

[*meineidig werden*, forswear oneself.]

meinen, to think, MEAN; fr. same root, meaning "to think," as in *Mann*, *Minne*.

[*Meinung*, opinion; but the German word for "meaning" is *Bedeutung*.]

Menge, *f.* crowd; ∾ *manch*, MANY a.

[*mengen*, to mix, MINGLE.

Mensch, *m.* human being; orig. adj. fr. *Mann;* Ohg. *mannisco,* Mhg. *menn-isc*=*Mensch.*

Messe, *f.* MASS. See *Kirmes.*

(*a*) **Messer,** *n.* knife; lit. "meat-sword"; fr. old *mat,* meat, and *sahs,* sword.

(*b*) **Messer,** *m.* MEASURER; fr. *messen,* to measure, METE.

metzeln, to massacre; fr. L. Lat. *macellare,* to slaughter.

[*Metzger, m.* butcher.]

Meute, *f.* riot, MUTINY. Old Fr. *meute.*

[*meuterisch,* mutinous; *Meuterer,* MUTINEER.]

min*d*er, less; fr. Lat. *minor,* Mhg. *minner.*

[(*ver*)*mindern,* to lessen—*mindestens,* at least.]

Minne, *f.* poet. for *Liebe, f.* love; orig. "thought" (*i.e.* of the beloved). See *Mann.*

[*Minnesänger* (*Minnesinger*), poet of love.]

mischen, to MIX.

Mitternacht, *f.* MIDNIGHT, for *zu mitter Nacht;* cp. *Weihnachten.*

Moder, *m.* decay (MUD).

mögen, MAY, MIGHT; orig. "to be able," which force it still has in *vermögen* and *mög-lich.* See *Macht.*

Molke, *f.* whey; ∾ *Milch.*

Monat, *m.* MONTH; fr. *Mond* and suff. *-at.*

Mond, *m.* MOON; Mhg. *mâne*+*d.*

Most, *m.* cider, MUST; fr. Lat. *mustum* (*vinum*), new wine.

Möwe, *f.* sea-gull, MEW.

müde, tired; fr. *mühen,* to trouble.

[*Müdigkeit,* fatigue.]

Mühle, *f.* MILL; **Müller,** *m.* MILLER; fr. *mahlen,* to grind.

(*a*) **Mund,** *m.* MOUTH; cp. *Maul.*

[*Mündung,* MOUTH of a river—*münden,* to flow into—*munden,* to relish.]

(*b*) **Mund** (only in derivatives and compounds), "protection."

[*Mündel, m.* and *f.* pupil, ward; *Vormund, m.* guardian; *mündig,* of age.]

Münster, *n.* cathedral, MINSTER; fr. Lat. *monasterium.*

Münze, *f.* coin, MINT; Lat. *moneta.*

[*münzen,* to coin; (fig.) *das ist auf mich gemünzt,* that is intended for me, I am meant.]

Murmeltier, *n.* MARMOT; pop. adaptation of Lat. *mus montanus,* "mountain rat"; cp. Fr. *marmotte.*

Muster, *n.* pattern (MUSTER); fr. Lat. *monstrare.*

[*mustern,* to inspect, muster; *musterhaft,* exemplary.]

Mut, *m.* courage, MOOD. See § 69, Note 2.

[*mir ist traurig zu* —, I am in a sad mood; *mutig,* courageous; *er- entmutigen,* en- discourage.]

mutmassen (insep.), to conjecture, "to MEASURE in one's mind"; *massen*=*messen.*

Nachbar, *m.* NEIGHBOUR, "near dweller"; fr. *nahe* and *Bauer.*

[*nachbarlich,* neighbourly; *benachbart,* neighbouring.]

Nachtigall, *f.* NIGHTINGALE, "night singer"; fr. *Nacht,* and Ohg. *galan,* to sing (YELL).

Nagel, *m.* NAIL. See *Nelke.*

nähren, to NOURISH; causat. of *genesen,* recover from illness.

[*Nahrung,* nourishment, food; *nahrhaft,* nourishing.]

Name(n), *m.* NAME.

[*namentlich* (adv.), especially; *nämlich,* NAMELY; *der nämliche,* the same; *namhaft,* named, considerable.]

naseweis, pert, saucy; orig. only of a dog, "with a WISE (*i.e.* keen-scenting) NOSE."

Natter, *f.* (**Otter,** *f.*), viper, ADDER; cp. M.E. *addere* or *naddere*, the initial *n* being appropriated by the indef. article.

neben, beside; fr. *in*, and *eben*, EVEN, *i.e.* "on a level with."

[*Nebenmensch*, *m.* fellow-MAN, where *neben* is for older *eben*; cp. *Ebenmass*, *n.* symmetry; *Ebenbild*, *n.* exact image—*nebst* for (*nebens*+*t*), along with.

Neffe, *m.* NEPHEW; ∾ Lat. *nepos*. See *Nichte*.

nein, NO, "not one"; Ohg. *ni* and *ein*; cp. *nichts*.

Nelke, *f.* clove, carnation; "little NAIL," from its shape; L.G. dim. of *Nagel*.

nennen, to call, NAME; older form, *nemnen*; fr. *Name*.

nett, nice, NEAT; fr. Lat. *nitidus*.

netzen, to moisten; fr. *nass*, wet.

nicht, NOT; Ohg. *ni wiht* (modern *Wicht*), "not a WHIT"; cp. Fr. *ne—pas* and E. NAUGHT.

[*nicht* was formerly a noun, which may still be seen in *mit nichten*, by no means; *zu nichte machen*, to annihilate.]

Nichte, *f.* niece, fem. of *Neffe*; Ohg. *niftel*; L.G. *nichte*(*l*).

nichts, nothing, NAUGHT; really genit. of *nicht*.

nicken, to nod; frequent. of *neigen*; cp. *biegen—bücken*.

nie, NEVER, "NOT EVER"; Ohg. *ni eo* (=modern *je*).

[*niemand*, nobody, "not any man."]

nimmer, NEVER; lit. NOT ANY MORE; Ohg. *ni eomêr*.

Not, *f.* NEED.

[*nötig*, necessary; *nötigen*, to necessitate.]

nu, coll. for *nun*, NOW.

[*in einem Nu*, in a trice.]

ull, void, NULL; fr. Lat. *nullus*.

[*null und nichtig*, null and void.]

Nüster, *f.* NOSTRIL.

nutzen, nützen, to be of use, to profit; ∾ *geniessen*, to enjoy.

[*nutz* or *nütz*(*e*) (pred. adj.), of use; *ich mache mir etwas zu nutze*, I turn to advantage.]

ob (conj.), IF; orig. dat. of a noun meaning "doubt."

Obdach, *n.* shelter; "OVER-THATCH"; fr. adv. *ob*(*en*), ABOVE, OVER, and *Dach*.

Oberst, *m.* (*Obrist*), colonel; "UPPERMOST," superl. of adv. *ob*, OVER.

Odem, *m.* = *Atem*, breath; (*atmen*, to breathe).

öffen*t***lich,** public; fr. *offen*, OPEN.

Oheim (*Ohm*), *m.* = *Onkel*, UNCLE; ∾ Lat. *avunculus*.

Ohrfeige, *f.* box on the EAR; not from *Feige*, *f.* FIG, but from *fegen*, to scour, wipe.

opfern, to sacrifice (OFFER).

[*Opferung*, sacrifice, OFFERING; *Opfer*, *n.* victim.]

Orden, *m.* badge, decoration, ORDER; Lat. *ordin-is*.

[*orden***t***lich*, ORDERLY, regular.]

Orgel, *f.* ORGAN; fr. Lat. *organum*, an instrument.

Ort, *m.* place; orig. "corner, point," as still in *Ortstein*, *m.* corner-STONE.

[*Ortschaft*, *f.* village, hamlet; *örtlich*, local.
eine Frage erörtern, to ventilate a question; lit. "to look at it from all points or corners."]

Ostern (*Osterfest*, *n.*), *f. pl.* EASTER; orig. a heathen festival celebrated in honour of Ostarâ, the goddess of spring, and—like *Weihnachten*, Christmas, and *Pfingsten*, Whitsuntide—lasting several days; hence the plural form.

Öst(er)reich, *n.* AUSTRIA "EASTERN empire."

Pacht, *f.* lease (PACT); fr. Lat. *pactum*, agreement.

[*pachten*, to rent; *Pächter*, *m.* farmer, tenant.]

Panier, *n.* = *Banner*, *n.* standard, BANNER.

Papst, *m.* POPE; fr. L. Lat. *papa(s)*.

[*päpstlich*, PAPAL; *päpstisch*, POPISH.]

passen, to suit; fr. Fr. *passer*.

[*passend*, suitable; *unpässlich*, indisposed.]

Pate, *m.* god-FATHER; god-child; fr. Lat. *pater*.

Pech, *n.* PITCH; fr. Lat. *pic-is*.

[*pechschwarz; erpicht auf*, eagerly bent on.]

Pein, *f.* torment, PAIN; fr. Lat. *pœna*, penalty.

[*peinlich*, painful; *peinigen*, to torment.]

Pelz, *m.* fur, PELT; fr. Lat. *pellis*, hide.

Pfaffe, *m.* (derog.), parson; ∾ *Papst*.

Pfahl, *m.* PALE, POLE; fr. Lat. *palus*, a stake.

[*in meinen vier Pfählen*, in my own house.]

Pfalzgraf, *m.* count palatine, PALSGRAVE; compd. of *die Pfalz*, PALATINATE (PALACE), and *Graf*, count.

Pfand, *n.* pledge, PAWN; *pfänden*, to pledge; ∾ *Pacht*.

Pfarre, *f.*, **Pfarrei**, *f.* PARISH, parsonage.

[*Pfarrer*, *m.* minister, PARSON.]

Pfau, *m.* PEAcock; fr. Lat. *pavo*.

Pfeife, *f.* whistle, FIFE, PIPE.

Pfeiler, *m.* column, PILLAR.

Pfennig, *m.* one-hundredth part of a *Mark* (PENNY). Ohg. *pfenning*. Probably related with *Pfand* and termination *-ing*, as in E. farth-ing, "fourth part."

Pferd, *m.* horse (PALFREY); fr. Low Lat. *paraveredus*, a post-horse.

Pfingsten, *f. pl.* (*Pfingstfest*, *n.*), Whitsuntide, PENTECOST. See *Ostern*.

Pfirsich, *m.* PEACH; fr. Lat. *Persicus;* lit. "Persian (apple)."

Pflicht, *f.* duty (PLIGHT); fr. *pflegen*, to tend.

Pflugschar, *f.* PLOUGHSHARE; fr. *Pflug*, *m.* and *scheren*.

Pforte, *f.* PORTAL; fr. Lat. *porta*, a gate; *Pförtner*, *m.* door-keeper, PORTER.

Pfoste, *f.*, **Pfosten**, *m.* side-POST (of a door), stake; fr. Lat. *pono*, I place.

Pfote, *f.* PAW.

pfropfen, to plug up, cram, graft (PROP).

[*Pfropfen*, *m.* cork, stopper.]

Pfuhl, *m.* POOL.

Pinsel, *m.* brush (PENCIL); fr. Lat. *penecillus*, a small tail; a painter's brush.

Pöbel, *m.* rabble, POPULACE; fr. Lat. *populus*, through Fr. *peuple*.

[*pöbelhaft*, vulgar.]

pochen, to knock (POKE).

pökeln, to PICKLE.

Polster, *n.* cushion, BOLSTER.

Pracht, *f.* splendour; fr. *prangen*, to make a show, shine.

prägen, to coin, stamp; fr. *brechen*.

prahlen, to boast (BRAWL).

[*Prahlhans*, *m.* braggart; *Prahlerei*, *f.* bragging; *prahlerisch*, boastful.]

predigen, to PREACH; fr. Lat. *prædicare*.

[*Prediger*, *m.* preacher; *Predigt*, *f.* sermon.]

Preis, *m.* PRICE; PRAISE; Lat. *pretium*, Fr. *prix*.

[*preisen*, to praise.]

preisgeben, to expose, abandon. Not connected with *Preis*, PRICE, but with *Preis*, PRIZE, which is derived fr. Fr. *prise*, capture; hence *preisgeben* lit. means "to give as booty or prize."

Probe, *f.* test, sample, PROOF; fr. Lat. *probare*.

[*probieren*, to try, test.]

prosit (*prost*), "may it do (you) good." A Lat. word, the subjunct. pres. of *prosum*. It was originally a student's expression, used chiefly with the meaning "your health" (in drinking); afterwards it came into general use, especially in such phrases as *prosit Neujahr*, "a happy new year to you"; *prosit Mahlzeit*, "I hope you may enjoy your meal."

prüfen, to examine, PROVE; ∾ *Probe*.

Pult, *m.* desk (PULPIT).

Punkt, *m.* POINT; full stop (in writing); Lat. *punctum*.

[*pünktlich*, PUNCTUAL.]

Puppe, *f.* doll, PUPPET.

Quacksalber, *m.* QUACK, mountebank; fr. *quaken*, to croak, and *Salbe*, *f.* SALVE.

Quadrat, *n.* SQUARE (geomet.).

[*Quadratmeile*, *f.* SQUARE mile; —*wurzel*, *f.* SQUARE root.]

Qual, *f.* torture, pain; ∾ E. QUAIL and KILL.

[*quälen*, to torment, tease; *Quälerei*, *f.* torture.]

Qualm, *m.* vapour, smoke (QUALM).

[Ohg. *twalm*; *tw* often passes into *qu* or *zw*; cp. *quer*, *quirlen*.]

Quecksilber, *n.* mercury, QUICKSILVER; cp. *keck* and *erquicken*.

Quell, *m.*, *Quelle*, *f.* WELL, source.

quer, diagonal, ATHWART; Ohg. *twer*. See *zwerch*.

[*querfeldein*, across country; *einem in die Quere kommen*, to come across one, to thwart one's purpose; *kreuz u. quer*, in all directions.]

quirlen, to TWIRL, beat up.

quitt, QUITS, even; fr. Fr. *quitte*, Lat. *quietus*.

Quitte, *f.* QUINCE.

Quittung, receipt; QUITTANCE.

[*quittieren*, to receipt.]

Rabatt, *m.* discount, REBATE.

rächen, to avenge (WREAK); fr. older *wrehan*.

[*Rache*, *f.* vengeance; *Rächer*, *m.* avenger; *Rachsucht*, *f.* revengefulness; *rachsüchtig*, revengeful.]

radebrechen (wk. insep.), to murder (a language); lit. "to break on the wheel," a form of torture.

Rädelsführer, *m.* ringleader. *Rädel* = *Rädchen*, lit. a little wheel; coll. "a ring, a gang of riotous people."

Rahmen, *m.* frame, RIM; ∾ Lat. *ramus*, branch.

Rand, *m.* margin, rim, RAND = edge.

Ranke, *f.* tendril, vine; fr. *ringen*, to WRING.

Rappe, *m.* black horse; collat. form of *Rabe*, RAVEN; cp. *Knabe*—*Knappe*.

Rasse, *f.* breed, RACE; fr. Fr. *race*.

Rätsel, *n.* RIDDLE; fr. *raten*, to guess.

[*rätselhaft*, enigmatical.]

(*a*) **rauch** = **rauh**, ROUGH, shaggy. See § 40 (*k*).

[*Rauchfrost*, *m.* hoar-FROST; *Rauchwaren*, *f. pl.*, or *Rauchwerk*, *n.* furs, "rough (*i.e.* hairy) WARES."]

(*b*) **Rauch**, *m.* smoke, REEK; ∾ *riechen*, to smell.

[*rauchen*, to smoke; *Raucher*, smoker; *rauchig*, smoky; *räuchern*, to fumigate.]

raufen (refl.), brawl, scuffle; ∾ *rauben*, to ROB (beREAVE).

[*Raufbold*, *m.* brawler, bully (see *-bold*); *Rauferei*, *f.* brawl, scuffle.]

Rebe, *f.* (tendril of) vine; ∾ *Rippe*, *f.* RIB.

Rechen, *m.* RAKE (garden) ; fr. *recken*, to stretch, RACK.

rechtschaffen, honest ; fr. *recht* and p.p. of *schaffen* without *ge-*.

Recke, *m.* giant, hero ; orig. "one banished" (WRETCH) ; ∾ *rächen ;* cp. *elend.*

Rede, *f.* speech, talk ; orig. = Lat. *ratio*, reason, "account," as still in the phrase *einem Rede stehen*, to give account, be responsible to one, and in *redlich*, honest (with older meaning, "rational").

[*reden*, to talk, discourse ; *Redner*, *m.* orator ; *rednerisch*, oratorical ; *redselig*, talkative.]

Reich, *n.* domain, realm ; ∾ Lat. *regnum ;* O.E. *rîce.*

[*reich*, RICH, "possessing much *Reich*" ; for the suffix *-rich*, see § 68.]

reichen, to REACH ; suffice.

Reif, *m.* hoop, ring ; orig. "ROPE." See *Stegreif.*

reif, RIPE.

reisen, to travel ("ARISE" = set out on a journey).

reissen, to tear. One of its former meanings was, "to scratch into," *i.e.* to WRITE ; in this sense it has been supplanted by *schreiben*, from Lat. *scribere ;* cp. *Reissfeder*, *f.* drawing-pen (for "scratching in," tracing) ; *Umriss*, *m.* outline, sketch ; *ritzen*, to scratch.

reizen, to excite, charm ; causat. of *reissen ;* cp. *hinreissen*, to enrapture.

[*Reiz*, *m.* irritation, charm ; *reizbar*, irritable ; *reizend*, charming.]

renken, to twist, WRENCH ; fr. *ringen*, to WRING.

rennen, to RUN ; causat. of *rinnen*, to flow.

retten, to save (RID).

Rettich, *m.* RADISH ; fr. Lat. *radic-is.*

reuen, to repent, RUE ; Mhg. *riuwen.*

[*Reue*, *f.* repentance ; *reuig*, repentant.]

riechen, to smell (REEK) ; ∾ *rauchen.*

[*Geruch*, *m.* smell ; (colloq.) reputation.]

Riegel, *m.* bolt, RAIL.

Rinde, *f.* bark of a tree, crust, RIND ; ∾ *Rand*, margin, edge.

ringen, (1) to wrestle, WRING ; (2) to form into a RING.

[*umringen* (insep.), to encircle ; *Ring*, *m.* RING ; *rings* (adv.), around.]

rinnen, to flow, RUN ; lit. "to move quickly" ; cp. *rennen.*

[*Rinnstein*, *m.* gutter, watercourse of a street.]

Riss, *m.* rent, crack ;
Ritz, *m.*, or **Ritze**, *f.* slit ; } fr. *reissen.*
ritzen, to scratch ;

Ritter, *m.* knight ; collat. form of *Reiter*, *m.* horseman.

roh, RAW, rude.

[*Rohheit*, coarseness.]

Roman, *m.* novel, lit. ROMANCE ; first applied to translations from the French, then story of fiction generally.

[*Romandichter*, *m.* novelist. *romantisch*, romantic—*romanhaft*, like a novel, fictitious.]

Ross, *n.* steed, HORSE.

Rotte, *f.* rabble, crew (ROUT), fr. Lat. *rupt-a* (L.Lat. *rutta*), separated (part), *i.e.* division.

Rubrik, *f.* heading, RUBRIC ; fr. Lat. *ruber*, red. Titles of laws were written with red ink.

ruchbar, notorious ; — *werden*, to become known ; for older *ruchtbar ;* ∾ *Gerücht.*

Rücken, *m.* back, RIDGE.

rücken, to move, shift ; (ROCK).

Rückgrat, *m.* spine, "backbone" ; fr. *Rück*(*en*), back, and *Grat*, *m.* ridge ; cp. *Gräte*, *f.* fish-bone.

rüstig, vigorous ; fr. *rüsten*, to prepare (for action).

Rute, *f.* ROD.

Saal, *m.* hall, SALOON; Fr. *salle* is derived fr. German.

[*Geselle*, *m.* companion; journeyman.]

Saat, *f.* SEED; fr. *säen*, to SOW.

Säbel, *m.* sword, SABRE.

Sache, *f.* thing (SAKE); orig. "conflict, quarrel," hence *Widersacher*, *m.* antagonist, and *Sachwalter*, *m.* attorney.

sacht, slow, gentle, SOFT = *sanft*: L.G. *cht* for H.G. *ft*; cp. *Schlucht*.

Saf*t*, *m.* juice, SAP; *saftig*, juicy.

Säge, *f.* SAW.

[*Sägemühle*, *f.* SAWMILL.]

Sage, *f.* legend, SAW; fr. *sagen*.

[*sagenhaft*, legendary, traditionary.]

sammeln, to collect, ASSEMBLE.

-*sam*, -some; *zusammen*, together; *samt* (prep.), with; *sämtlich*, (adj.), all together.]

Samstag, *m.* SaturDAY; fr. Hebrew through Lat. *sabbatum*.

sanft, gentle, SOFT.

[*Sänfte*, *f.* sedan-chair; *Sanftheit*, *f.* gentleness; *besänftigen*, to allay.]

satt, satisfied (fed); SATED; fr. Lat. *satis*, enough.

[*sättigen*, to appease (hunger), SATE; *sattsam*, sufficient(ly). *ich habe es satt*, I have enough of it. See § 34, note.]

(*a*) **Saum**, *m.* border, SEAM; *säumen*, to edge, hem.

[*Sims*, *m.*, *Gesims*, *n.* cornice, mantelpiece.]

(*b*) **Saum**, *m.* in compds. "burden": —*tier*, *n.* beast of burden, SUMPTER-beast; —*sattel*, *m.* pack-SADDLE.

[*säumen*, to tarry; *saumselig*, *säumig*, tardy; *versäumen*, to neglect; *Versäumnis*, *f.* *n.* neglect.]

schaben, to scrape; (SHAVE).

[*schäbig*, SHABBY.]

Schabernack, *m.* (colloq.), roguish trick, vexation; "scrape-neck," fr. *schaben*, to scrape, and *Nacken*, *m.* NECK.

Schablone, *f.* mould, pattern; fr. Fr. *échantillon* (?).

[*schablonenhaft* (*nach der Schablone*), according to a set pattern; unoriginal.]

schaden, to damage, SCATHE.

[*schadhaft*, damaged; *schädlich*, injurious; *Schade*(*n*), *m.* damage, hurt; *schädigen*, to damage.]

(*a*) **schaffen** (st.), to create. See *Schöpfer*.
(*b*) **schaffen** (wk.), to work, provide.
} (SHAPE.)

Schaffott, *n.*, SCAFFOLD; fr. Fr. *échafaud*.

Schale, *f.* peel, SHELL (SCALE).

[*schälen*, to peel; *schal*, hollow, insipid.]

Schalk, *m.* rogue, wag; orig. "servant"; Ohg. *scalc*. See *Marschall*.

[*schalkhaft*, roguish; *Schalkheit*, roguery.]

schallen, to sound. See *schellen*, *Schilling*.

Schalmei, *f.* reed-pipe; SHAWM; fr. Lat. *calamus*, through Fr.

schalten, to rule, command; orig. "to push, insert," a meaning which it has retained in *einschalten*, to insert; *Schaltjahr*, leap-year.

[*schalten und walten*, to do as one likes.]

Scham, *f.* modesty; SHAME.

[*sich schämen*, be ASHAMED.]

Schanze, *f.* entrenchment, SCONCE.

[Observe: *in die — schlagen*, to risk; fling away (one's life); fr. a diff. word *Schanze* ∾ CHANCE.]

Schar, *f.* troop, crowd; fr. *scheren*, to SHEAR; cp. *Scherbe*, *f.* fragment.

Scharmützel, *n.* SKIRMISH; ∾ *schirmen*, to protect, fight (through Ital. *scaramuccia*).

Schärpe, *f.* sash (SCARF); fr. Fr. *écharpe*.

Scharte, *f.* notch; fr. *scheren; eine Scharte auswetzen*, to "whet out a notch," to atone for, make amends for.

[*schartig*, full of notches.]

Schatulle, *f.* jewel-casket, privy purse; fr. Ital. *scatola*.

Schau, *f.* SHOW; (but *schauen* never means "to show"); fr. *schauen*, to see.

Schaufel, *f.* SHOVEL; fr. *shieben*, to push, SHOVE.

Schaum, *m.* foam, SCUM; *schäumen*, to foam.

Scheibe, *f.* disk, pane, slice; SHEAVE.

[*Mondscheibe*, disc of the moon; *Fensterscheibe*, window-pane; *Scheibe Brot*, slice of bread; *Scheiben-schiessen*, *n.* target-shooting

schellen, to ring; causat. of *schallen*, to sound.

[*Maulschelle*, *f.* ("ringing") slap on the mouth or face.]

Schemel, *m.* footstool; fr. L.Lat. *scamellum*, small bench.

Schemen, *m.* shadow, phantom; ∾ *scheinen*.

(*a*) **schenken**, to pour out; "*eine Tasse Thee* (*ein Glas Wein*) *einschenken*."

[*Schenke*, *m.* tavern-keeper; *Schenke*, *f.* ale-house.]

(*b*) **schenken**, to give a present.

[*Schenkung*, donation; *Geschenk*, *n.* present.]

scheren, to SHEAR, cut.

[*Scherbe*, *f.*, *Scherben*, *m.* fragment; *Schere*, *f.* scissors, SHEARS. *Scherflein*, *n.* mite (small coin); *sein Scherflein beitragen*, to give one's mite.]

scheu, SHY, frightened.

[*Scheu*, *f.* fear, awe; *scheuen*, to shun, fear; *scheuchen*, to scare, frighten; *Scheusal*, *n.* monster; *scheusslich* (for *scheuselig*), frightful, horrible.]

schicken, to send; causat. of *ge-schehen*.

[*Schicksal*, *n.* fate; *sich schicken*, to be proper; (*un*)*schicklich*, (im)proper.]

schieben, to push, SHOVE

schildern, to describe; lit. "to depict on a shield"; fr. *Schild*, *m.* escutcheon, SHIELD.

Schilling, *m.* SHILLING (formerly a German coin); "ringing coin"; fr. *schallen*, to sound.

Schimmer, *m.* glimmer, SHIMMER; fr. *scheinen*.

schinden, to flay, SKIN.

Schinken, *m.* ham; ∾ *Schenkel*, thigh, SHANK.

Schlacht, *f.* battle; (SLAUGHTER); fr. *schlagen*, to beat; (SLAY).

Schlacke, *f.* dross, SLAG; fr. *schlagen*.

schlaff, relaxed; ∾ *Schlaf*, *m.* SLEEP.

(*a*) **Schlag**, *m.* blow.

(*b*) **Schlag**, *m.* sort, kind; cp. *Menschenschlag*, race of men; ∾ *Geschlecht*.

Schlange, *f.* serpent; fr. *schlingen*, to twist, SLING.

schlank, slim; ∾ *schlingen*. See *Schlange*.

Schlaraffenland, *n.* Utopia, fool's paradise; fr. Mhg. *slûr*, idler, and *Affe*, APE, fool.

schlau, SLY; *Schlauheit*, *Schlauigkeit*, cunning.

schlecht, bad (SLIGHT); orig. same as *schlicht*, simple, plain, good. It has retained its old meaning in *schlecht und recht*, upright and honest; *schlechthin*, simply; *schlechtweg*, plainly, without ceremony. For similar change of meaning in E. cp. *silly*.

[*Schlechtigkeit*, baseness; *verschlechtern*, to make worse.]

Schlehe, *f.* SLOE; *Schlehdorn*, *m.* blackTHORN.

schleichen, to creep, SLINK.

(*a*) **schleifen** (st.), to grind, whet; SLIP; *Schleife*, *f.* SLIP-knot, bow.

(*b*) **schleifen** (wk.), to raze to the ground.

[*schleppen*, to drag; through L.G. fr. *schleifen*.]

schleissen, to SLIT.

schlendern, to saunter; ∾ *slender*.

[*Schlendrian*, *m.* old humdrum way; loafer.]

Schleuse, *f.* SLUICE, lock; fr. Fr. *écluse*.

schlicht, plain, simple (SLEEK). See *schlecht*.

[*schlichten*, to "straighten out," reconcile; *Schlichtheit*, simplicity.]

schlimm, bad (SLIM).

[*verschlimmern*, to make worse = *verschlechtern*.]

(*a*) **schlingen**, to twist, wind, SLING. See *Schlange*.

(*b*) **schlingen**, to swallow; diff. in origin from preceding word; ∾ E. *slide*. See *Schlund* and *Schlitten*.

Schlitten, *m.* SLEIGH, SLED; fr. *schlingen* (*b*).

schlitzen, to SLIT, cleave; intens. form of *schleissen*.

schlohweiss = *schlossweiss*, white as hail. See *Schlosse*.

Schlosse, *f.* hailstone, SLEET.

Schlucht, *f.* ravine; L.G. for older *Schluft*; L.G. *cht* for H.G. *ft* is very frequent; fr. *schleifen*, to SLIP; cp. *sichten*.

schluchzen, to sob; fr. *schlucken*, to swallow. See *schlingen* (*b*).

Schlund, *m.* throat, abyss; fr. *schlingen* (*b*).

Schmach, *f.* disgrace; orig. "smallness," fr. Mhg. *smaehe*, small.

[*schmähen*, to abuse. See § 40 (*k*). *schmachten*, to languish; *schmächtig*, thin, faint.]

schmal, narrow (SMALL).

[*schmälen*, to chide; *schmälern*, to narrow, lessen.]

schmauchen, to SMOKE.

schmecken, to taste, relish (SMACK).

[*Geschmack*, *m.* taste; *schmackhaft*, tasty.]

Schmerz, *m.* pain, SMART.

Schmied, *m.* SMITH.

[*schmieden*, to forge; *Geschmeide*, *n.* jewellery.]

schmücken, to adorn (E. obs. adj. SMUG); ∾ *schmiegen*, to bevel, nestle close to.

[*schmuck*, spruce, handsome; *Schmuck*, *m.* ornament.]

schnarchen, to SNORE; fr. *schnarren*, to rattle; cp. *horchen*—*hören*.

Schnee, *m.* SNOW.

[*schneeig*, snowy; *schneien*, to snow.]

schnell, quick (SNELL); *Schnelligkeit*, swiftness, speed.

schnitzen, to carve; fr. *schneiden*; cp. *ritzen*—*reissen*.

schnupfen, to SNUFF; *Schnupfen*, *m.* cold in the head.

schon, already; orig. adv. of *schön*. See § 35 (2).

schön, beautiful (SHEEN); ∾ *schauen*, to see.

schonen, to spare; ∾ *schön*; really "*schön behandeln*, to treat fairly."

schöpfen, to draw water; SCOOP.

[*unerschöpflich*, inexhaustible.]

Schöpfer, *m.* creator; fr. *schaffen*.

[*Geschöpf*, *n.* creature; *schöpferisch*, creative.]

schreiben, to write; fr. Lat. *scribere*. See *reissen*.

schreien, to cry, SCREAM, shriek.

schüchtern, shy, bashful; fr. *scheuchen*, to scare.

Schuld, *f.* debt, guilt; ∾ *sollen*.

Schultheiss, *m.* village-mayor, magistrate; for *Schuldheiss*, compd. of *Schuld* and *heissen*, "one who orders debts to be paid; one who calls to account." It frequently occurs in contracted form as *Schultes* or *Schulz*(*e*), the latter of which has become a common surname.

Schürze, *f.* apron (SKIRT); lit. "short garment"; fr. Ohg. *scurz*, short.

Schüssel, *f.* dish (SCUTTLE).

Schuster, *m.* cobbler; lit. "shoe-sower"; compd. of *Schuh* and Lat. *sutor*.

Schütze, *m.* marksman, SHOOTER; fr. *schiessen*.

Schwamm, *m.* sponge; fr. *schwimmen*.

Schwarm, *m.* SWARM, crowd; fr. *schwirren*, to whiz.

[*schwärmen*, to swarm; be enthusiastic; *Schwärmer*, *m.* enthusiast, visionary; *Schwärmerei*, *f.* enthusiasm; *schwämerisch*, enthusiastic.]

schweifen, to roam (SWEEP).

schwelgen, to revel (SWALLOW, SWILL).

[*Schwelgerei*, *f.* revelling; *schwelgerisch*, given to revelling.]

schwer, heavy (SORE).

Schwiegervater, FATHER-in-law; ∾ Lat. *socer;* O.E. *svēger*.

schwierig, difficult; orig. "ulcerated," fr. *schwären*, to ulcerate.

schwingen, to SWING.

[*schwanken*, to stagger, waver; *schwenken*, to brandish, whirl; *Schwengel*, *m.* pendulum, handle (of a pump).]

schwören, to SWEAR (an-SWER).

[*Schwur*, *m.* oath; *Geschworene*(*r*), *m.* juryman.]

See, *m.* lake; *See*, *f.* SEA.

Segen, *m.* blessing (SIGN [of the cross]); fr. Lat. *signum*.

[*segnen*, to bless; *Segnungen* (pl.), blessings.]

Sehne, *f.* SINEW.

sehr, very (SORE); fr. Mhg. *sêre*, with pain. It has retained its orig. meaning in *versehren*, to injure, hurt.

seit (conj.), SINCE; cp. older *sintemal*, whereas = *seit dem Mal*.

selbst, SELF; genit. of *selb*, *selbes* + *t*.

selig, happy, blissful; ∾ *silly* in its orig. meaning.

-selig (suff.). See § 72, Note 2.

Semester, *n.* session, "six months"; fr. Lat. *semestris*, half-yearly.

Seneschall, *m.* high-steward, "old servant"; ∾ Lat. *senex*, and Ohg. *scalc*, servant. See *Schalk*.

sengen, to SINGE; causat. of *singen*, "to make sing," *i.e.* crackle.

senken, to lower; causat. of *sinken*.

Sessel, *m.* stool, SETTLE; fr. *sitzen*.

Sichel, *f.* SICKLE.

sichten, to SIFT; L.G. for older *siften*, fr. *Sieb*, *m.* SIEVE; cp. *Schlucht*.

siech, ill, SICK.

[*Seuche*, *f.* epidemic disease; *Sucht*, *f.* mania, disease.]

siedeln, to SETTLE; fr. *sitzen*.

[*Ansiedlung*, *f.* colony.]

sieden, to boil, SEETHE.

[*Sodbrennen*, *n.* heartBURN (med.).]

Siegel, *n.* SEAL, signet; fr. Lat. *sigillum*.

Singrün, *n.* periwinkle; lit. "evergreen," fr. old *sin*, ever (∾ Lat. *semper*), and *grün*.

Skizze, *f.* SKETCH.

[*skizzieren*, to sketch; *skizzenhaft*, sketchy.]

Sklave, *m.* SLAVE; lit. "captured Slav."

[*Sklaverei*, *f.* slavery; *sklavisch*, slavish.]

solch, SUCH; "so like, Ohg. *sô lîch*.

Sold, *m.* pay; fr. Lat. *solidus*, a gold coin.

[*Soldat*, *m.* SOLDIER; *Söldner*, *m.* hireling.]

sollen, SHALL; Ohg. *scolan;* cp. *Schuld*.

Söller, *m.* upper room, garret; "sunny room"; fr. Lat. *solarium.*

Sonnabend, *m.* Saturday, "evening before Sunday." The astronomical time was reckoned by the nights; cp. *Fastnacht* and E. *fortnight.*

Sonntagskind, *n.* lucky child, "child born on SUNDAY."

spähen, to SPY.

[*Späher*, *m.*, *Spion*, *m.* spy, informer.]

Spange, *f.* clasp, SPANGLE.

sparen, to save (money, time), SPARE.

Spatz, *m.* = *Sperling*, *m.* SPARROW.

spazieren, to walk (for pleasure); fr. Lat. *spatiari.*

Speise, *f.* food; fr. Ital. *spesa* = E. *expense.* From the same word *spesa* we have the commercial term *Spesen*, *f. pl.*, expenses.

spenden, to gift, SPEND; *Spende*, *f.* donation.

Spiegel, *m.* mirror; fr. Lat. *speculum.*

Spiess, *m.* spear, SPIT.

[*Spitze*, *f.* point, top; *spitz(ig)*, pointed, (fig.) cunning; *Spitzbube*, *m.* thief; cp. E. "sharper."]

spreizen, to SPREAD out; (refl.) to strut, swagger.

sprengen, to burst, blast; causat. form of *springen.*

[*sprenkeln*, to speckle, to SPRINKLE.]

spriessen, to SPROUT.

[*spritzen*, to SPIRT; *Sprosse*, *f.* sprout, shoot.]

Stadt, *f.* town; ∾ *Statt*, STEAD; fr. *stehen.*

Stapfe, *f.*, *Stapf(en)*, *m.* footSTEP.

stark, strong (STARK).

[*stärken*, to strengthen; *erstarken*, to become strong; *Stärke*, *f.* strength; STARCH.]

starren, to STARE; *starr*, stiff.

Staub, *m.* dust; fr. *stieben*, to scatter (like dust).

[*staubig*, dusty; *stöbern* (colloq.), to rummage.]

stecken (wk.), to place, STICK; ∾ *stechen.*

Stegreif, *m.* STIRRUP; fr. *Steg* (*steigen*), and *Reif*, hoop.

[*aus dem Stegreif*, extempore; "without getting out of the stirrup."]

steigern, to raise, heighten; causat. of *steigen.*

steil, steep; fr. *steigen;* Mhg. *steigel.*

Steinmetz, *m.* STONE-mason; fr. *Stein* and *metz* (fr. Goth. *maitan*, to hew).

steinreich, exceedingly RICH; "rich in minerals."

stellen, to put, "make stand"; causat. form of *stehen.*

Stempel, *m.* STAMP, seal; fr. *stampfen*, to pound, crush.

Stengel, *m.* stalk; dim. of *Stange*, *f.* pole, rod; fr. *stehen.*

stet(ig), constant, STEADY; (adv.) *stets*, always; fr. *stehen.*

Stiefel, *m.* boot; fr. L.Lat. *æstivale*, "summer foot-gear."

stockfinster, pitch-dark; lit. "dark as prison"; *stock* = E. STOCKS (pl.), apparatus for punishing offenders.

stören, to disturb, STIR up.

stracks, straightway, immediately; adv. gen. of *strack;* fr. *strecken*, to STRETCH.

Strang, *m.* rope (STRING).

streben, to STRIVE.

streng(e), severe, strict (STRONG).

[*Strenge*, *f.* severity.]

strotzen, teem, abound in, (STRUT).

Stube, *f.* room, parlour, (STOVE); lit. "room with a stove in it."

Stuhl, *m.* chair, STOOL; fr. *stellen.*

stumpf, blunt (STUMPY).

Stute, *f.* mare, (STUD).

stutzen, to be startled; fr. *stossen* (*auf*), to meet unexpectedly; cp. *beissen—beizen.*

Sucht, *f.* mania, disease. See *siech.*

[*-süchtig*, "having a mania or disease."]

Sühne, *f.* atonement; ∾ *versöhnen*, to reconcile. See § 15.

Sumpf, *m.* marsh, SWAMP.

Sund, *m.* strait, SOUND.

Sündflut, *f.* deluge; not "sin-flood," though it is popularly connected with *Sünde*, SIN. The word properly is *Sintflut* (Mhg. *sin-vluot*): fr. *sin*, constant, huge, and *Flut;* cp. *Singrün.*

Talg, *m.* TALLOW.

tapfer, brave (DAPPER).

täppisch, awkward; fr. *tappen*, to grope.

tasten, to touch, grope; fr. Fr. *tâter*, to feel, fumble.

[*Taste*, *f.* key (of a piano); *Tastsinn*, *m.* sense of touch.]

(*a*) **Tau**, *n.* rope (TOW); ∾ *ziehen*, through L.G.

(*b*) **Tau**, *m.* DEW.

[*es taut*, the dew is falling; *tauig*, DEWY.]

taub, DEAF.

[*taubstumm*, deaf and dumb.]

Taube, *f.* DOVE.

tauchen, to dive, DUCK.

taufen, to baptize, DIP; ∾ *tief*, DEEP.

taugen, to be of use (DOUGHTY); Ohg. *tugan.*

[*tauglich*, serviceable; *Taugenichts*, *m.* good for nothing fellow; *Tugend*, *f.* virtue.]

Taumel, *m.* staggering; ecstasy; (TUMBLE). See *tummeln.*

Teer, *m.* or *n.* TAR.

Teich, *m.* pond (DIKE).

Teig, *m.* DOUGH.

(*a*) **Thor**, *n.* gate, DOOR; ∾ *Thüre.*

(*b*) **Thor**, *m.* fool; ∾ *Dusel*, *m.* DIZZIness, stupidity. For interchange of *s* and *r* see § 13.

[*Thorheit*, *f.* folly; *thöricht*, foolish; *bethören*, to delude.]

Thür(e), *f.* DOOR; ∾ *Thor;* (really a plur. like Lat. FORES).

Tier, *n.* animal (DEER, which orig. meant *wild beast* = Lat. FERA).

Tinte, *f.* ink, (TINT); fr. Lat. *tincta* (*aqua*), coloured (water).

Tisch, *m.* table (DISK, DISH); fr. Lat. *discus*, a quoit, a plate.

toll, mad (DULL).

Tölpel, *m.* (*Tolpatsch*), lout, clumsy fellow; fr. Mhg. *dörper*, villager, fr. *Dorf* (L.G. *p* for H.G. *f*).

[*tölpelhaft*, clumsy; *Tölpelei*, *f.* clumsiness.]

Topf, *m.* pot, TOP; ∾ *tief.*

[*Töpfer*, *m.* potter; *töpfern*, earthen.]

Torf, *m.* peat, TURF.

Torte, *f.* cake, TART.

Tracht, *f.* costume; load; fr. *tragen.*

[*eine Tracht Prügel*, a sound thrashing, "a load of cudgelling."]

trachten, to strive, have a design; not from *Tracht*, but ∾ Lat. *tractare*, to treat, consider.

[*einem nach dem Leben trachten*, to attempt one's life.]

Trampeltier, *n.* dromedary; Germanised form of *Dromedar*, *m. n.*

trauen, to trust (TROW); ∾ *treu.*

[*Trost*, *m.* consolation (TRUST); *trösten*, to console; *tröstlich*, comforting.]

Traufe, *f.* water DRIPPING from a roof; fr. *triefen.*

[*aus dem Regen in die Traufe kommen*, "to fall out of the frying-pan into the fire."]

traulich, cosy; ∾ *treu.* See *trauen.*

Traum, *m.* DREAM.

[*träumen*, to dream; *Träumerei*, *f.* reverie; *träumerisch*, dreamy, visionary.]

traun, forsooth! TRULY! for *in Treuen*, "in truth." See § 76 (2).

traurig, sad, DREARY; *Trauer*, *f.* sorrow; *trauern*, to mourn.

traut, beloved; ∾ *treu*.

Trieb, *m.* impulse; fr. *treiben*.

triefen, trickle, DRIP. See *Traufe*.

[*tropfen*, to DRIP; *Tropfen*, *m.* DROP.]

Trift, *f.* pasturage (DRIFT); fr. *treiben*, DRIVE (cattle).

triftig, cogent; fr. *treffen*, to hit.

[*ein triftiger Grund*, a convincing reason.]

Tross, *m.* baggage, retinue, gang; fr. L. Lat. *trossa*, baggage.

Trottoir, *n.* foot-way (of streets); a new formation of *Trott*, *m.* TROT, fr. *treten*, to TREAD. The German word proper is *Bürgersteig*, *m.*

Truchsess, *m.* lord high steward; Mhg. *truhtsaeze;* commonly explained as "one who sets down the food"; fr. *truht* (∾ *tragen*), load (= food), and *setzen*.

Trümmer (pl.), ruins, wreck; fr. obs. sing. *Trumm*, *m.* fragment; E. THRUM, the end of a weaver's thread.

[*trümmerhaft*, ruinous; *zertrümmern*, to dash to pieces, destroy.]

trunken, intoxicated, DRUNK; p.p. of *trinken*, without *ge-;* cp. *rechtschaffen*.

Trunkenbold, *m.* drunkard. See *-bold*.

Trutz, *m.* = *Trotz*, defiance, spite.

[*Schutz- und Trutzbündnis*, *n.* defensive and offensive alliance.]

tüchtig, capable, clever (DOUGHTY). See *taugen*.

Tugend, *f.* virtue, excellence; fr. *taugen*.

[*tugendhaft*, virtuous.]

tummeln (refl.), to bustle about (TUMBLE); ∾ *Taumel*.

turnen, to drill, practise gymnastics (TURN); ∾ Lat. *turnare*.

[*Turner*, *m.* gymnast, athlete; *turnerisch*, athletic.]

übel, wicked, EVIL; *das Übel*, misfortune, EVIL.

über, OVER; ∾ Lat. SUPER.

[*übrig*, remaining, "left over"; *übrigens*, moreover, for the rest.]

überzwerch, transversely, ATHWART; *zwerch* = *quer*, which see.

Ulme, *f.* ELM-tree.

Unbill, *f.* (*Unbilde*), wrong, unfairness; ∾ *unbillig*, unreasonable.

ungefähr, about, nearly = *ohne Gefahr*, "without risk (FEAR) (of making a wrong statement)."

[*von ungefähr*, by chance.]

ungeheuer, huge; *das Ungeheuer*, monster; fr. *geheuer*, pleasant, gentle.

Ungemach, *n.* hardship, trouble. See *gemach*.

ungeraten, spoiled, depraved; fr. *geraten*, to turn out (well), succeed.

ungereimt, preposterous, absurd; lit. "UNRHYMED"; cp. E. "neither rhyme nor reason" (*weder Sinn noch Verstand*).

ungeschlacht, uncouth, coarse; fr. *geschlacht*, well-bred; ∾ *Geschlecht*. See *Schlag*.

ungeschmälert, unimpaired; fr. *schmal*.

ungestalt, shapeless, misshapen; fr. *stellen*, the old p.p. of which was *gestalt*, now *gestellt;* cp. *gesandt—gesendet*.

ungezogen, naughty, "ill-bred"; fr. (*er*)*ziehen*, to educate.

unheimlich, weird, uncanny. The lit. meaning would be "unhomely," fr. *heim*, HOME.

unmittelbar, IMMEDIATE.

unsäglich, unspeakable; fr. *sagen*, to SAY.

unterdessen (adv.), meanwhile. The genit. *dessen* is probably not governed by *unter*, but is to be regarded as an adv. genit., as in *indessen* (adv.), meanwhile; cp. *vor Alters*, of old; *unterwegs*, on the way. See § 75.

unterthan, subject to; *der U.*, the subject (of a prince); really p.p. of *unterthun*, "to place UNDER," *i.e.* to subject.

unversehrt, unharmed; fr. *versehren*, to hurt. See *sehr*.

unwillkürlich, involuntary; fr. *Willkür*, *f.* arbitrariness, CHOICE. See *küren*.

unwirsch, cross, morose; ∾ Mhg. *wirs*, WORSE.

ur-, prefix of nouns and adjectives. See § 63 (2).

urbar, arable, productive; ∾ Mhg. *bern*, to BEAR.

Urlaub, *m.* (FUR)LOUGH; ∾ *erlauben*, to ALLOW.

Urteil, *n.* judgment, opinion (ORDEAL); lit. "decision granted"; ∾ *erteilen*, to grant, "to DEAL OUT."

Veilchen, *n.* VIOLET; fr. Lat. *viola*.

verbitten, to deprecate, "to beg not to do."

[*ich verbitte mir so etwas*, I do not permit such a thing.]

verdriessen, to vex (THREATEN).

[*verdriesslich*, vexatious; *Verdruss*, *m.* chagrin, vexation; *unverdrossen*, unwearied, patient.]

verdutzt, confused, abashed; probably ∾ *vertuschen*, to hush up.

vergällen, to embitter; fr. *Galle*, *f.* GALL.

vergelten, to requite, "pay back"; fr. *gelten*, to be worth (YIELD).

Vergnügen, *n.* pleasure; ∾ *genug*, ENOUGH.

verheeren, to devastate; fr. *Heer*, *n.* army; ∾ to HARRY = to plunder.

verklären, to transfigure; fr. *klar*, CLEAR.

verlangen, to desire, LONG for.

verlegen, embarrassed; "spoiled by lying too long"; fr. *liegen*.

verletzen, to wound, injure; ∾ LET = hinder. See *lass*.

verleumden, to slander. See *Leumund*.

verlieren, to LOSE; ∾ *los* (adj.), LOOSE.

[*Verlust*, *m.* LOSS; cp. *Frost*, from *frieren*.]

Verlies, *n.* dungeon; fr. *verlieren*.

verloben, to betroth, engage; ∾ *geloben*, to promise, vow.

vermaledeien, to curse, execrate; fr. Lat. *maledicere*. Similarly *benedeien* (archaic), to bless, fr. *benedicere*.

vermessen (refl.), to presume, dare; "to mistake the MEASURE of one's capacity"; cp. *verwegen*.

[*vermessen* (adj.), presumptuous, arrogant; *Vermessenheit*, *f.* presumption, arrogance.]

vermögen, to be able, have power. See *mögen*.

[*vermöge* (prep. with gen.), by dint of; *das Vermögen*, ability, wealth; *vermögend*, well off.]

Vernunft, *f.* reason, understanding; fr. *vernehmen*, "to apprehend with the senses," *i.e.* to hear; cp. *greifen*, to grasp (lit.); *begreifen*, to comprehend.

verraten, to betray, "to advise ill"; fr. *raten*.

[*Verrat*, *m.* treachery; *Verräter*, *m.* traitor; *verräterisch*, treacherous.]

verrucht, infamous; ∾ *Gerücht*, *n.* rumour, and *Ruf*, *m.* call, repute.

verrückt, crazed, mad; fr. *verrücken*, to displace, derange.

verschmitzt, wily, cunning; fr. Mhg. *smitzen*, to scourge, criticise severely; ∾ *schmeissen*, to throw, SMITE.

verschollen, lost, forgotten; fr. *verschallen*, to die away (of sound).

[*er ist* —, he is lost to all knowledge, vanished.]

verschwenden, to squander; causat. of *verschwinden*, to disappear.

[*Verschwender*, *m.* spendthrift—*verschwenderisch*, prodigal.]

versehren, to injure. See *sehr*.

versiegen, to dry up, become exhausted; ∾ *seihen*, to filter, strain.

versöhnen, to reconcile; ∾ *Sühne*, *f.* atonement.

verteidigen, to defend; fr. *ver* and Mhg. *tageding*, court-DAY, on which law proceedings and deliberations about war and peace were held.

verwahrlosen (wk. insep.), to spoil by neglect; fr. obsol. *wahrlos*, careless, "not AWARE"; cp. *wahrnehmen*.

verwegen, daring, foolhardy; fr. *wägen*, to WEIGH; descriptive of one who has weighed his strength amiss; cp. *vermessen*.

verwehren, to prevent; fr. *wehren*, to ward off, defend; cp. *Gewehr*.

verwesen, (1) to decay, "to cease to be"; (2) to administer; fr. old infin. *wesen*, to be.

verwittern, to decompose, disintegrate (by the action of the WEATHER); cp. E. WITHER.

verzichten (auf), to renounce, resign; ∾ *verzeihen*, to pardon, excuse.

[*Verzicht*, *m.*, or *Verzichtleistung*, *f.* renunciation.]

Vieh, *n.* cattle; (FEE, O.E. *feoh*, cattle, property; cp. Lat. *pecunia*, money, fr. *pecus*, cattle).

viel, much; ∾ *voll*, FULL.

Vogel, *m.* bird (FOWL).

Vogt, *m.* bailiff, governor (ADVOCATE).

voll, FULL; ∾ *viel*.

[*füllen*, to FILL; *völlig*, complete.]

vorder, *front-*; old comparat. of adv. *vor*; cp. *Fürst* and *fördern*.

vorhanden, at HAND, extant; dat. plur. of *Hand*, without *Umlaut*; cp. *abhanden*, mislaid, lost.

vorliebnehmen, put up with; for *für lieb nehmen*.

Vormund, *m.* guardian. See *Mund* (*b*).

vornehm, eminent, aristocratic; fr. *nehmen*, to take; descriptive of one who *takes his place before others*; cp. *angenehm*, pleasant, "acceptable."

wach, AWAKE; *Wache*, *f.*, *Wacht*, *f.* WATCH, guard; *wachen* (intr.), to WAKE. See *wecken*.

Wachs, *n.* WAX.

wachsen, to grow, WAX.

[*Gewächs*, *n.* growth, plant; *Wachstum*, *n.* vegetation, growth.]

wackeln, to shake, reel, WAG; fr. (*be*)*wegen*, to move.

wacker, valiant, honest; orig. "awake," alert; ∾ *wach*.

Waffe, *f.* WEAPON. Another (orig. L.G.) form of *Waffe* is *Wappen*, *n.* coat of arms.

[*Waffenstillstand*, *m.* armistice.]

Wage, *f.*, *Wagschale*, *f.* WEIGHing machine, SCALES; fr. *wägen*.

Wagen, *m.* carriage, WAGGON; fr. (*be*)*wegen*, to move.

[*Wagner*, *m.* cartwright.]

wagen, to dare, risk; lit. "to put in the scales"; fr. *Wage*.

Wahl, *f.* choice; *wählen*, to choose; ∾ *wellen*, to wish.

[*Wähler*, *m.* elector; *wählerisch*, dainty, captious.]

Wahlstatt, *f.*, for *Walstatt*, *f.* battlefield; not connected with *Wahl*, but fr. old *Wal-* (O.E. *wael*), "one killed in battle," battleground; cp. *Walküre*, *f.*, WALKYRIE, divine maid of Odin, on whose command she chooses (*küren*, to CHOOSE) the bravest of the fallen warriors and carries them in Odin's mantle to *Walhalla*, the HALL or palace inhabited by the souls of warriors slain in battle.

Wahn, *m.* delusion, fancy; Ohg. *wân*, hope. See next word, and cp. *Argwohn*.

[*wähnen*, to "WEEN," believe (erroneously).]

Wahnsinn, *m.* madness; pop. connected with *Wahn*, delusion, but really fr. old adj. *wan* (Lat. *vanus*, empty; cp. WANton), "lacking"; hence *Wahnsinn* lit. means "lacking in sense."

Wahnwitz, *m.* delirium; "lack of WIT." See *Wahnsinn*.

währen, to last; fr. old. infinit. *wesen*, to be. See *während*.

[Distinguish: *währen*, to last—*wehren*, to defend, ward off; *(be)wahren*, to GUARD, keep.]

während (conj. and prepos.), while, during; pres. partic. of *währen*.

wahrnehmen (*wahren*), to perceive, be AWARE of; not ∾ *wahr*, true, but fr. a root *war*= "AWARE."

Wald, *m.* wood, forest (WOLD, obs.).

[*waldig*, wooded.]

Walhalla; **Walküre**. See *Wahlstatt*.

Wall, *m.* rampart, WALL (of a fortress); fr. Lat. *vallum*.

Wallfahrt, *f.* pilgrimage; fr. *wallen*, to WALK, travel. See *Welle*.

Wallfisch, *m.* WHALE; for *Walfisch*; redundant for Ohg. *wal*, whale; cp. *Lindwurm*.

Wallnuss, *f.* WALNUT; really *welsche Nuss*, French or Italian nut; O.E. *wealh-hnutu*. Ohg. *walh-* signified "foreign," especially Fr. and Ital. See *welsch*.

Wallross, *n.* WALRUS, for *Walross*; fr. Ohg. *wal*, whale, and *Ross*, HORSE. See *Wallfisch*.

walten, to rule (WIELD).

wandeln, to go, travel; *wandern*, to WANDER, rove; both ∾ *winden* and *wenden*.

[*Handel und Wandel*, trade and traffic, commerce; *verwandeln*, to change, transform.]

wanken, to waver, stagger; fr. *winken*, to nod.

[*Wankelmut*, *m.* vacillation, fickleness.]

Wanne, *f.* tub (WINNOWING FAN).

Wappen. See *Waffe*.

Wardein, *m.* mint WARDEN; fr. *warten*, to attend to (WARD), and foreign termination.

Ware, *f.* WARES; ∾ wert, WORTH.

warten, to wait on, attend (WARD). See *Wardein*.

waten, to WADE; ∾ Lat. *vadere*.

weben, to WEAVE.

[*Weber*, *m.* WEAVER; *Weberei*, *f.* WEAVING, WEB; *Wabe*, *f.* honeycomb.]

wecken (tr.), to WAKEN, causat. of *wachen*.

[*Wecker*, *m.*, *Weckuhr*, *f.* alarm-clock.]

Wedel, *m.* fan; sprinkling-brush; fr. *wehen*, to blow.

weder—*noch*, NEITHER—nor; Mhg. *neweder*, "not either of two."

Weg, *m.* WAY; *weg* (adv.), orig. acc. of *Weg*, away; ∾ *bewegen*, to move (∾ Lat. *vehere* and *via*).

wegen, on account of. See § 81.

Weh, *n.* WOE, pain; *weh* (adj.), sore; *weh mir!* WOE to me! ∾ Lat. *vae*.

wehen, to blow, wave. See *Wind* and *Wedel*.

Wehmut, *f.* melancholy. For gender see § 69, Note 2.

wehren, ward off, defend; *Wehr*, *f.* (1) defence, (2) WEIR; *Gewehr*, *n.* musket.

Weib, *n.* woman, WIFE.

[*weibisch*, womanish; *weiblich*, womanly.]

weich, soft (WEAK); ∾ *weichen*, to yield.

[*weichen* (wk.), to soften, soak; *weichlich*, insipid, effeminate.]

(*a*) **Weide**, *f.* willow, WITHY.

(*b*) **Weide**, *f.* pasturage, food, hunt; hence *Weidmann* or *Waidmann*, hunter, sportsman.

weidlich, brave, lively; fr. *Weide*, hunt.

Weigand, *m.* (archaic), warrior, hero; really pres. part. of old *wig*, to fight (∾ O.E. *wîgend* and Lat. *vincere*).

weigern, to refuse; ∾ *Weigand.*

weihen, to consecrate, devote; fr. Ohg. *wih*=modern *weih* (in compds.), sacred: **Weihnachten**, pl. (*Weihnachtsfest*, *n.*), Christmas; Mhg. *ze wîhen nahten*, in the sacred nights; **Weihrauch**, *m.* incense, "sacred smoke." For the plur. form of *Weihnachten* cp. *Ostern.*

Weiher, *m.* fish-pond; ∾ Lat. *vivarium*, Fr. *vivier.*

weil (conj.), because; really acc. of *Weile*, *f.* WHILE.

weiland, formerly, of yore (WHILOM); lit. "at times"; dat. plur. of *Weile*+**d**.

Weiler, *m.* farm, hamlet; ∾ Lat. *villaris*, belonging to a farm.

weinen, weep (WHINE); ∾ *weh.*

Weise, *f.* manner, WISE; ∾ root of *wissen;* hence Fr. *guise.*

weismachen, to make believe, hoax; "to MAKE WISE" (ironical).

weissagen (insep.), to prophesy; not ∾ *sagen*, but from Ohg. *wîzzago*, prophet (O.E. *wîtga*).

Weizen, *m.* WHEAT; ∾ *weiss*, WHITE.

welch-, WHICH, "how like"; Ohg. *we-lich* (*we*=*wie*, how).

welken, to wither, fade (O.E. WELK); ∾ *Wolke*, cloud.

Welle, *f.* wave (WELL); fr. *wallen*, to undulate, bubble up.

welsch, foreign, "non-Teutonic," especially Italian, French: **Welschland**, *n.* Italy (O.E. *wealch*, the Celt, "a name given by surrounding nations to foreigners and colonists"). See *kauderwelsch* and *Wallnuss.*

Welt, *f.* WORLD; fr. Ohg. *weralt*, which meant "period of time, age": *wer* (=Lat. *vir*), man, and *alt* (Goth. *alds*), age.

wenden, to turn (WEND); causat. of *winden*, to WIND.

[*gewandt*, skilful, versed.]

wenig, little; orig. "deplorable"; ∾ *weinen* and *weh.* See *winzig.*

wer, WHO; ∾ Goth. *hwas* and Lat. *quis.* For change of *s* and *r*, see § 13, end.

werden, to become; orig. meaning "to turn oneself." O.E. *weorthan*, to be; ∾ Lat. *vertere*, to turn.

werfen, to throw (WARP).

[*Werft*, *m.* WHARF; *Wurf*, *m.* fling; *Würfel*, *m.* cube, die.]

Werk, *n.* WORK; (∾ Gr. *ergon*, work). See *wirken.*

Wesen, *n.* being, manner: the Mhg. infin. *wesen* (O.E. *wesan*), to be, used as a noun.

[*wesentlich*, essential.]

Wespe, *f.* WASP; ∾ *weben*, to WEAVE.

Weste, *f.* VEST, waistcoat; fr. Lat. *vestis*, garment, through Fr.

Wette, *f.* wager, BET.

[*wetteifern* (insep.), to emulate, vie with; *Wettlauf*, *m.* running-match, race.]

Wetterleuchten, *n.* sheet-lightning; orig. "play or dance of the WEATHER (*i.e.* storm) gods." Pop. etym. connected the second part of the word with *leuchten*, to give LIGHT, after the orig. *leich*, play, dance, had become unfamiliar to the people.

wetzen, to WHET, sharpen.

wichsen, to polish (boots), "to cover with *Wachs* (= WAX)."

Wicht, *m.* creature, WIGHT. See *nicht*.

wichtig, important, WEIGHTY; for *gewichtig*; fr. *Gewicht* (*wiegen*).

Widersacher, *m.* adversary. See *Sache*.

widerstehen (insep.), to WITHSTAND, resist.

Wildbret (or —*pret*), *n.* game, venison; fr. *Wild*, *n.* game (WILD animal), and *bret* for *Braten*, roast.

Willkür, *f.* CHOICE, caprice; lit. "choice after one's own WILL"; fr. *Wille*, and *küren*, to CHOOSE.

Wimper, *f.* eyelash; contracted fr. *winden* and *Braue*, "winding BROW"; Ohg. *wintbrâ*(*we*); cp. E. *window*.

Wind, *m.* WIND; really pres. part. of *wehen*, to blow; ∾ Lat. *ventus*.

winken, to nod, WINK. See *wanken*.

[*Wink*, *m.* hint, sign; *Winkel*, *m.* corner.]

winzig, diminutive, tiny; dim. of *wenig*.

wirbeln, to WHIRL; WARBLE; *Wirbelwind*, *m.* WHIRLWIND.

wirken, to effect, WORK; ∾ *Werk*; *wirklich*, actual(ly), real(ly).

wirr, confused; (*ver*)*wirren* (wk., but p.p. also *verworren*), to confuse, to embroil; Fr. *guerre*, derived from *wirren*.

[*Wirrwarr*, *m.* confusion, hurly-burly.]

wirsch. See *unwirsch*.

Wisch, *m.* rag, WHISK; trash.

wissen, to know (WIT, WOT); ∾ Lat. *video*, I see.

[*gewiss*, certain; *Witz*, *m.* WIT.]

wittern, to scent out, have an inkling of; fr. *Wetter*, *n.* WEATHER.

Witwe, *f.* (*Wittib*, archaic), WIDOW; ∾ Lat. *vidua*, "deprived."

[*Witwer*, widower; *verwitwet*, widowed.]

wo, WHERE; for the older form *wor*, which is used in compds.: *worin*, *worauf*, &c.; cp. *da*.

Woge, *f.* wave; ∾ *bewegen*, to move.

wohl, WELL; *Wohl*, *n.* WEAL; ∾ *wollen*.

Wolke, *f.* cloud (WELKIN = sky). See *welken*.

Wucht, *f.* burden, WEIGHT; fr. *wiegen*.

Würde, *f.* dignity, WORTH; ∾ *wert*.

würgen, to choke (WORRY).

Wurzel, *f.* root (WORT).

Wüste, *f.* desert, WASTE; fr. *wüst*, desolate, WASTE; ∾ Lat. *vastus*.

Wut, *f.* rage, passion; ∾ O.E. WOOD, mad.

Zacke, *f.*, *Zacken*, *m.* peak, prong (TACK); *zackig*, jagged, pronged.

[*zickzack*, ZIGZAG.]

zäh, TOUGH; *Zähigkeit*, *f.* tenacity, toughness.

Zahl, *f.* number; orig. = "TALE."

[Distinguish: *zählen*, to count (TELL); *zahlen*, to pay ("count the money"); *erzählen*, to narrate, TELL.]

zahm, TAME; *zähmen*, to TAME; ∾ Lat. *domare*.

Zahn, *m.* TOOTH; ∾ Lat. *dens*.

Zähre, *f.* TEAR; synonymous with, but older than, *Thräne*, *f.* tear; cp. *reissen* and *schreiben*.

Zange, *f.* TONGS.

Zapfen, *m.* spigot, cone, TAP; *Eiszapfen*, icicle.

[*zupfen*, to pull, tug; *Zipfel*, *m.* TIP, point.]

zaudern, to hesitate; ∾ *ziehen*.

Zaum, *m.* bridle; ∾ *ziehen.*

Zaun, *m.* fence, hedge (TOWN).

[*einen Streit vom Zaun brechen*, to pick a quarrel.]

Zeh, *m.*, *Zehe*, *f.* TOE.

[*auf den Zehen stehen*, stand on tiptoe.]

zehren, to consume, feed; orig. to TEAR (Ohg. *firzerran*, to tear, destroy). See *zerren.*

Zeichen, *n.* sign, TOKEN; ∾ *zeigen*, to show.

zeichnen, to draw, sign; fr. *Zeichen*, sign.

Zeit, *f.* time, TIDE; **Zeitung**, newspaper (TIDINGS).

[*zeitig*, early, timely (TIDY)—*zeitlich*, temporal, transient: *das Zeitliche segnen*, to die, depart this life.]

Zelt, *n.* tent (TILT=covering).

Zentner, *m.* hundredweight; fr. L. Lat. *centenarius.*

zerren, to drag, TEAR; ∾ *zehren.*

zertrümmern, to destroy, demolish. See *Trümmer.*

Zettel, *m.* scrap of paper (SCHEDULE); fr. L.Lat. *cedula.*

Zeug, *n.* stuff, material; fr. *ziehen.*

Zeuge, *m.* witness; fr. *ziehen;* lit. "*einer der vor Gericht zieht*," "one who goes into court."

Ziegel, *m.* TILE; fr. Lat. *tegula.*

ziehen, to pull, TUG, educate; ∾ O.E. *teon*, to TOW, and Lat. *duco.* See *Zeug*, *Zug*, *Zucht*, *Herzog.*

Ziel, *n.* goal, aim (conj. TILL).

ziemen, to be becoming, beSEEM; ∾ *zahm.*

Zier, *f.* (*Zier-de*, *f.*, *Zier-at*, *m.*) ornament (E. TIRE = head-dress).

Ziffer, *f.* number, CIPHER; fr. Arab.

-zig, -TY; fr. Gothic *tigu*(*s*), decade.

Zimmer, *n.* room; orig. "TIMBER."

zimperlich, prim, affected; SIMPERING.

Zinn, *n.* pewter, TIN.

Zins, *m.* interest, rent; fr. Lat. *census.*

Zipfel, *m.* TIP, point. See *Zapfen.*

Zobel, *m.* SABLE, fur; fr. Russian.

zögern, to hesitate; ∾ *ziehen;* cp. *zaudern.*

Zoll, *m.*, *pl.* **Zölle**, impost, TOLL; *Zöllner*, *m.* receiver of customs; ∾ *Zahl*, *zählen.*

[*Zoll*, *m.*, *pl. Zoll*(*e*), inch.]

Zopf, *m.* plait of hair (TOP= summit); (fig.) pedantry; antiquated formalism; **Zopfstil**, *m.* pedantic STYLE.

Zorn, *m.* anger; "TORN, *i.e.* distorted state of mind"; ∾ *zerren*, to TEAR.

[*zornig*, angry; *zürnen*, to be angry.]

zotteln, to move in a careless or clumsy manner, to TODDLE.

Zuber, *m.* TUB; lit. "a vessel to be BORNE in TWO hands"; Ohg. *zwi* (=*zwei*), and *bar*, fr. *bern*, to BEAR; cp. *Eimer.*

Zucht, *f.* breeding, discipline; fr. *ziehen;* cp. *Flucht*, fr. *fliehen.*

[*züchten*, to breed, cultivate; *züchtig*, chaste, "well-bred"; *züchtigen*, to censure, chastise.]

zucken (intr.), to start, quiver; *zücken* (tr.), to jerk, "to move quickly"; fr. *ziehen.*

[*entzücken*, to enchant, "carry away."]

Zufall, *m.* chance; fr. *zufallen*, "to FALL to one's lot."

Zug, *m.* pulling (TUG); feature; procession; fr. *ziehen.* See § 13.

Zügel, *m.* rein, bridle; fr. *ziehen.* See *Zug.*

[*zügellos*, unrestrained, wanton; *zügeln*, to curb, check.]

zünden, to kindle; **Zunder**, *m.* TINDER.

Zunge, *f.* TONGUE.

zusammen, together. See *sammeln.*

zwar, indeed; fr. *wahr;* Mhg. *ze wâre*, in truth.

Zweck, *m.* aim, purpose; orig. "nail," then peg in the target.

[*zwecks* (prep.), gen. (=*zum Zweck*), for the purpose of; *bezwecken*, to have in view, purpose; *zwicken*, to TWITCH.]

zween (archaic), TWAIN, TWO. See § 36.

Zweifel, *m.* DOUBT; *zweifelhaft*, DUBIOUS.

Zweig, *m.* branch, TWIG.

zwerch, in compds., ATHWART; Mhg. *twerch;* probably ∾ *durch*, THROUGH. See *quer.*

[*Zwerchfell*, *n.* diaphragm: *einem das — erschüttern* (fig.), to make one's sides split with laughing.]

Zwerg, *m.* DWARF; *zwerghaft*, dwarfish.

zwie, in compds. =*zwei:* **Zwieback**, *m.* biscuit, "TWICE BAKED"; **zwiefach**, TWOfold; **Zwielicht**, *n.* TWILIGHT; **Zwietracht**, *f.* discord (fr. *treffen;* see *Eintracht*).

Zwiebel, *f.* onion, bulb; Germanised from Lat. *cæpulla* (Fr. *ciboule*). The proper German word is *Bolle*, *f.*

Zwilling, *m.* TWIN; fr. *zwei* and suffix *-ling.*

zwingen, to force (∾ E. to TWINGE).

[*Zwinger*, *m.* dungeon; *Zwang*, *m.* compulsion.]

zwinkern (*zwinken*), to TWINKLE.

zwirlen (*zwirbeln*), to TWIRL.

Zwirn, *m.* thread (TWINE, TWIST).

zwischen, BETWEEN; like E. "between," *zwischen* is the dat. of an adj. lit. meaning "in the middle of two"; Ohg. *in zwisken.*

Zwist, *m.* dissension (TWIST), through L.G.

zwitschern, to TWITTER (onomat.).

zwölf, TWELVE; Ohg. *twa-lif.* See *elf.*